

SIMPURE N1

FOMA® N601i Manual

Quick Search/Contents/
Safety Precautions

Getting Started

Making/Receiving
Phone Calls

Making/Receiving
Videophone Calls

Using the Phonebook

Tone/Display/
Lighting Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/
i-channel

Mail

Display/Edit/Organization

Other Useful Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Entering Text

Appendix/External Devices/
Troubleshooting

**Index/
Quick Manual**

Functions of the FOMA N601i

You can enjoy the convenience of Large-size Characters/Simple Menu functions.

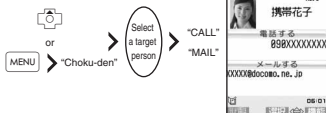
For details, refer to the User's Guide.

Choku-den

Quick Mail & Call from the dedicated button by simple operation.

You might want a quick access to your intimate people like your family and friends.

"Choku-den", a simple operation of just 2 touches, leads you to quick calling or mailing to your target person. Up to 5 persons can be registered.



Simple Menu

Easily viewable display of frequently-used functions with Big font.

You can switch the standard "Main Menu" to "Simple Menu" that displays only basic functions with Big font. As frequently-used functions can be called from simple and easily viewable function display, you can comfortably perform each operation.

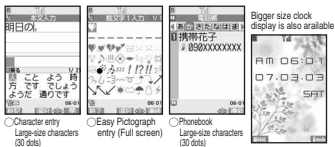


Stand-by screen [MENU] → [] "Simple"

Kakudai-moji (Large-size characters)

Easy to view Mail compose screen and Phonebook with Big font.

In addition to received mails, mail compose screen and phonebook are easy to view with "Large-size characters" of 30 dots. As Visibility is the key, you can also select "Bigger" size for Clock display.



○ Character entry
Large-size characters
(30 dots)

○ Easy Pictograph
entry (Full screen)

○ Phonebook
Large-size characters
(30 dots)

Security (Security & Privacy)

With "Key Operation Lock", no worry of forgetting the lock.

If set in advance, the handset can be Key Operation Locked just by folding. Moreover, you can set the handset to be Key Operation Locked automatically after pre-set time. It's very safe even when you forgot locking.

- After folded : ON/OFF
- Timer : [On after 1 minute], [On after 5 minutes], [On after 15 minutes], [On after 30 minutes]

New Function of N's Keitai!

Peeping prevention with "Privacy angle"TM. "Privacy angle", the peeping prevention function will securely protect your precious mails and personal data. You can prevent peeping in all scenes.

Press and hold []

or [MENU] → settings → Display → Privacy angle → ON



DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for choosing the FOMA N601i.

Please read this manual and user's guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before and during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

FOMA N601i is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or out of range, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during a call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by a third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrustrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

For the first-time user of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used any of the FOMA models, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Attach and charge the battery pack (p.38)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.42)
3. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.24)
4. Check the meanings of icons appearing on the screen (p.27)
5. Check how to use the menus (p.29)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.45)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

● To download "Manual for FOMA N601i (PDF file)", access the following:

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

● To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index ●●●●●●●●●● p.388

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Quick Search ●●●●●●●● p.4

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index ●●●●●●●●●● Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents ●●●●●●●● p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Functions ●●●●●●●●●● p.6

Refer to the Functions to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List ●●●●●●●● p.338

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual ●●●●●●●●●● p.396

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

- In this manual for FOMA N601i, the FOMA N601i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the “Display setting” function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

→Find “Display setting”

Continuous standby time	39	Clock	129	Record message	73
Continuous talk time	39	Color background	124	Ring volume	65
Copy		Display setting	119	Ring tone	206
Phonebook	102	Font	126	Voice memo	73
SMS	252	Guide	27	VP message	74
Text	334	Image (My picture)	255	Error messages	358
Copyright	20	Mail	228	External keys guard	153
Copy/cut text	334	My Profile	44	External microphone	302
Create/edit/delete folders		Phonebook image	122		
Bookmark	188	Style mode	134		
Data box	276	Display design	124	Face Mark	330
Mail	234	Display home	182	FirstPass	199
Creating an original menu	127	Disp. PH-book image	122	Function list screen	157

Looking up in the Quick Search

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

→Find “Change standby screen”

Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.43** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.105** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.112** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.115** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.117** Manner mode
- **Change standby screen p.119** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.121**



Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order “Cover” → “Chapter page (first page of the chapter)” → “Description page”. The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.

Getting Started			
Making/Receiving Phone Calls			
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls			
Using the Phonebook			
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings			
Security Settings			
Camera			

Drops Out	Quality alarm	116
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails	Mail/Msg. ring time	116
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker	Earphone	116
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone	Manner mode	117
Customizing Manner mode	Manner mode set	117
Display/Lighting settings		
Changing the Display Settings	Display setting	119
Displaying Phonebook Images when You Receive Calls		
.....	Disp. PH-book image	122

● Key description

Key operations are illustrated in this manual. The illustrations are simplified as follows:

Actual key	Described in this manual

This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.

Describes the settings at the time of purchase or contract, subscription requirement, etc. of the function or service.

Function name
This name is described in the index.

Indicates that the menu can be displayed by pressing then **5** **6** .
Menu No. → p.338

←Display setting→ MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting Stand-by display: White and Peridot 1 (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black and Sapphire 1 (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby 1 (Phone color: Pink & Ruby), Wake-up display: Wake up
Dialing screen, Calling screen, V-phone Dialing screen, V-phone Calling screen, Mail sending screen, Mail receiving screen, Check new messages screen: White and Peridot (Phone color: white & Peridot), Black and Sapphire (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby (phone color: Pink and Ruby)

Shows the screen at the time of the operation. Compare it with the screen when you operate.

Describes the operation on each step.

Use this procedure to **showcase** favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).
● If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
● If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
● An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
● Some i-motion programs cannot be selected.

1 [MENU] ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Display setting

The "Display setting" screen appears.
If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.



Shows each chapter.

2 Select any item

Stand-by display	Changing the standby screen image → p.121
Wake-up display	Sets a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on. OFF Does not show an image, etc.
Message	▶ Enter a message A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Inbox Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera. Camera Sets a pre-installed image. Pre-installed Sets a pre-installed image. Original animation Sets an original animation.
Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. Inbox Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using camera. Camera Sets a pre-installed image. Pre-installed Sets a pre-installed image. Original animation Sets an original animation.
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls. Select ring tone "Changing Ring Tones" → p.112 Select calling disp. "Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.120

Describes the options displayed on the screen (some options may not appear in some cases).

Describes each option and its operation.

Describes the useful information or advice about the operations.

NOTE

- Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.
- When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.122

Indicates that the descriptions go on to the next page.

Page number

* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

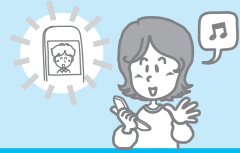
- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for "バイリンガル" (Select language). Set "English" for "バイリンガル" (Select language) beforehand.
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- The color pattern of the main menu and screens is described in the default setting for the phone color of White and Peridot set at the time of purchase.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.

Quick Search

- Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID **p.44** Caller ID Notification
- Hold the current call **p.47** Holding
- Switch voice call to videophone call **p.48**
- Adjust the volume during a call **p.65** Volume



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold incoming call **p.66** Answer hold
- Have your party record voice message **p.71** Record message
- Set voice mail **p.308**



Change display or ring melody

- Set clock **p.43** Set time
- Set ring tone to specific party **p.105** Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring melody **p.112** Select ring tone
- Mute keypad tone **p.115** Keypad sound
- Set silent mode **p.117** Manner mode
- Change standby screen **p.119** Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen **p.121**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp **p.127** Illumination
- Change font type, thickness and character size **p.128, 129** Font/Call time display



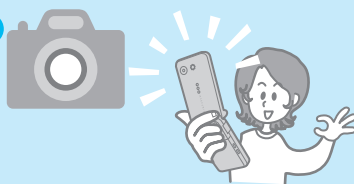
Master mail

- Send Deco-mail **p.214** Deco-mail
- Send image or melody **p.218** Attach Melody/Image/Movie/f-motion
- Learn emotion-expressing mail **p.223**



Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot **p.166**
- Change shutter sound **p.168,173**
- Use zoom **p.176**
- Display the shot **p.255** My picture



Use your phone without worries

- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand **p.141** Omakase Lock
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data **p.143** Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Lock key operation when folded **p.153** External keys guard
- Reject unidentified call **p.156** Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook **p.157** Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of the data **p.158** Data Security Service*



*: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to this service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)

Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use **p.33** Original menu
- Save battery life **p.123** Backlight (Power saver mode)
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal **p.277** Infrared data exchange/OBEX
- Use as alarm clock **p.287** Alarm clock
- Use as calculator **p.298** Calculator
- Update software **p.364** Software Update
- Update security **p.369** Scanning function

For more information about other operation guides, see "How to Use This Manual". →p.1
Also, "Quick Manual" instructs you how to operate the often-used functions. →p.396

Contents

How to use this manual	1
Quick Search	4
Contents	6
Functions of the FOMA N601i	8
Mastering the FOMA N601i!.....	10
Safety Precautions	12
Handling with Care.....	18
Intellectual Property Right.....	20
Main Components and Optional Equipment.....	22
Getting Started	23
· Component Names and Functions	
· Icons on the Display and Image Display	
· Main Menu · Using Menus	
· Simple Menu on the main menu	
· Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack	
· Charging a FOMA Terminal	
· Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off	
· Initial setting · Set time	
· Caller ID Notification, etc.	
Making/Receiving Phone Calls	45
· Making/Receiving Calls	
· Changing Voice Call to Videophone call	
· WORLD CALL · Chaku-moji · Redial calls	
· Pause dial · Hands-free	
· In-car Hands-free · Received calls	
· Volume · Answer hold	
· Public mode (Driving Mode/Power OFF)	
· Record message, etc.	
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls.....	75
· Making/Receiving Videophone Calls	
· Using Chara-den · Remote monitoring, etc.	
Using the Phonebook	91
· Adding Phonebook Entries	
· Group setting · Search phonebook	
· Copying a Phonebook Entry	
· Discern connect, etc.	
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings	111
· Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound	
· Charge sound · Mail/Msg. ring time	
· Manner mode · Display setting · Backlight	
· Menu display set	
· Illumination/Illumination in talk	
· Desktop icon · Style mode, etc.	
Security Settings.....	137
· Security code · PIN code · Dial lock	
· Omakase Lock · Secret mode · Secret folder	
· Original lock · Mail security	
· Restrictions · Reject unknown	
· Data Security Service, etc.	
Camera.....	161
· Photo mode · Continuous mode	
· Framed photography · Movie mode, etc.	
i-mode/i-motion/i-channel	179
· What is i-mode? · i-mode Menu	
· Viewing sites · My Menu	
· i-mode password	
· Internet connection · Bookmark	
· Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions	
· Message service · What is i-motion?	
· Downloading i-motion	
· What is i-channel? · Displaying Channel list	
· i-Channel Setting, etc	

Mail207

- What is i-mode Mail?
- Composing and Sending i-mode Mail
- Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
- Receive option · Check new messages
- i-motion mail · Chat mail
- SMS (Short Message), etc.

Display/Edit/Organization.....253

- Displaying Still Images
- Playing Movies/i-motion
- Edit Image · Edit movie
- Chara-den
- Infrared data exchange, etc.

Other Useful Functions283

- Multi Access · Alarm setting
- Alarm clock · Schedule · To Do list
- My Profile · Call data · Calculator
- Text memo · Auto dial setting
- Reset settings · Initialize, etc.

Network Services307

- Voice Mail Service · Call Waiting Service
- Call Forwarding Service
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service
- Caller ID Request Service
- Dual Network Service
- Multi Number, etc.

Data Communication319

- Data Communication Available for FOMA terminal · DoCoMo keitai dataink, etc.

Entering Text 323

- Switching character input method
- Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic or numeric character
- Entering text in 2-touch input mode
- Entering text in T9 input mode
- Common Phrases · Own dictionary
- Download dictionary, etc.

Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting..... 337

- Menu Function List
- Data Stored at the Time of Purchase
- Symbols, Special Characters and Pictographs
- Smiley Face Symbols
- Options and Accessories
- Movie Playing Software
- Troubleshooting · Error Message
- Software Update · Scanning function
- Specifications
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones, etc.

Index/Quick Manual 387

- Index
- Quick Manual

Functions of the FOMA N601i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu site (program) or i-mode compatible site or to send and receive mail by using the i-mode terminal display.

- i-mode → p.180
- i-mode mail → p.208
- * i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.
- i-motion mail → p.227
- i-motion → p.200
- Chaku-motion → p.113

p.179

Videophone/Chara-den

You can talk to the other party imaging his/her face or switch to the rear camera to show your surroundings to the other party. The FOMA terminal supports Chara-den that can display a character substituting for the image of yourself.

p.75

i-channel

You can receive graphical information such as news or weather report. The FOMA terminal periodically receives the latest information and displays it as telop on the standby screen, or displays a list of channels available when you press the i-channel key.

Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information. If you have not subscribed to i-channel, you can try the service for a given period without any charge.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

p.203

Chaku-moji

While in calling someone on the phone, you can make a message (Chaku-moji) visible on the calling screen and inform the business or urgency. By checking this message, the callee can tell what business or how urgent it is before answering a call.

p.51

Omakase Lock

If you lost your FOMA terminal, you can lock it or release the lock condition on your request. For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

* Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber asks to lock the FOMA terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.

p.141

Data Security Service

This is a data backup service that you store your data such as the phonebook, images and messages on the Data Security Center and if your FOMA terminal happens to be lost, the Center will help you retrieve the stored data to a mobile phone. Moreover you can edit or manage those stored data using PC and reflect the edited data to your mobile phone.

For details of the Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

p.158

Wide variety of network services

- Voice Mail service
- Caller ID Request service
- Call Waiting
- Dual Network service
- Call Forwarding service
- English Guidance
- Nuisance Call Blocking
- Multi Number
- * Voice Mail service, Call Waiting, Dual Network service or Multi Numbers is a pay service you need to apply for.
- * Call Forwarding service or Nuisance Call Blocking is a free service you need to apply for.
- * Caller ID Request service or English Guidance is a free service you need to apply for.

p.307

Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera. The FOMA terminal supports templates, which means that you can compose Deco-mail easily by using the format of the received Deco-mail or the downloaded format.

p.214

Camera

The 6-axis-capable digital shake correction function allows you to shoot a clear, crisp still image or movie with the rear camera. A camera shake is automatically corrected when you shoot a still image in a dark place. This is true of shooting a movie that is easily shaken. The rear camera is equipped with Super CCD Honeycomb having the auto focus function of four million pixels (effective two million pixels), and allows you to shoot a large image of 2,304 X 1,728 dots. Still images or movies you shot appear clearly on the large, high-quality LCD screen. The still images or movies can be attached to i-mode mail.

p.161

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

p.277

Multi access

Multi access function allows you to use a call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, which means that you can talk on the phone during i-mode communication or send/receive mail during the talk.

p.284

Flash[®]

The FOMA terminal supports Flash movie, which is an animation technology featuring images and sounds, so that you can enjoy various animations and expressive sites.

p.185

Secret folder

You can store the data of My picture, i-motion (movies), received mails, sent mails and bookmarks you want to prevent others from viewing into secret folders.

p.145

Security settings

Protect your privacy using a security code or password. You can also use the security settings such as Lock/security function, which locks your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using when you have lost it.

p.137

Ring tone

The ring tone supports 67-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

p.112

Privacy angle

You can make the display difficult to see from an angle. You can use the FOMA terminal without caring about the eyes of people around you.

p.123

Missed info

When you have a missed call or a new mail, you will be notified of it by the blinking of the incoming call lamp. You can confirm it by various blinking patterns with the FOMA terminal folded.

p.127

Large-size characters

You can make the characters displayed full-screen. This function is convenient when you want to display the characters full-screen visibly.

- Phonebook → p.99
- Clock → p.128
- i-mode → p.193
- Mail → p.232
- My Profile → p.294
- Text entry → p.325

Illumination

The incoming call lamp blinks while receiving a call or talking, or when you have a missed call or a new mail. You can set the color or the blinking pattern of the lamp.

p.127, 128

Mastering the FOMA N601i!

Display telops of the latest information on the standby screen when the information sent i-channel "i-channel"

● i-channel → p.203

You can automatically receive various information at a set interval.
You can also display the channel list screen by pressing **[ch]** for the i-channel, and receive rich, detailed information.

Not subscribing



Subscribed



Connecting



Talk over faces

"Videophone"

● Making/Receiving Videophone calls → p.75

Videophone system brings you a real-time video transmission while chatting and it makes your videophone life more enjoyable.
You can transfer scenery around you using the rear camera, or the remote monitoring function supports security confirmation of your indoor pet calling from outside.



image at the other side

image at your side

Tell an incoming call or message

"Chaku-moji"

● Chaku-moji → p.51

When you receive a call, a message (Chaku-moji) appears.
When making a call, you can send Chaku-moji to the callee while in calling and tell business before answering.

Chaku-moji



You can easily find the suitable function

"Simple Menu"

● Simple Menu → p.32

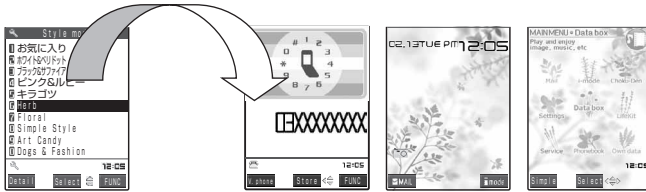
A menu of frequently-used functions.
You can call up a suitable function by clear design and simple operations.



Set various settings with only one action "Style mode"

● Style mode → p.134

Using the pre-installed style mode with one action is possible to change the various settings for the standby screen, the ring tone, and such. You can create your own style mode (お気に入り).



You can make calls or send mails by simple operations "Choku-Den"

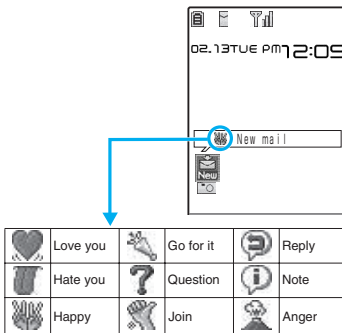
● Choku-Den → p.107

A Phonebook you can call up persons by simple operations. This phonebook can be conveniently used if you register persons you call or send mails frequently.

Display an emotion icon for specific mail Emotion-expressing mail

● Emotion-expressing mail → p.223

An emotion icon is displayed when you receive i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS. You can also specify the icon for the received mails containing specific keywords.



*Above icons of emotion-expressing mails are only examples.

Create Deco-mail automatically based on the key word Auto Deco-mail

● Auto Deco-mail → p.216




Decorations of the text, background, illustrations, etc. are automatically created and you can easily convert an i-mode mail to a Deco mail. 3 patterns of Auto Deco-mail are created. you can select the one you like.









Safety Precautions

ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

 DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
 WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

- The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- Safety Precautions are categorized into the following:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack 15
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) 16
5. Handling the FOMA card 17
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

DANGER



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N15
FOMA AC Adapter 01
FOMA DC Adapter 01
Data Communications Adapter N01
FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

*For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock. Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Do not subject the FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do not use the FOMA terminal or other devices in a place (gas (petrol) station, etc.) where there is a risk of ignition or explosion.

Using the FOMA terminal in a dusty environment or near flammable gas such as propane or gasoline may cause explosion or fire.



Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power code from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

CAUTION



If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.



Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.



Using repeatedly or for a long time by charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.

Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.



Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.



Keep the devices out of young children's reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones. If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.



Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.



If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.



Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.



If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

CAUTION



In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.



Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



Do

If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.



Don't

Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do

Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.



Do

Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause injury or damage.



Don't

Diff the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

- Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion



DANGER



Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe these precautions may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



WARNING



Do

If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water.

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.



If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)



WARNING



Use the specified socket and voltage.

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you.

AC Adapter: AC100V

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use:

AC100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)

DC Adapter:

DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative ground)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Doing so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Doing so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the devices.

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.

Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.

Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

CAUTION



Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord itself but grasp the plug.

Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card

CAUTION



Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not throw the FOMA card into fire.

Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:

WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22cm away.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU), or coronary care units (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital waiting rooms or wards, as there may be electronic medical devices in your vicinity.
- Follow the rules of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**

The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and FOMA card are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. Even if repair is possible, you will be charged for the repair.

- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**

- The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.

- Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.

- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**

Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also, as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.

- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**

Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.

- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**

Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.

- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter and charger carefully.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.

- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**

- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**

- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**

Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.

- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**

Doing so may cause malfunction.

- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**

Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.

- **Usually keep the headset connector cover, external connector covers closed.**

Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.

- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**

Doing so may discolor or burn the element.

- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**

Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal.

- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**

Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.

- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**

Doing so may damage the display.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**

If the battery pack does not work after it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**

- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**

- **The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.**

- **The battery pack may swell as the life comes close to the end and it causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal, and keep it in a vinyl case.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
 - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
 - Near your landline phone, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
Doing so may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card

- **When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.**
- **The FOMA card may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.**

- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card.**
Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card to a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop the FOMA card or subject it to strong impacts.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.**
Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **When removing the FOMA card, do not apply unnecessary force.**

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the in-car holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the in-car holder.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Intellectual Property Right






Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.

Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-mode”, “i-channel”, “WORLD CALL”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “i-melody”, “i-area”, “i-motion”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “i-motion mail”, “Chaku-motion”, “Deco-mail”, “Chara-den”, “i-shot”, “sigmarion”, “musea”, “DoPa”, “Short mail”, “Dual network”, “FirstPass”, “V-live”, “visualnet”, “Security Scan”, “My DoCoMo”, “Multi number”, “Chaku-moji”, “Omakase Lock”, “Data Security Service” and “FOMA”, “i-mode” logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- LC フォント/LC FONT[®], エルシーフォント[®] and LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation. 
- T9 and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc in the United States and other countries. 
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol (●) are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.  
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Handset 3D and its logo is trademark or registered trademark of Sonaptic LTD. of the U.K. 
- This product is equipped with Flash[®] LiteTM technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash, Flash Lite and Macromedia are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan or other countries. Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with NetFront for the Internet by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries. Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- McAfee[®] and マカフィー[®] are registered trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- The service name and logo mark for FreeDial is a trademark of NTT Communications Company.
- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:

- Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
- Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities
- Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
Copyright 2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338
This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront[®] for OBEX and infrared data exchange.
IrFront[®] is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- The software in this product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL · LGPL等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM. ("readme.txt" is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is antibacterial.
The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).



Antibacterial: Body, keys, screen(resin material)

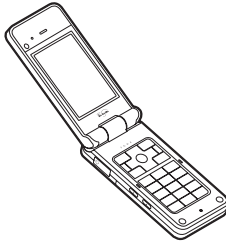
Description of Windows

- Windows[®] 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows[®] XP stands for Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Professional operating system or Microsoft[®] Windows[®] XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows[®] 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows[®] XP Professional and Windows[®] XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N601i
(Including the warranty and Back Cover N16)

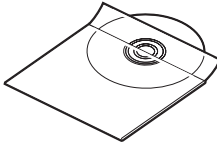


Manual for FOMA N601i
(This manual)



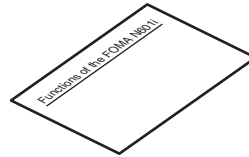
*The Quick Manual starts on p.396.

FOMA N601i CD-ROM



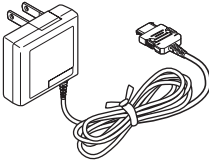
*This CD-ROM contains "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) "Kuten Codes" (PDF).

Information

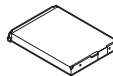


<Optional Equipment>

FOMA AC Adapter 01
(Including warranty and manual)



Battery Pack N15
(Including manual)



Other options and accessories → p.353

● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions	24
Icons on the Display and Image Display	27
Main Menu	29
Using Menus	30
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)	35
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack	38
Charging a FOMA Terminal	40
Checking the Battery Level	41
Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off	42
Switching Language Mode	Select language 42
Performing Initial Settings	Initial setting 43
Setting Date and Time	Set time 43
Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party	Caller ID Notification 44
Checking Your Phone Number	My Profile 44

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N601i FOMA terminal:

-
- 1 Earpiece speaker
 - 2 Front camera
 - 3 Display
 - 4 Multi-function keys
 - Up key
 - Down key
 - Left/Received call record key
 - Right/Redial key
 - Enter key
 - 5 Earphone/Microphone terminal
 <How to connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)>
 - 6 Function key 1
 - 7 Home/Volume up key
 - 8 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/[Camera] key
 - 9 Channel key
 - 10 Send key
 - 11 X/Public mode (Driving mode) key
 - 12 Mouthpiece/Mike
 - 13 Function key 2
 - 14 Menu key
 - 15 Power/End of operation/ Hold key
 - 16 Back (Clear) key
 - 17 Dial keys
 - 18 #/Manner key

-
- 23 Incoming call lamp/ Charge lamp
 - 24 Infrared data port
 - 25 Speaker
 - 26 External connector

-
- 19 Rear camera
 - 20 Through-hole for strap
 - 21 Back cover

※ This model is equipped with an internal antenna.
 For better quality of phone call, do not cover the part around the antenna.

■ Functions

1 Earpiece speaker

- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

2 Front camera

- Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.

3 Display

4 Multi-function keys

Up key

- Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
- Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Opens the Choku-Den detail screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key

- Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
- Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Opens the search phonebook screen.
- Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

Left/Received call record key

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
- Shows the Received calls record. → p.62

Right/Redial key

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls to the next screens by page.
- Shows the Redial record. → p.53

Enter key

- Neuropointer → p.26

5 Earphone/Microphone terminal



- You can use your FOMA terminal in hands-free mode when plugging in a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). A conventional earphone/microphone with switch is also available by using Earphone Plug Adaptor P001 (optional).

6 Function key 1

- Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. → p.26

7 Volume up key

- Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.194) easily using i-mode.
- Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. → p.65
- Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. → p.324
- Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.

() and () are collectively called external keys in this manual.)

8 MEMO/CHECK/Volume down/() key

- Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.73
- Plays recorded messages. → p.73
- Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. → p.65
- Confirm if there is a missed call or a new mail with the FOMA terminal folded → p.70
- Reads out the current time when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded. → p.70
- Scrolls to the next screens by page.

9 Channel key

- Shows the channel list on the standby screen. → p.204
- Switches the input mode on the character entry screen. → p.325

10 Send key

- Makes voice calls. → p.46
- Answers voice calls. → p.60
- Answers videophone calls. → p.81
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → p.329

11 X/Public mode (Driving mode) key

- Enters "X", "http://" or other character strings. → p.346

12 Mouthpiece/Mike

- Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".

13 Function key 2

- Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-right of a screen. → p.26

14 Menu key

- Opens the main menu or Simple Menu. → p.30

15 Power/End of operation/Hold key

- Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. → p.42
- Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. → p.42
- Ends a call. → p.46
- Puts an incoming call on hold. → p.66

16 Back (Clear) key

- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. → p.47
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → p.47, 331

17 0 to 9 Dial keys

- Enter phone numbers. → p.46
- Enters characters and numerals. → p.328

18 #/Manner key

- Enters "#" or symbols. → p.346
- Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. → p.73

19 Rear camera

- Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.

20 Through-hole for strap

21 Back cover

22 Infrared data port

- Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. → p.277

23 Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp

- Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, MessageR or MessageF. Lights in red while charging.

24 External connector

- Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.

25 Speaker

- Emits sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Operation	Refer to	Key	Operation	Refer to
	Opens the received address list.	p.241		Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.65
	Opens the sent address list.	p.241		Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.295
	Turns the backlight on/off.	p.123		Opens the Photo mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.168
	Switch the Privacy angle.	p.123		Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.76
	Enters "+". (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.49			
	Sets Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.117		Check new messages (while on the standby screen)	p.197, 224
	Sets the external keys. (while on the main menu)	p.153		Switches the main screen. (during a videophone call)	p.76, 78
	Sets Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.67			
	Enters a pause (p). (while editing pause dial data)	p.55			

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (, ,) and directional icons corresponding to the Multi-function keys () appear.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ①

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ①.

① includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ②

Press to run the command indicated on the software key ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ To run a command corresponding to the software key ③

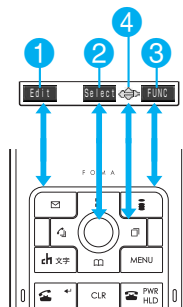
Press to run the command indicated on the software key ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. → p.33




■ To move/scroll in the directions shown in ④

Use to move or scroll in the directions shown in ④.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.

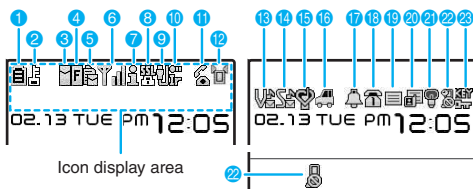


Icons on the Display and Image Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) shown on the display are referred to as icons.











































- A calendar, etc. can be set on the display. → p.121

■ Display

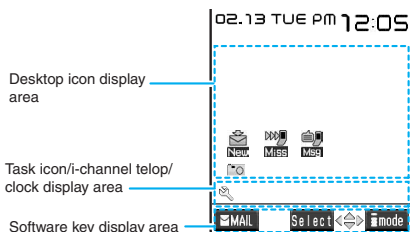


Icon display area

- The following table shows the icon images for the display.

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Battery level → p.41	 (white)	Mail kept at the i-mode Center → p.224
	Dial lock set → p.141	 (red)	Memory for your mail at the i-mode Center is full → p.224
	Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → p.143	 (white)	Mail kept at the i-mode Center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON" → p.223
	Original lock set → p.147	 (white)	MessageR kept at the i-mode Center → p.197
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released → p.147	 (red)	Memory for your MessageR at the i-mode Center is full → p.197
	Original lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set → p.143, 147	 (white)	MessageF kept at the i-mode Center → p.197
	"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and Secret mode or Secret data only mode activated → p.147	 (red)	Memory for your MessageF at the i-mode Center is full → p.197
 (white)	Unread mail → p.221	 6	Signal strength → p.42
 (red)	Inbox is full → p.221		Out of service area or a radio wave does not reach → p.42
	FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full → p.252	 self	Self mode set → p.158
 (white)	Unread mail/FOMA card memory for SMS is full → p.252	 7	i-mode in progress → p.180
 (red)	Inbox is full/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full → p.221, 252		i-mode communication in progress → p.180
 (white)	Unread MessageR → p.195		Packet communication in progress → p.320
 (red)	Memory for MessageR is full → p.195		Packet communication in progress (outgoing) → p.320
 (white)	Unread MessageF → p.195		Packet communication in progress (incoming) → p.320
 (red)	Memory for MessageF is full → p.195		Packet communication in progress (sending data) → p.320
 (R,F, white)	Unread MessageR/Unread MessageF → p.195		Packet communication in progress (receiving data) → p.320
 (R,F, red)	Memory for MessageR is full/Memory for MessageF is full → p.195	 8	SSL-compatible page shown → p.183
 (R, F, white)	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full → p.195	 9	USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →
 (R, red, F, white)	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full/Unread MessageF → p.195		USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected → p.59
 (R, white, F, red)	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full → p.195		USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected → p.59

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
10	Infrared data exchange in progress → p.277	16	Public mode (Driving mode) set → p.67
11	Voice call in progress → p.46	17	Alarm set → p.285
	64K data communication in progress → p.320	18	Voice Mail message → p.309
	Communication speed during a videophone call → p.77	19	Record message set → p.71
	Call mode is being changed between voice call and videophone call → p.48, 81	20	Record message (Record VP message) set → p.71
12	Privacy angle set → p.123	21	Backlight set to "OFF" → p.123
13	Vibrator set → p.114	22	Key Operation lock set/waiting → p.152
14	Ring volume set to "Silent" → p.65		Key Operation lock activated → p.152 (displayed in software key display area)
	Mail/Msg. ring time set to "OFF" → p.116	23	External keys guard set to "ON" → p.153
15	Manner mode set → p.117		
	Remote monitoring set → p.88		



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Desktop icons that give notice → p.131
etc.	Added desktop icons → p.130

Task icon/i-channel telop/clock display area

Icon	Description
Task icon	Icons of the currently activated functions.
i-channel telop	Telop text running on the standby screen → p.200
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen → p.129 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the "Clock display" setting.)

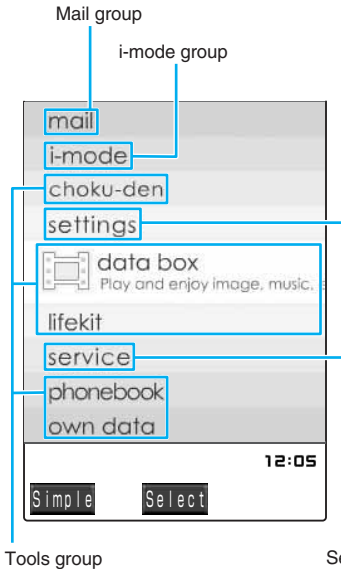
NOTE

- ◆ The display of a FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- ◆ Press to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access each function from the main menu. Press **[MENU]** to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:

* Main menu is indicated in the default setting for the phone color of White & Peridot.



<Mail group>

● Mail

Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

<i-mode group>

● i-mode

Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

<Settings group>

● Settings

Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

● Service

Specify and confirm the settings of network services.

<Tools group>

● Choku-Den

Call up and register Choku-Den.

● Data box

Enjoy picture, music, etc.

● Phonebook

Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

● LifeKit

Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

● Own data

Manage and check your personal data and history.

Using Menus

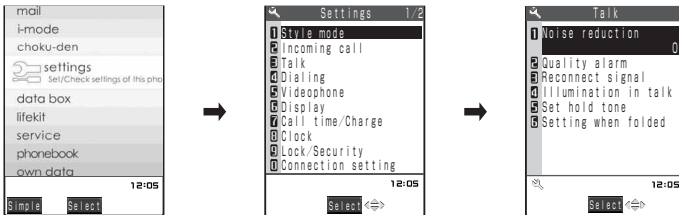
Open a screen from the main menu or original menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing the **[MENU]** key: accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.338). This "Manual for FOMA N601" describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press **[END]**. It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, pressing **[CLR]** goes back to the operation screen shown before a message appears.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail (p.210) or i-mode (p.180) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press **[MAIL]** (**[MAIL]**) to access the Mail menu or **[i-mode]** (**[i-mode]**) to access the i-mode menu.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: Setting flashing color in "Illumination in talk">

- 1** **[MENU]** ▶ Use **[UP]** to highlight "Settings" and then press **[RIGHT]** ▶ Use **[DOWN]** to highlight "Talk" and then press **[RIGHT]**



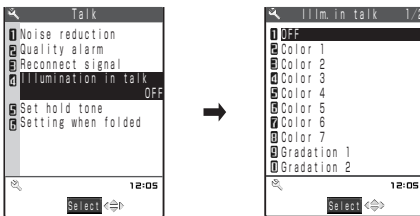
■ To scroll continuously

▶ Keep holding **[UP]**

■ If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears

The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

- 2** Use **[DOWN]** to highlight "Illumination in talk" and press **[RIGHT]**







NOTE

- ◆ The icon you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu or Simple Menu is opened (Last one function). This function is only available when "ON" is set for "Memory focus" in "Menu display set".

● Selecting items that span multiple pages

1 Use to select the items you want to set

Press  (or ) to scroll to the previous page or  (or ) (MEMO/CHECK) to the next page.



2 Press

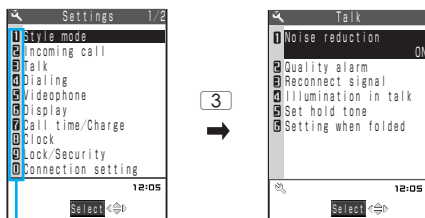
The selected items are set.

3 Press after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears.

● Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press to to select items



The number corresponding to the dial key.

● Selecting “YES/NO” or “ON/OFF”

1 Use to select “YES” or “NO” (or “ON” “OFF”) and press

The selected item is set.



● Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. → p.138

1 Enter your 4- to 8-digit security code, and press

The entered security code appears as “_”.
The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is incorrect appears. Re-enter the security code.



● Entering numbers

1 Press **0** to **9** to enter numbers

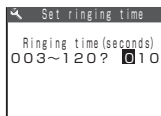
To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number on a 3-digit number entry screen, press **0** twice or once before entering the number.

■ To enter “3”

▶ **0**, **0**, **3**

■ To enter “12”

▶ **0**, **1**, **2**



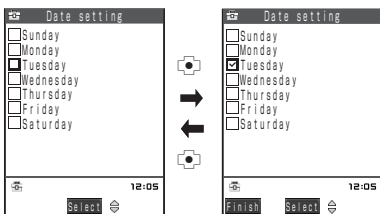
● Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use **☐** to select a checkbox (**☐**) to mark and press **☑**

The checkbox changes from **☐** to **☑**. This indicates a selected checkbox. Press **☑** to toggle **☐** and **☑**.

When “**Finish**” appears as a software key, pressing **☑** (Finish) sets the item selected.

When “**FUNC**” appears as a software key, pressing **☑** (FUNC) allows you to use functions such as “Select all” or “Release all”.



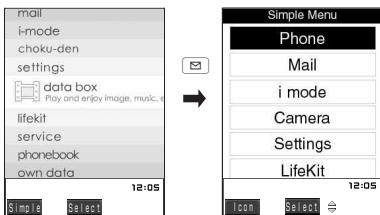
Simple Menu on the main menu

By switching the Main Menu to the Simple Menu display, you can call up frequently-used functions quickly and easily.

● Functions available in Simple Menu differ from those in Main Menu.

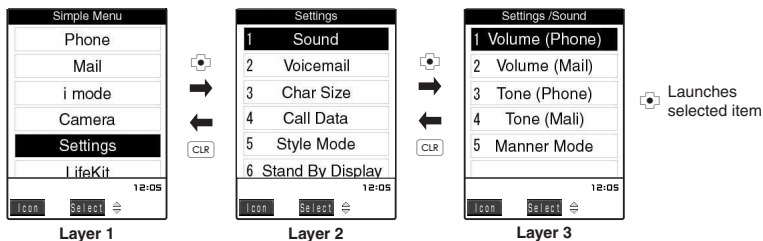
1 **MENU** (Simple)

Press **☑** (Icon) to return to the main menu.



2 Select a menu item


Use **☑** to select an item and press **☑**. The sub menus under the selected menu are shown at the right pane.



NOTE


- ◆ If you used Simple Menu to select a menu item last time, pressing **MENU** opens Simple Menu.
- ◆ Items in Simple Menu differ from those in Main Menu.

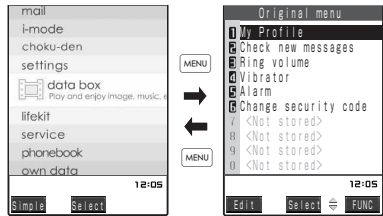
Selecting a function from your original menu

- Highlight “<Not stored>” and press  (Edit) to edit the original menu.
- The original menu appears in “List”.
- Adding items to the original menu → p.126


1

 Press 





Pressing  switches between the main menu and original menu.

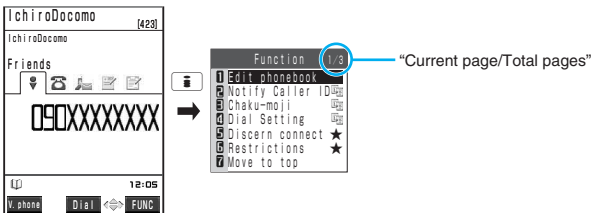









NOTE

- ◆ When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press , the main menu appears.
- ◆ If no function is stored in the original menu, a message asking whether to add functions to the original menu appears.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, “” appears as a software key. Press  (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use  to highlight an item to perform and press  to select it.



- When items span multiple pages, “Current page/Total pages” appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. Press  while the top item of the function menu is selected to show the previous page. Press  while the bottom item is selected to show the next page. Press  (or ) to scroll to the previous page or  (or ) (MEMO/CHECK) to the next page.
- “” appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
- The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
- You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below. The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote monitoring” from “Videophone” in “Settings” is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

1  ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Videophone” ▶ “Remote monitoring” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Other ID”



2 Select “<Not recorded>”

⋮

Actual operations:

1 Press  on the standby screen


2 Use  on the main menu to highlight “Settings” and press 

3 Use  on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Videophone” and press 

4 Use  on the “Videophone” menu to highlight “Remote monitoring” and press 

5 Enter your security code and press 

6 Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote monitoring” menu and press 

7 Use  on the “Other ID” menu to highlight “<Not recorded>” and press 

⋮

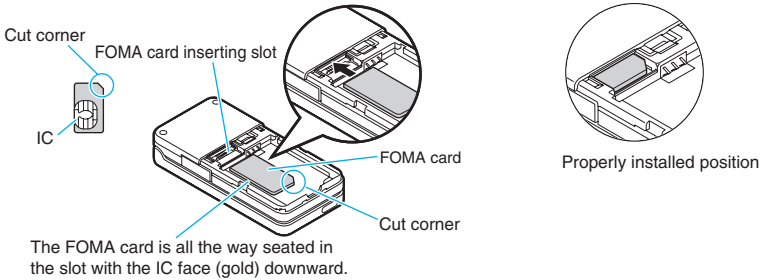
Operation
for **1**

Operation
for **2**

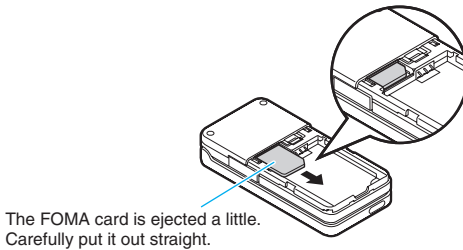
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

● Inserting the FOMA card (UIM)



● Removing the FOMA card (UIM)



NOTE

- ◆ Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- ◆ Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) and tray after removing them from a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, error messages (p.358) appear.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

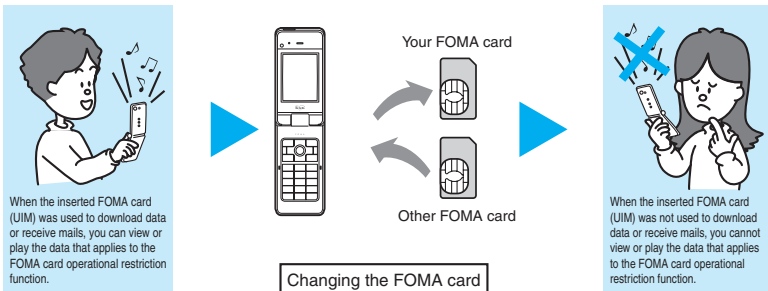
Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM). → p.139

FOMA card operational restriction function



Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - Melodies, images, Chara-den characters and DL dictionaries/templates including images, which are downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - i-motion programs downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - Screen memos including melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chara-den characters, DL dictionaries, templates
 - Images that were downloaded from the Data Security Center
 - Files (melody/image) attached to i-mode mails in Inbox or pasted melodies
 - Files (melody/image/i-motion, except for images or i-motion programs shot using a FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mails in Outbox/Draft
 - MessageR/MessageF with attached files (melody/image)
 - Images inserted into the messages of Deco-mails
 - Record VP messages

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as “your FOMA card (UIM)” and other FOMA cards as “another FOMA card (UIM)” hereinafter.



NOTE

- ◆ If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the “” mark is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in “Display setting” or “Select ring tone”.
- ◆ If data or a file with this function set is selected for “Display setting” or “Select ring tone” and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- ◆ You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- ◆ Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as a news received through the i-channel service.
- ◆ Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- ◆ If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-channel-compatible terminal, telop text does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press  to show the channel list. The telop text will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:

- To use the FOMA card (UIM), enter the security code.

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
"Select language" (p.42)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
"SMS center selection" (p.252)	
"SMS validity period" (p.242)	
"PIN setting" (p.139)	
"Host selection" under "Connection setting" (p.194)	
"Telop display setting" for i-channel (p.205)	"ON" is set regardless of the previous settings.

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 types of the FOMA card (UIM). There are the following functional differences between those FOMA cards (UIM) when they are used on a FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls overseas with the same mobile phone number you use in Japan by inserting the FOMA card (green) into the FOMA terminal or the mobile phone for overseas (W-CDMA or GSM format) which is compatible with the service.

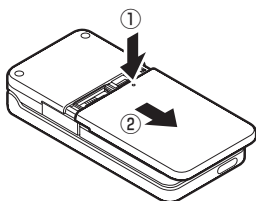
You can use WORLD WING without subscription.

- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 without subscribing to WORLD WING, a separate subscription is necessary.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.
- In case the FOMA card (green) is lost or stolen overseas, contact NTT DoCoMo as soon as possible and take the course of service interruption. Refer to the back of this manual for the inquiries numbers. Note that you are charged for the call and communication even after the FOMA card (green) is lost or stolen.

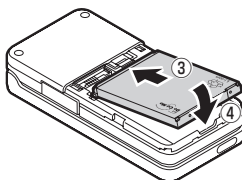
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

- Turn a FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold a FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

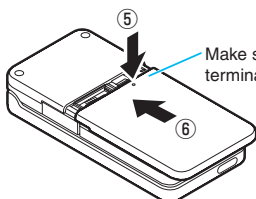
Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



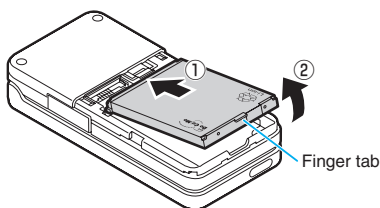
With the product name on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ③. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely inserted.

Lift the back cover about 2 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

- ◆ Note that using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on a FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- ◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N15 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N15 for a FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. It may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if “Charging” in “Backlight” is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication in a high-temperature environment, the FOMA terminal’s temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. In this case, stop a running function and wait for the temperature to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with a FOMA terminal turned on.

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with a FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice call: Approx. 210 min. Videophone call: Approx. 140 min.	Stationary: Approx. 700 hours Moving: Approx. 520 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while a FOMA terminal can normally send and receive radio waves.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated standby time when a folded FOMA terminal can normally receive radio waves. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk or use i-mode, creating i-mode mails will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The standby time (stationary) is an average standby time when a folded FOMA terminal keeps still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time (moving) is an average standby time all including “stationary”, “moving” and “out of service area” when a FOMA terminal is folded and radio waves can be normally received.

NOTE

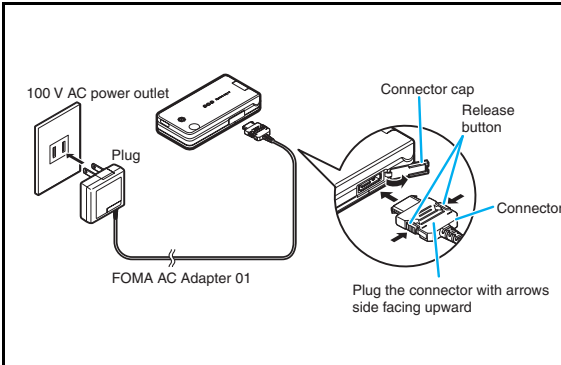
- ◆ If the battery pack is out of charge or removed, you cannot save images or movies.

Charging a FOMA Terminal

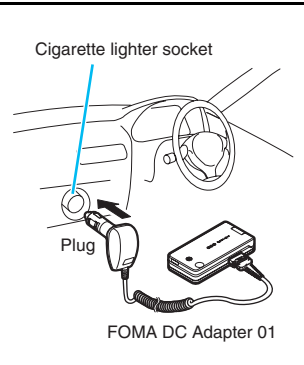
- You can charge a FOMA terminal using the AC or DC adapter (optional). For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

■ AC adapter



■ DC adapter



- 1 Open the external connector cap on a FOMA terminal
- 2 Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal
- 3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet
Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in a car




Charging starts.

Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4 After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button
- 5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car
- 6 Close the external connector cap on the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- ◆ When the charge lamp on a FOMA terminal (Phone) turns off, “” on the display disappears and the message “Charge unusual Stop charge” appears, disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adaptor or DC adaptor and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adaptor or DC adaptor. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- ◆ Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on a FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.
- ◆ The charge lamp lights in red while charging. The charge lamp lights red during charging. If a FOMA terminal is turned on, “” flashes while charging and “” lights when charging ends.




- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the “Charge sound” when charging starts or ends. However, while “Manner mode” or “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set or when “Charge sound” is set to “OFF”, the “Charge sound” does not sound.
- ◆ The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- ◆ The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.
- ◆ The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
- ◆ The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

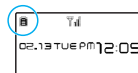
Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking with a battery level icon

When a FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

-  (white): Full charge
-  (white): Partial charge
-  (red): Low charge



Checking with sound and animation

MENU71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Battery level”




The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

- “3 short beeps”: Full charge
- “2 short beeps”: Partial charge
- “1 short beep”: Low charge

NOTE

- ◆ The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any keys other than , ,  (MEMO/CHECK).



NOTE

- ◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.
- ◆ While “Manner mode” is set and “Manner mode” or “Super silent” is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while “LVA tone” is set to “OFF” in “Original” or while “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning a FOMA Terminal On/Off

- Before using a FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.


Turning a FOMA terminal on

- Before turning a FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just loaded the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the “Wait a minute” message may appear for a short period of time.

■ When “” appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears. The reception levels appear as follows:



■ When PIN1 code entry set is set to “ON”

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. → p.139

■ When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ If the initial settings screen appears

Perform the initial settings. → p.43



NOTE


- ◆ After replacing the FOMA card and turning the FOMA terminal on, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code. Entering the correct security code shows the standby screen. If incorrect security codes are entered five times in a row, the FOMA terminal will be turned off. (Turn the terminal on again for retry.)

Turning a FOMA terminal off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

- ◆ Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that “” is shown when using the FOMA terminal.
- ◆ After turning a FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language>

Switching Language Mode

MENU15

Default setting
Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or image display.

1 MENU ▶ “各種設定” ▶ “ディスプレイ” ▶ “バイリンガル” ▶ “English”

■ To change from Japanese to English

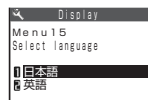
▶ “English”



Japanese

■ To change from English to Japanese

▶ “日本語”



English

NOTE

- ◆ When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.
- ◆ Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

For some guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English. → p.313

<Initial setting>**Performing Initial Settings**

Default setting
Auto time set ON

After turning a FOMA terminal on, set “Set time”, “Change security code” and “Keypad sound” as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function’s setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 5 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform “Reset settings” after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens. → p.140

1 Initial setting screen ▶ “YES”**2 Set time**

Date and time are not set by default. Setting time → p.43

3 Change the security code

The default setting is “0000”. “Changing Your Security Code” → p.139

4 Set the font size

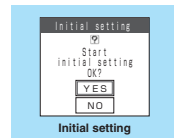
Setting the font size → p.128

5 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound → p.115

6 Update software

A message asking whether to update software appears. Software Update → p.364

**NOTE**

- ◆ Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press or , the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- ◆ You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- ◆ The confirmation screen to prompt software update appears even when initial settings are canceled.

<Set time>**Setting Date and Time****MENU31**

Default setting
Auto time set ON

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal manually or the automatic correction of the date and time.

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen, which allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. “Alarm clock” and “Schedule”).
- To set the date and time in “Initial setting” (p.43), start with step 2.
- You can set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Set time”**2 Select any item**

Auto time set ON (default)	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting “Auto time set ON” receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set a time different from the actual time.

■ When “Auto time set OFF” is selected

Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).

<Example: Setting February 13, 2007, 12:05>

Use to move the highlight, and then enter numbers with the dial keys.

In this example, press **[2]**, **[0]**, **[0]**, **[7]**, **[0]**, **[2]**, **[1]**, **[3]**, **[1]**, **[2]**, **[0]** and **[5]**.



NOTE

- ◆ Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- ◆ The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set “Auto time set OFF” with the battery pack which has been removed for long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- ◆ The time is corrected in the situations below using the time information acquired from network. The time may not be automatically corrected due to poor signal reception.
 - A FOMA terminal is turned on.
 - Charging starts when the standby screen appears and another function is not running.
 - “Auto time set ON” is set.
- ◆ The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when “” appears.
- ◆ A several-second difference may occur.

<Caller ID Notification>

MENU17

Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF

Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting when “” appears.
- This function is only available when the other party’s phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to “ON” and make a call again.

1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Caller ID Notification” ▶ Select any item

Activate/Deactivate	Network security code → p.138	
	ON	▶ Enter your network security code
	OFF	▶ Enter your network security code
Check setting	▶ Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press	

NOTE

- ◆ You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from “Phonebook”, “Redial” or “Received calls”. → p.47

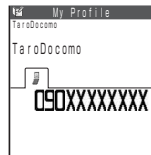
<My Profile>

MENU0

Checking Your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “My Profile”



NOTE

- ◆ By default, only your own number is shown.
- ◆ Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored. Storing and showing your personal data → p.293
- ◆ You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu ▶ “ Menu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Mail Settings” ▶ “Confirm Mail Address”

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Making phone calls

Making a Call	46
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call	48
Making International Calls	WORLD CALL 48
Using Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 51
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number	Redial/Dialed calls 53
Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls	186/184 55
Sending Push Signals Quickly	Pause dial 55
Setting Prefix Numbers	Prefix setting 57
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls	Sub-address setting 58
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection	Reconnect signal 58
Blocking Out Ambient Noise	Noise reduction 58
Switching to Hands-free Operation	Hands-free 59
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car	In-car Hands-free 59

Receiving phone calls

Receiving a Call	60
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party)	61
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls	Answer setting 61
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls	Setting when folded 62
Using the Received Calls Record	Received calls 62
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	Volume 65
Adjusting the Ring Volume	Ring volume 65

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately	Answer hold 66
Setting the Hold Tone	Set hold tone 66
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 67
Using Public Mode (Power off)	Public mode (power off) 68
Checking Missed Calls	Info notice setting 70
Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video ...	Record message 71
Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call	Quick message 73
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos	73
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages	VP message 74

Making a Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "phone number entry" screen appears. Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

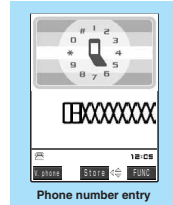
A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.

■ To call a mobile phone

090-XXXX-XXXX
or
080-XXXX-XXXX

■ To call a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX



Function menu → p.47


2

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed. The "📞" icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call. The "in-call" screen appears.


■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call" → p.48

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the Caller ID Request service switched to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.



3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ You can make calls while in i-mode.
- ◆ A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to calls to be made. The Chaku-moji message is shown on the screen of the other party's phone. → p.51
- ◆ You cannot make calls during 64K data communication or videophone calls. However, if the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, you can change a videophone call to a voice call by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.) → p.81
- ◆ While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, a still image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.59
- ◆ You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → p.301


Function menu (phone number entry screen)

Notify Caller ID	<p>Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF".</p> <p>■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting</p> <p>▶ "Cancel prefix"</p> <p>When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.44) setting is applied.</p>
Prefix numbers	<p>▶ Select a prefix name to add</p> <p>"Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.57</p>
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.52
Int'l call	<p>■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)*</p> <p>▶ Select an IDD prefix code</p> <p>"+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</p> <p>■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)</p> <p>▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code</p> <p>The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.</p> <p>Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.49</p>
Multi Number	"Multi Number" → p.315
Add to phonebook	<p>"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.93</p> <p>"Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.94</p>
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	<p>Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.84</p> <p>Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".</p>



* : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).


If you entered a wrong number

■ To insert a number


Use  and move the cursor to the number to the left of the position where you want to insert the number.

■ To delete a number

Use  and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press .

Press  for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the left of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ To reenter a number

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press  for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

Putting an ongoing call on hold <Holding>

1 During a call ▶

The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call



■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.



2 Press , or to resume the call

NOTE

- ◆ Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- ◆ Use "Set hold tone" to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- ◆ A hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the hold tone does not sound when "Phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected the "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".)

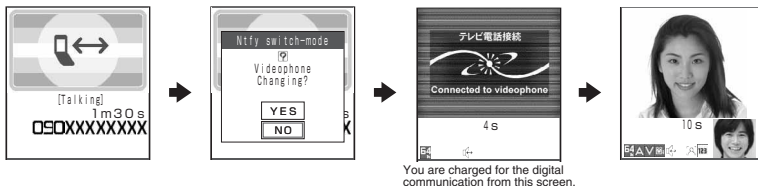
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call

You can change the call mode during a voice call you dialed.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, “V phone” appears during a voice call and you can switch the call mode between voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Ntfy switch-mode” beforehand. → p.87

1 In-call screen (V phone) “YES”

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call, the voice guidance is given. Select “NO” on the “Ntfy switch-mode” message screen to return to the in-call screen.



NOTE

- ◆ You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.
- ◆ You can change a videophone call to a voice call. → p.81
- ◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- ◆ You cannot change the call mode between videophone and voice while talking in the following cases:
 - “Call Waiting” is running.
 - The other party is holding a call.
 - The other party has activated Record message.
- ◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- ◆ If you try to change the call mode, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select an image to send, camera image or substitute image. → p.61
- ◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- ◆ If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
- ◆ If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message “No switch” meaning you cannot change the call mode. The voice call continues.
- ◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
- ◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
- ◆ The hands-free operation is activated or deactivated according to the “Hands-free switch” setting when the call mode is changed, regardless of the hands-free status before the change. → p.86

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.

FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to “WORLD CALL” (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).



* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.

- WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding “+” or selecting “Int'l call” or “Prefix numbers” from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the “MYLINE” service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the “MYLINE” service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with “010” removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

“International videophone calls” can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing  () to make the call after following the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of phone used by the other party, the other party’s image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make international calls

1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130 → 010 → (country code) → (area code) → (the other party’s phone number)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, “0” may be required.



An international call is made.

3 To end the call, press

Using “+” to make an international call

Using the “+” prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial the international access code (e.g. 009130-010).

- “Auto assist setting” in “Int’l dial settings” is set to “Auto” at the time of purchase so that a FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1 On the standby screen, dial the following: + ((1 second or longer)) → (country code) → (area code) → (other party’s phone number)

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, “0” may be required.



An international call is made.

■ To make a call without converting “+” into the IDD prefix code

▶ “Original phone No.”

*: This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ To cancel a call

▶ “Cancel”

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int’l dial settings>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country Code setting: アメリカ (Country code: 1)
-----------------	--

You can change the settings for dialing international calls or store country codes. You can set the following:

Auto assist setting	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered “+” is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.
Country Code setting	Stores country names and country codes used when you make international calls.

● Converting “+” automatically

Set this function to convert “+” automatically when making international calls.

1 ► “Settings” ► “Dialing” ► “Int’l dial settings” ► “Auto assist setting” ► “Auto”

- To not convert automatically
 - “OFF”

2 Select an international access name


● Storing an IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

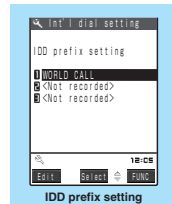
1 ► “Settings” ► “Dialing” ► “Int’l dial settings” ► “IDD prefix setting”

The “IDD prefix setting” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

- To edit a stored item
 - Highlight an item to edit and press  (Edit)

3 Enter an international access name ► Enter the IDD prefix code



Function menu (IDD prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits the IDD prefix code.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted IDD prefix code.
Delete all	► Enter your security code ► “YES” Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code set in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” (automatically added) is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes. See the DoCoMo website for more information about country codes.

1 ► “Settings” ► “Dialing” ► “Int’l dial settings” ► “Country code setting”

The “Country Code set” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)

3 Enter a country name ► Enter a country code



Function menu (Country code setting screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
Delete all	► Enter your security code ► “YES” Deletes all the stored country code settings.

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting

MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID

When making a voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- This function is supported by the 902iS series, SH902iSL, SH702iS, P702iD, D702iF, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, and the 903i series.
- Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent to phones overseas.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ Select any item

Create message	“Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently” → p.51	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed when it arrives.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.

● Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to be used frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.

- 5 messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
- Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

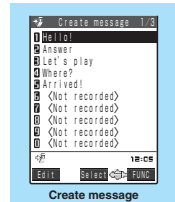
1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ “Create message”

The “Create message” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press [Edit] (Edit)

- To edit a stored Chaku-moji message
 - ▶ Highlight an item to edit and press [Edit] (Edit)

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message



Function menu ▶ p.51

NOTE

- ◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” and press [Edit] on the Create message screen also allows you to add a Chaku-moji message.

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	▶ Use [OK] to select a checkbox [] ▶ [Finish] ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE

- ◆ If [Set] is pressed without any changes on the screen for editing a pre-installed message, the pre-installed one will remain.
- ◆ Pre-installed Chaku-moji messages cannot be deleted. If a pre-installed message is edited and deleted, it will be restored to the pre-installed one.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

Chaku-moji messages can be added to voice calls or videophone calls that are made by dialing or using “Phonebook” entries, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record.

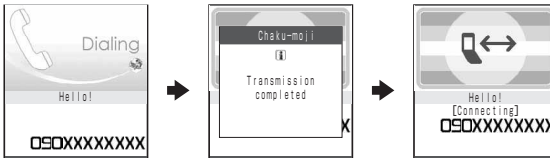
<Example: Adding a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a call>

1 Phone number entry screen (p.46) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ Select any item

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the Chaku-moji message, press (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2

When the other party’s terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, “Transmission completed” appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message

▶ (V. phone)

■ To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chaku-moji” ▶ “Create message” ▶ Delete all the entered Chaku-moji characters and press

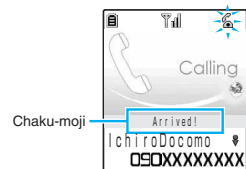
NOTE

- ◆ Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message is sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- ◆ If the callee’s phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, “Transmission failed” appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The Chaku-moji messages are not logged in the Received calls record of the callee’s phone.)
 - The phone does not support Chaku-moji.
 - The phone is set to hide Chaku-moji messages by “MSG display settings”.
- ◆ If the callee’s phone is under conditions such as the following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending.
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
 - The ring time for Record message is set to 0 seconds.
 - The phone is out of service area or turned off.
- ◆ Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee’s phone. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
- ◆ If “Auto redial as voice” (p.84) is set to “ON” and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
- ◆ If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using “Select message”, the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed in the “Create message” screen.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The receiving screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.

- When you receive a Chaku-moji, a message appears to notify it.



Example: Voice call

NOTE

- ◆ Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of caller's or callee's phone. When this happens, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
- ◆ If you receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the time specified in "Set mute seconds" in "Ring time(sec.)", the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message is logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.62) ▶ Select an entry with "✎"

The "Received calls (details)" screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE

- ◆ If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record entry is not sent.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Information such as phone number, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls and videophone calls entries. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- If you dial to the same phone number twice or more, only the latest call is recorded in the Redial record while all the calls are recorded in the Dialed calls record.
- When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during videophone calls.

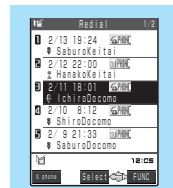
1 On the standby screen ▶

The "Redial (list)" screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶ On the standby screen ▶  ▶ "Own data" ▶ "Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls (list)" screen appears.





Example: Redial (list)

Function menu ▶ p.54

2 Select a Redial or Dialed calls record entry to check

The "Redial (details)" screen or "Dialed calls (details)" screen appears. In the top right corner of the screen, the "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use  to move to the previous (more recent) number or  to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (details)

Function menu ▶ p.54



3 or

■ To make a videophone call

▶  (V. phone)



4 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, or set "Original lock" in "Record display set" to "lock".
- ◆ Press  and  on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- ◆ Selecting "Multi Number" from the function menu to make a call shows the item selected when making the call ("Basic Number" or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen.
- ◆ Setting "Secret mode" erases all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- ◆ Phone numbers you have called are also stored in the "Dialed calls" record. Even when twice or more calls are made to the same number, history is recorded as a separate entry in the "Dialed calls" record.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

- The function menus of Redial/Dialed calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID^{*1}	Select whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.44) setting is applied.	
Prefix numbers^{*1}	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.57	
Chaku-moji^{*1}	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.52	
Int'l call^{*1}	■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)^{*2} ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.49	
Multi Number^{*1}	"Multi Number" → p.315	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → p.95	
Look-up phonebook	"Accessing a phonebook entry from the Redial or Dialed calls record" → p.99	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130	
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211	
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.249	
Sent address	Shows the sent address list.	
Connection speed^{*1}	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.84 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".	
Delete	Deletes the Redial or Dialed calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries.







*1 : Only available for the details screen.

*2 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with the mail address stored in the phonebook with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.
- ◆ Performing "Delete all" deletes all the entries logged in the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that performing "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Redial record entries does not delete any entry of the Dialed calls record. To delete the Dialed calls record entries, use the function menu on the Dialed calls screen.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Voice call		International videophone call
	International call		Packet communication call
	Videophone call		64K data communications call

<186/184>

Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.


Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a call.	p.44
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.55
Notify Caller ID	Accesses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a call.	p.47



Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To show your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.


- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu. → p.47



■ To show your phone number

Voice calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone calls: 186 - (the other party's phone number) -  ()

■ To hide your phone number

Voice calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

Videophone calls: 184 - (the other party's phone number) -  ()

NOTE

- ◆ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" prefix.
- ◆ If you make a call with "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

<Pause dial>

MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to QUICKCAST⁺ or to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and X symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Pause dial”

The “Pause dial” screen appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

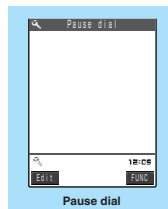
The stored dialing data appears.

2 [Envelope] (Edit) ▶ Enter the dialing data

Press [0] to [9], [#] and [*] to enter dialing data.

■ To enter a pause (p)

▶ [*] (1 second or longer)



Function menu ▶ p.56

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the dialing data
Send pause dial	▶ Enter the destination phone number ▶ [Phonebook] or [Redial] Each time you press [Phonebook] or [Redial], the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as pause dial

1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Pause dial”

2 [Phonebook] ▶ Dial the destination phone number

■ To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using part of the number

▶ Dial a part of the phone number ▶ [Phonebook] to search the phonebook

■ To enter a phone number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number

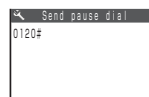
▶ [Phonebook] Select a search mode on the search phonebook screen

■ To enter a number by searching the Received calls/Redial record

▶ [Redial] Search the number from the Received calls record or press [Redial] to search from the Redial record

3 [Phone] or [Phonebook]

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and shows the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.



4 [Phone] or [Phonebook]

Each time you press [Phone] or [Phonebook], the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ To transmit all the dialing data at once

▶ [Phone] (1 second or longer) ▶ “Send at one time”

It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- ◆ Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- ◆ Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- ◆ You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting
WORLD CALL (009130010)

You can set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can then add a preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number when making a call by dialing, using the phonebook, "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. For example, it is useful to set "186" or "184" prefix.

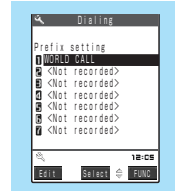
- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and +.

1 MENU ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Dialing" ▶ "Prefix setting"

The "Prefix setting" screen appears.

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press [Edit] (Edit)

- **To edit a stored prefix**
 - ▶ Highlight an item to edit and press [Edit] (Edit)
- **To check a stored prefix**
 - ▶ Select an item to check



Function menu ▶ p.57

3 Enter a name

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.



4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

Numbers can consist of up to 10 digits.

Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all prefixes.

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting
ON

This function enables you to set “X” contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following “X” are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communication devices or to select contents in “V-live”.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Sub-address setting” ▶ “ON”

- To cancel the sub-address setting
 - ▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ In the following cases, “X” does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including “X” is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
 - “X” is at the beginning of a phone number.
 - “186/184” is followed by “X” at the beginning of a phone number.
 - “X” follows the number entered in “Prefix numbers”.
 - “X590#/X591#/X592#” is included in a phone number.

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

MENU77

Default setting
High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call or videophone call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

- The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Reconnect signal” ▶ “No tone”, “High tone” or “Low tone”

NOTE

- ◆ A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.
- ◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- ◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

MENU76

Default setting
ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice or videophone call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Noise reduction” ▶ “ON”

- To not use the noise reduction
 - ▶ “OFF”


Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call



Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.




1 In-call screen (p.46) ▶

When a voice call arrives, press   while a FOMA terminal is ringing to switch to the hands-free operation.

“” appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

▶ Press   during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and “” disappears during a voice or “” changes to “” during a videophone call.



Example: Voice call

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- ◆ The other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- ◆ Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as “In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01” (optional) or car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device.

For information on how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- ◆ The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice and videophone calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to “Silent”.
- ◆ When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and messages as specified in the “Public mode (Driving mode)” settings.
- ◆ When Record message is set, the FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the “Record message” settings.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial record, the connection speed set in the hands-free device is applied. If no connection speed is set, “64K” is used.
- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, “Setting when folded” is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, the call condition does not change regardless of “Setting when folded”.

Receiving a Call

1 When a call arrives, press or

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the “ringing” screen appears. Unless “Phone” under “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call.

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji appears on the screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.51

2 To end the call, press















Function menu → p.60

Function menu (ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Call Forwarding Service” → p.311
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Voice Mail Service” → p.308
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. “Multi Number” → p.315

NOTE

- ◆ Besides  and , you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer calls by pressing any of  to , , ,  or  (Any key answer). However, pressing  while the FOMA terminal is folded puts the call on hold. A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”. You can also set a FOMA terminal so that pressing a key stops only the ring tone (Quick silent).
- ◆ Pressing  or  while a FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the other party’s message. (Pressing  also sets Manner mode.) → p.73
- ◆ When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller’s phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller’s entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for not showing the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears. → p.98
- ◆ Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the “Received calls” record. If a caller shows the caller ID, the caller’s phone number appears. If a caller who shows the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller’s name and phone number appear.
- ◆ Enabling “Set in-call arrival” and setting “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” allow a FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep (“bibip”) when an incoming call arrives while you are on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
 - If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” service, you can forward the new call to the Voice Mail service center.
 - If you have subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, you can forward the new call to the call forwarding number.
 Furthermore, if you subscribe to the “Call Waiting”, set “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” and then activate “Call Waiting”, you can put the current call on hold and answer a new call. See p.310 for details.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook. → p.157
- ◆ You can specify the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook. → p.157
- ◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which “Call rejection” is set in the phonebook. When setting “Call acceptance” for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number. → p.154
- ◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. → p.59

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (the Other Party)

A voice call you received is changed to a videophone call if the call mode is changed on the other party's phone.

- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you receive a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- To enable a caller to change the call mode, "Ntfy switch-mode" must be set to "Indication ON" on the caller's phone beforehand. → p.87

1 In-call screen (p.46) ▶ The other party changes the call mode ▶ "YES"

While a voice call is being changed to videophone call the voice guidance is given.
The call changes to the videophone call and camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send the substitute image to the caller

▶ "NO"

The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



NOTE

- ◆ Whether to activate the hands-free operation when the call mode is changed depends on the "Hands-free switch" setting, regardless of the hands-free status before the mode change. → p.86

<Answer setting>

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

MENU58

Default setting
Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice call or videophone call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 [MENU] ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Answer setting" ▶ Select any item

Any key answer	When a voice call arrives, pressing not only or but also any of [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], , and enables you to answer the call quickly. Pressing with the FOMA terminal folded puts the call on hold.* This does not apply for videophone calls.
Quick silent	When a voice or videophone call arrives, pressing any of [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], , or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone or vibrator. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. When a voice call arrives, pressing also stops the ring tone and vibrator. Pressing or enables you to answer a voice call. For a videophone call, press or to answer with the camera image, or press to answer with the substitute image.
OFF	When a voice call arrives, pressing or only enables you to answer the call. When a videophone call arrives, pressing any of (), and only enables you to answer the call. (Pressing enables you to answer the call with the substitute image.)

* : A hold tone sounds when "Setting when folded" is set to "Tone on" and does not sound when it is set to "No tone" or "End the call".

NOTE

- ◆ Even when "Quick silent" is set, it works as "Any key answer" while in "Manner mode".
- ◆ Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is set, pressing [5] for 1 second or longer (switches on or off the display light), or pressing [8] for 1 second or longer (switches on or off the Privacy angle), does not activate "Any key answer" or "Quick silent".
- ◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can accept voice calls or videophone calls (with the camera image) by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- ◆ While "External keys guard" is set to "ON" or a FOMA terminal is folded, "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not work even when is pressed.

- ◆ Pressing **MEMO/CHECK** or **#** while a FOMA terminal is ringing enables you to activate Record message to record the caller's message or video. →p.73

<Setting when folded>

MENU18

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting
End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

- 1** MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Setting when folded” ▶ Select any item

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and the substitute image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
Tone on	Puts the call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone”. While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone” and see a hold image. →p.66 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and played through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing END .	

* : If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

NOTE

- ◆ While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if “Speaker ON” is set.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call condition. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to the substitute image.
- ◆ Even if “Tone on” is set, folding a FOMA terminal leads to the “No tone” operation while “Call Waiting” is activated.

<Received calls>

MENU24

Using the Received Calls Record

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone numbers and the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call and videophone call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during videophone calls.
- If you change the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.

- 1** MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Received calls” ▶ Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the call record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the list of Received calls record

The “Received calls (list)” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.64

3 Select a Received call record entry to check

The "Received calls (details)" screen appears. In the top right corner of the screen, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check the earlier or later Received call record entries

Use to move to the previous (more recent) entry or to move to the next (older) entry.

■ For a phone number stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Function menu p.64

4 or

■ To make a videophone call

(V. phone)

5 To end the call, press

NOTE



- ◆ Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone numbers, delete the Received calls record entries or set in "Original lock set" to "lock".
- ◆ When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the call does not appear in the Received calls record. → p.157
- ◆ Pressing on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- ◆ Press and on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Received calls record entry.
- ◆ Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- ◆ If a caller uses "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" may be displayed.
- ◆ If a phone number shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number will be recorded in the Received calls record. If the phone number is not shown, the reason for hiding the number (p.156) will be shown in the Received calls record. Even if the shown phone number is stored in the phonebook, while "Restrict dialing" is set, the name and phone number will appear only if the phone number is specified in "Restrict dialing". Only the phone number will appear for the phone number not specified in "Restrict dialing".
- ◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record. → p.98

■ Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls	/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls	/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls	/	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
/	Voice record message/videophone message recorded		Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that are received without an external unit connected
	Received remote monitoring calls		Calls with Chaku-moji message

Function menu (Received calls screen)

- The function menus of Received calls screen are the same between the list and the details.

Notify Caller ID^{*1}	<p>Selects whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF".</p> <p>■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.44) setting is applied.</p>
Prefix numbers^{*1}	<p>▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.57</p>
Chaku-moji^{*1}	<p>"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.52</p>
Int'l call^{*1}	<p>■ When "+" is prefixed (a country code is added)^{*2} ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+." is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</p> <p>■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.49</p>
Multi Number^{*1}	<p>"Multi Number" → p.315</p>
Ring time	<p>Shows the Missed call record entries with the ring times. This setting is available only when the Received calls (list) screen appears.</p>
Add to phonebook	<p>"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → p.95</p>
Look-up phonebook	<p>"Accessing a phonebook entry from the Redial or Dialed calls record" → p.99</p>
Add desktop icon	<p>"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130</p>
Compose message	<p>"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211</p>
Compose SMS	<p>"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → p.249</p>
Received address	<p>Shows the Received address list.</p>
Connection speed^{*1}	<p>Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".</p>
Select image	<p>Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.84 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "My side" or "Chara-den".</p>
Delete	<p>Deletes the Received call record entries.</p>
	<p>Delete this Deletes the selected Received call record entry.</p>
	<p>Delete selected ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.</p>
	<p>Delete all ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Received calls record entries.</p>

*1 : Only available for the details screen

*2 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- ◆ Received calls through packet and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

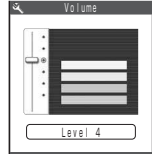
- If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call ▶ Use (↶) or (MEMO/CHECK) to adjust the volume

You can adjust the volume in the same way by pressing or for 1 second or longer. You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing (↶) or (MEMO/CHECK) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.



NOTE

- ◆ You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone or hands-free call.
- ◆ Press or to adjust the volume during a videophone call. Even if pressing (↶) or (MEMO/CHECK) during the earpiece volume adjustment, you cannot adjust the volume in succession.

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

1 On the standby screen ▶ or (1 second or longer) ▶ Use or to adjust the volume

You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing or for 1 second or longer. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the volume of the ring tones given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF. There are six volume settings for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ring volume” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS or packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.

2**■ To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)**

▶ In “Level 6”, press

When you receive a call with “Step” set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6”.

■ To set a silent ring tone

▶ In “Level 1”, press

When the silent ring tone is set, a FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.

An icon appears on the standby screen to show that the “Silent” ring tone is set.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Phone” and “Videophone” calls.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF”.

: Appears when both and are set.

NOTE

- ◆ The ring volume specified in “Phone” in this function is also applied to “Select ring tone” for voice calls and the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “To Do list”.

<Answer hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

1**You are receiving a call**

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.

The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while a call is held in “Set hold tone”.

**■ To hang up while a call is on hold**

▶

■ If a caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.

2**Press or to resume the call**

When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can also answer the call by pressing to , , , or . Furthermore, pressing , or also enables you to answer the call.

For videophone calls → p.81

NOTE

- ◆ Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
- ◆ If “Phone” or “Videophone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or a FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.
- ◆ If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, selecting “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” from the function menu when you are receiving a call either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting

On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1

▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Set hold tone” ▶ Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when a call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announcement 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announcement".
	Voice announcement 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	"Fur Elise" is played.
	Melody 2	"Mary Had A Little Lamb" is played.
	Melody 3	"Symphony No.25 in G minor" is played.
	Voice announcement 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announcement".
	Voice announcement 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296

* : Not displayed if no Voice announcement message has been recorded.


NOTE

- ◆ You can check the selected message by pressing  (Play) on the message selection screen.
- ◆ Even if you set "English" in "Select language", the messages of "Tone 1" and "Tone 2" are given in Japanese.


<Public mode (Driving mode)>

Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

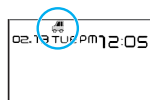
Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or cancelled when the " " icon appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While the Caller ID Request is set to "Activate", receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).


1 On the standby screen (1 second or longer)

Public mode is set and " " appears.

When a call is received, the message (in Japanese) saying "I can't answer the call because I'm driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later" is sent to the caller.



■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

Press  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen while Public mode is set.

Public mode is canceled and " " disappears from the screen.

NOTE



- ◆ Even if "Record message" is set to "ON", Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- ◆ When "Manner mode" is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- ◆ If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- ◆ The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
 - Ring tone for voice/videophone calls
 - Ring tone for MessageR/MessageF
 - Alarm clock tone
 - To Do list alarm tone
 - Low-voltage alarm tone
 - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone
 - Mail ring tone
 - Chat mail ring tone
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
 - Charge sound

● If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when receiving a voice call or videophone call. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

NOTE

- ◆ Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when “” appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for “”.
- ◆ When a mail is received, the “New mail” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.^{*2} • Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting. 	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement. ^{*3}
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*2 : If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*3 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)



Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the power turned off, the caller will hear an announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call will end.

1 On the standby screen▶ 2 5 2 5 1▶

The Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).



If public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller will hear an announcement that “I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on.”

■ To cancel Public mode (power off)

▶ On the standby screen▶  2 5 2 5 0▶ 

Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ To check the Public mode (power off) setting

▶ On the standby screen▶  2 5 2 5 9▶ 

You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting remains unchanged until you dial “*25250” to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.

The caller will hear the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- The videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (power off) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement. ^{*1}	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.^{*2} • Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting. 	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement. ^{*3}
Nuisance Call Blocking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the caller does not show the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received Calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*2 : If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no public mode message is played . Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

*3 : Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting
ON

Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, recorded messages or Voice Mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

- This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the “Missed calls”, “New mail”, “Chat mail”, “Record message” or “Voice Mail” desktop icon appears. → p.131

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

- “Settings” → “Incoming call” → “Info notice setting” → Select any item

ON	Uses “Bibip, bibip” electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

Checking for missed calls, new mails or new chat mails

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails or new chat mails		When you have no missed call, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	“Bibip, bibip” tone and approx. 1-second vibration *1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in “Phone”, “Mail” and “Chat mail” in “Illumination”. When you have a missed call, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	“Bibip” tone and 0.2-second vibration *1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 5 seconds in “Color 12”.

*1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates when “Phone” in “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”.

*2 : If the flashing color is set to “Gradation” in “Illumination”, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” for missed calls, “Color 1” for new mails and “Color 3” for new chat mails.

NOTE

- ◆ When External keys guard is set to “ON”, you cannot confirm missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded even by pressing (MEMO/CHECK).
- ◆ The “OFF” volume is determined in the “Phone” under “Ring volume”. When “Silent” or “Step” is set, “Level 2” is applied.
- ◆ In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected “Original” manner mode and “Phone vol.” is not set to “Silent”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- ◆ This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.
- ◆ When you set “Missed info” of “Illumination” to “OFF”, the incoming call lamp will not light/blink.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

- When “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) is set to “ボイス” (voice) and (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed with a FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting

Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ring time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image of the other party's phone is also recorded.

- You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages • Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages • Videophone call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. • Setting "Record message" to "ON" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. • Activating the Voice Mail service (p.308)

Setting Record message

- 1** ► **"Settings"** ► **"Incoming call"** ► **"Record message"** ► **Select any item**

ON	Selects the type of answer message.	
	Japanese 1	"I can't answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep." is played in Japanese.
	Japanese 2	"Thank you for your call, but I can't take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep." is played in Japanese.
	English	"I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you." is played.
	Voice announce 1'	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
	Voice announce 2'	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296
OFF	Cancels the "Record message" setting.	

* : Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and and appear on the standby screen.

■ To set the displayed time

- ▶ Without entering a time, press

NOTE

- ◆ If the numbers of recorded voice messages and VP messages have already reached the respective maximum numbers, Record message cannot be set to "ON".
- ◆ You can check the selected answer message by pressing (Play) on the answer message selection screen.
- ◆ If "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in "Voice announce" setting, "Japanese 1" is set for the answer message.
- ◆ To give priority to "Record message" when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆ If the mute time set in "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time set for Record message, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, make sure that the ring time for Record message is longer than the mute time.
- ◆ You can use "Discern connect" to set an answer message for each phone number and "Discern group" for each group. → p.105

When a call arrives when “Record message” is set to “ON”

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.

- When a voice call arrives, the answer message is given and recording starts.
- When a videophone call arrives, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is given. The “Recording” image is then sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

- The recording screen appears. The caller’s voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



Example: Voice Call

■ To answer a voice call during recording

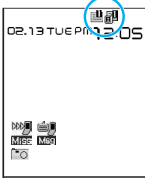


■ To answer a videophone call during recording

▶ To answer the call with the camera image, press or (V.phone). To answer with the substitute image, press .

■ When message recording ends

- The original screen reappears and the “Missed calls” and “Record message” desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details. → p.131
- When one voice message is recorded, “” changes to “”. “” appears for two messages, “” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one video message is recorded, “” changes to “”. “” appears for two video messages.



NOTE

- ◆ When “” appears, Record message is unavailable.
- ◆ Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, a FOMA terminal cannot use Record message to record the next message.
- ◆ If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller’s voice during recording.
- ◆ You cannot receive other calls while a message or video is being recorded. The other callers hear a busy tone.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even when "Record message" is not set to "ON", this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming voice or videophone call simply by pressing one key.

1 You are receiving a call ▶ (MEMO/CHECK)

The Record message recording starts.

Pressing [#] instead of (MEMO/CHECK) sets Manner Mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON" using this function.
- ◆ This function is enabled even when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" and "Record msg." is "OFF" in the "Original" setting.
- ◆ If you receive a voice or videophone call when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message), Record message is not activated and a FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing [#] allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in "Manner mode set".)

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase msg." screen if a voice record message or voice memo is recorded.

1 [MENU] ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Play/Erase msg."

The "Play/Erase msg." screen appears.

2 Select an item to play

A FOMA terminal beeps and playback begin. When the playback ends, a FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

▶ (MEMO/CHECK)

Each time you press (MEMO/CHECK), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop playback

▶ [] or [CLR]

■ To make a voice or videophone call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ [] , []

Pressing [] makes a voice call or [] makes a videophone call.

■ To erase a message being played

▶ [] (FUNC) ▶ "Erase" ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ p.73

NOTE

- ◆ When a recorded message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) on the standby screen also plays memos.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the messages.
Delete all	Erases all the record messages and voice memos.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- “★” appears on the “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen if a videophone record message is recorded.

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Play/Erase VP msg.”

The “Play/Erase VP msg.” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.74

2 Select an item to play

The “VP msg. playback” screen appears.

■ To play the previous or next message



Each time you press or , the previous or next message is played.

■ To stop playback



■ To make a voice or videophone call to the phone number displayed during playback



Pressing makes a voice call, makes a videophone call.

■ To erase a message being played



■ To turn on/off the speaker during playback



NOTE

- ◆ When a recorded videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- ◆ During playback, you can adjust the volume by pressing (VOLUME UP) or (VOLUME DOWN) or (MEMO/CHECK).

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

● Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

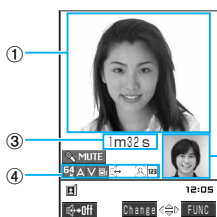
What is Videophone?.....	76
Making a Videophone Call.....	77
Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call.....	81
Receiving a Videophone Call.....	81
Using Chara-den.....	83
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party.....	84
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls.....	Hands-free switch 86
Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call.....	86
Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call.....	Ntly switch-mode 87
Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode.....	V-phone while packet 87
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls.....	88
Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal.....	Remote monitoring 88

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M*2 standard set down in the international 3GPP*1 standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.
 - *1 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
 - *2 : 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
 - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
 - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

Videophone screen



- ① Main screen. By default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone.
- ② Sub-screen. By default, this shows the camera image from your phone.
- ③ Shows the call duration.
- ④ Shows the videophone function settings.

- : 64K videophone call in progress
- : 32K videophone call in progress
- : Sending/receiving voice
- : Voice transmission error
- : Sending/receiving video
- : Video transmission error
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending the substitute image selected in "Select image"
- : Hands-free ON

- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode
- : Key operation/Whole action mode
- : Key operation/Parts action mode
- : Sending Chara-den
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Visual check in progress
- : Microphone mute in progress

Control keys	Videophone operation
	Switches between front and rear cameras
(1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen → p.78
(MEMO/CHECK)	Adjusts volume
	Adjusts zoom ratio
	Switches on/off hands-free
	Displays function menu
(1 second or longer)	Records other party's voice during a call
	Puts a call on hold
(1 second or longer)	Microphone mute

Making a Videophone Call

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Videophone number entry" screen appears. Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

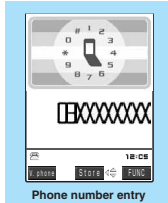
■ To call a mobile phone

090 — × × × × — × × × ×
or

080 — × × × × — × × × ×

■ To call a PHS phone

070 — × × × × — × × × ×



Phone number entry
Function menu → p.78

2 (V.phn)

The "videophone in-call" screen appears. You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker. "Switching to Hands-free Operation" → p.59

■ To switch to a voice call during a videophone call


"Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call" → p.81

■ To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call

▶ Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.





■ To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call




Each time you press  during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).



■ To put a videophone call in progress on hold



The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen. Press  or  to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or  to answer the call using the substitute image. Press  to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

■ To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶  (1 second or longer)

The " MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is. Pressing and holding  again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ If a videophone call is not connected → p.80





You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Videophone in-call
Function menu → p.78

3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- ◆ The "" icon flashes while you are dialing a videophone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If a call is connected at the "32K" dialing speed, "" flashes and is displayed continuously during the call.
- ◆ The "32K" connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that "32K" videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" videophone calls.
- ◆ You can transmit up to 10 characters of message (Chaku-moji) together with a videophone call regardless of pictographs/symbols/double-byte characters/single-byte characters. A Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen of the callee. → p.51
- ◆ International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service. → p.48
- ◆ A FOMA terminal sends the camera image when making a call unless Chara-den is set in "Select image" in the function menu of the videophone number entry screen. → p.78
- ◆ It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.

Function menu (videophone number entry screen)



Notify Caller ID	Selects whether to show the other party your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel "ON" or "OFF" in the "Notify Caller ID" setting ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.44) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	▶ Select a prefix name to add "Setting Prefix Numbers" → p.57
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message" → p.52
Int'l call	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added)* ▶ Select an IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select an IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.49
Multi Number	"Multi Number" → p.315
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.93 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.94
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.84 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of "Me" or "Chara-den".

* : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

- ◆ The "Connection speed" setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls record. Furthermore, if you make a voice call after specifying the "Connection speed" setting, the setting is ignored.

Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

Substitute image, My side	Switches between a camera image and substitute image.	
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. This setting is only retained during a call.	
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen" → "Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen" → "Displaying only the image from the other party's camera" → "Displaying only the image from your own camera".	
Visual check, Visual check off	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call" → p.85	
V.phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.	
Visual prefer.	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during a call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Brightness	▶ Use  to adjust the brightness ▶  Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2.	

V.phone settings	White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → p.174	
		Auto (default)	Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		Fine	Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		Cloudy	Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
		Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Sets a normal image.
		Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome	Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
Chara-den Set.	Sets Chara-den. Chara-den → p.83 Cannot be set for camera images.		
	Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character Selects a character to be displayed.	
	Action List	▶ Check the actions and keys Checks the available actions and corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing [✕].	
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.	
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display. → p.84	
Display light	Sets lighting of display light.		
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on.	
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.	
FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.		
	ON (default)	Displayed in mirror image.	
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.	
Call time disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.		
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.		
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.		
Change to voice	"Changing Videophone Call" → p.81		

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, an explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the callee and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the callee's actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used.
Busy*	Line is busy.
Packet communication	i-mode communication or Packet communication is progress on the callee.
Out of service area/power off	The callee's phone is out of service or the power is turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Displayed when you connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone set to comply with 3G-324M).
Redial using voice call	The forwarded party is non-videophone-terminal.
Notify your Caller ID	The Caller ID Request service is set on the callee.
The other party does not want to answer your call	The called party has set the Bar Nuisance Calls service.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed.	The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.

* This message may also appear during Packet communication depending on the type of other party's terminal.

NOTE

- ◆ If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from a FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- ◆ If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone call, or if the callee's phone supports videophone call but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone call and "Auto redial as voice" (p.84) is set to "ON", the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of November 2006). Note that the call charge may apply in some cases.
- ◆ The "32K" connection speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" and the called party is in a "32K" area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that "32K" videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as "64K" videophone calls.
- ◆ If "Auto redial as voice" (p.84) is set to "ON" and a videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically changed to a voice call. The relations between the set connection speed and "Auto redial as voice" setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Auto redial as voice" set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice-call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
"Auto redial as voice" set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, the videophone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after a videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- ◆ If the "Recharge battery" low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ Digital call charges still apply when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.

Changing Videophone Call to Voice Call

The caller can change the videophone call to a voice call during a videophone call (communication speed 64K).

- If the handset of your party is a FOMA terminal supporting the call change, “Change to voice” can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call and you can switch between videophone and voice calls. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change the call mode, the other party must set his or her terminal to show you “Ntfy switch-mode” beforehand. → p.87

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.77) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change to voice”

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- ◆ You can change between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- ◆ You can change to videophone call during a voice call. → p.48
- ◆ It takes about 5 seconds to change a call. Note that signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- ◆ You cannot change a call in the following cases:
 - The other party is holding a call.
 - The other party has activated Record message.
- ◆ The call time shown is reset to 0 second each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- ◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change a call and the call may be canceled.
- ◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- ◆ You are not charged while “SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO” appears.
- ◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in “Call data” may differ from the one you will pay.
- ◆ When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Receiving a Videophone Call

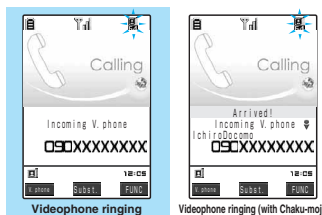
Use this procedure to receive an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call with your camera image, you can receive the call showing the caller a substitute image instead of your camera image.

1 When you receive a videophone call, press (V. phone) or

The “videophone in-call” screen (p.77) appears. You can talk hearing the other party's voice through the speaker. “Switching to Hands-free Operation” → p.59

■ If a Chaku-moji message is also coming in

A Chaku-moji appears on the videophone ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand. → p.51



Function menu → p.82

Videophone ringing (with Chaku-moji)

■ **To answer using a substitute image**



A substitute image appears on the caller's display. After sending a substitute image, you can still change it to a camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ **When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**

▶ Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
You can answer using your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers a call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ **To put a videophone call on answer hold while a FOMA terminal is ringing**



The "応答保留中 On hold" image appears on the caller's videophone display and the message is played. Press (V phone) or to answer a videophone call on answer hold using the camera image, or to answer the call using the substitute image.

■ **To switch between camera image and substitute image during a videophone call**

▶ Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ **To send video from the rear camera during a videophone call**



▶ Each time you press during a videophone call, the video switches between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode).

■ **To put a videophone call in progress on hold**



The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the caller's videophone screen. Press (V phone) or to answer a videophone call on hold using the camera image, or to answer the call using the substitute image. Press to answer a videophone call in condition before holding.

■ **To mute voice sent during a videophone call (microphone mute)**

▶ (1 second or longer)

The "MUTE" icon appears while in mute. Video is transmitted as it is. Pressing and holding again for 1 second or longer cancels the mute.

2 To end the call, press

Function menu (videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends a call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards a call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call Forwarding" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Call Forwarding Service" → p.311
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the "Voice Mail" setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate". "Voice Mail Service" → p.308
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. "Multi Number" → p.315

NOTE

- ◆ Digital call charges still apply to a caller when a substitute image appears during a videophone call.
- ◆ Even if "Call Forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible (p.76) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding.
- ◆ If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the caller sees a movie announcement that the call has been rejected, and then the call ends.
- ◆ Press or during an incoming videophone call, then "Record message" starts and the message can be recorded. (Pressing sets the manner mode at the same time.) → p.73
- ◆ Incoming call operations for a videophone call during i-mode communication follows "V-phone while packet". → p.87
- ◆ You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. Mails you cannot receive are held at the i-mode Center. Receive them using "Check new messages" after a videophone call ends.
- ◆ You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- ◆ When you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the call in progress to answer the call that has newly arrived.

- ◆ If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging a battery before a videophone call is terminated, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- ◆ Depending on the settings used by a caller, you may receive a substitute image instead of a camera image.

Changing videophone call to voice call (the other party)

Your received videophone call is changed to voice call by changing the call mode on the other party's phone.

- You can change a videophone call only when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change a call on the dialing phone, “Ntfy switch-mode” must be set to “Indication ON” on the receiving phone beforehand. → p.87

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.77) ▶ Change the call mode on the dialing phone

While a videophone call is changed to voice call, the screen is displayed showing that the calls are being changed, and a voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- ◆ When changing to a voice call, the hands-free is set to OFF.

Using Chara-den

This function enables you to send a cartoon character instead of your camera image during a videophone call.

- You can pre-check the actions available for Chara-den. → p.271
- To use Chara-den, you must first set the following functions. Specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or “Discern connect” also allows you to use Chara-den.
 - Setting “Chara-den” in “Substitute image” in “Select image”. → p.84

<Example: When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook>

1 When you receive a videophone call, press ☑

2 Control your character by pressing dial keys

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ To change the action mode

You can switch between “Whole” and “Parts” using “Chara-den set.” from the function menu. → p.79

“Whole” action mode gives you full control over the character's movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Press \square (1) to \square (9) or $\#$ (1) to $\#$ (9) to express Chara-den.

“Parts” action mode gives you partial control over the character's movements (face, hands and feet, etc.). Press \square (1) to \square (9) to express Chara-den.

■ To check an action

You can view the action list by pressing \times .

Use \square to select the action to run it.

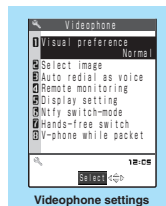


Action list	1/22
笑う	:1
パンザイ	:2
泣き	:3
怒る	:4
驚く	:5
悩む	:6
首を傾げる	:7
寝る	:8
照れる	:9
YES	:#1

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

1 MENU ► “Settings” ► “Videophone”

The “Videophone settings” screen appears.



2 Select any item

Visual preference	Sets the image quality for videophone call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Select image	“Setting an image to send during a videophone call” → p.84	
Auto redial as voice	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call cannot be connected.	
	ON	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	OFF (default)	A message notifying that the videophone call could not be connected appears and the standby screen reappears.
Remote monitoring	“Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal” → p.88	
Display setting	“Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call” → p.86	
Ntfy switch-mode	“Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call” → p.87	
Hands-free switch	“Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls” → p.86	
V-phone while packet	“Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode” → p.87	

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (Beans) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed
------------------------	--



Use this procedure to select an image sent in place of a camera image.

- This function is available for setting a JPEG or GIF image that is 100K bytes or smaller, and also 690 dots wide × 690 dots high or smaller JPEG or 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or smaller GIF files.
- The setting of this function is still retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.84) ► “Select image” ► Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send for a call on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets an image to send while recording a videophone message.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while preparing a videophone message.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while recording a voice memo.

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and message. ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select the image
Chara-den	This option appears only when “Substitute image” is selected. Sends the Chara-den character selected in “Substitutive image”. “Function menu (Chara-den list screen)” → p.272 Priority sequence for Chara-den setting → p.94 ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select the image

■ Messages to be sent

The messages to be sent are as follows:


- For answer hold: “応答保留中 On Hold”
- For holding: “保留 Holding”
- For sending the substitute image: “カメラオフ Camera Off”
- For recording videophone message: “伝言メモ録画中 Recording Voice only”
- For preparing videophone message: “伝言メモ準備中 Preparing”
- For recording voice memo: “音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only”

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- ◆ You can change this setting using the function menu during a videophone call. However, the setting reverts to the original value when the videophone call ends.
- ◆ If signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, an image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the “Visual preference” setting.

<Select image>

- ◆ Some GIF images may not be set in “Original”.
- ◆ You can switch between a camera image and a substitute image during a videophone call.
- ◆ To check an image, select an item you want to check and press  (Play).
- ◆ Changing the setting from “Original” to “Pre-installed” or “Chara-den” does not delete the stored image.
- ◆ The set still image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party’s terminal. However, the answering message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party’s terminal.
- ◆ You cannot delete the “Original” setting. Setting “Set as display” (p.256) in My picture also allows you to change the “Original” setting. If the original image to be pasted is deleted, the “pre-installed” message is shown on (sent to) the callee’s terminal.
- ◆ When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the “Chara-den” substitute image cannot be displayed, the “Beans” stored at default is sent. If you have already deleted “Beans”, a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.


<Auto redial as voice>

- ◆ When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- ◆ When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the “Redial” or “Dialed calls” record.
- ◆ Even if “Auto redial as voice” is set to “ON”, it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.77) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Visual check”

You can use the image from the built-in camera to check your appearance.

 is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2 (FUNC) ▶ “Visual check off”

Visual check ends. The screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a videophone call, you can enlarge your camera image that is sent to the other party.

- You can adjust the zoom ratio for the rear camera and front camera between 1 × and Approx. 2 ×.
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge an image while sending a substitute image.

1 During a videophone call ▶ ▶ Zoom in or out



<Hands-free switch>



Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting
ON

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically switch to the hands-free mode when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone setting screen (p.84) ▶ “Hands-free switch” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ Even if “Hands-free switch” is set to “ON”, you can cancel the hand-free operation by pressing  “ Off” during a call.
- ◆ Even if “Hands-free switch” is set to “ON”, the FOMA terminal does not automatically switch to the hands-free mode in the following situations:
 - Manner mode is set.
 - A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected. (However, the microphone works in according to the “Select microphone” setting.)
- ◆ The Answer hold or Record message function is activated during an incoming call.

Setting the Image Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting the image to be displayed on the main screen and how to display the camera image <Display setting>

Default setting Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON


1 Videophone settings screen (p.84) ▶ “Display setting” ▶ Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays an image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	My side	Displays an image from your own camera on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image displayed on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displayed in mirror image.
	OFF	Displayed in normal image.

Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between voice call and videophone call.

- When you receive a call with this function set to “Indication ON”, your FOMA terminal notifies the other party that your terminal supports the switching function so that the other party can switch the call.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while “” appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.84) ▶ “Ntfy switch-mode” ▶ Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change between a voice call and videophone call.
Check indication	Displays the item set in “Ntfy switch-mode”.

Handling Videophone Calls Received in i-mode

Default setting

V-phone priority

- A videophone is not equipped with a multi access function and an incoming videophone call is followed by “V-phone while packet” during i-mode communication or mail transmission. →p.352

1 Videophone settings screen (p.84) ▶ “V-phone while packet” ▶ Select any item

V-phone priority	Moves to the incoming videophone call screen. Answering the videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
Packet downld priority	Rejects an incoming videophone call.
V-phone answerphone	Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail service center if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Call forwarding	Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarded number set at the Call Forwarding service if subscribing. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if setting to “V-phone priority”, you cannot answer an incoming videophone call when using the multi access function such as i-mode communication in voice calling.
- ◆ If setting to “Packet downld priority”, “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, an incoming videophone call is recorded as “Missed calls” in “Received calls”.
- ◆ Even if setting to “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, the “Packet downld priority” is performed when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is not subscribed or the forwarded phone number is not set.
- ◆ Even if “V-phone priority” or “Packet downld priority”, the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is enabled when the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds.

Receiving a Videophone Call during i-mode communication

Setting “V-phone while packet” to “V-phone priority” beforehand allows you to receive a videophone call during i-mode communication or mail transmission.

1 When receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication, press (V-phone) or

- To answer using a substitute image



i-mode communication is disconnected, and the Connected to videophone screen appears.

2 To end the call, press

■ To continue i-mode communication

Even when “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can continue using i-mode communication by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.

Videophone ringing function menu → p.82

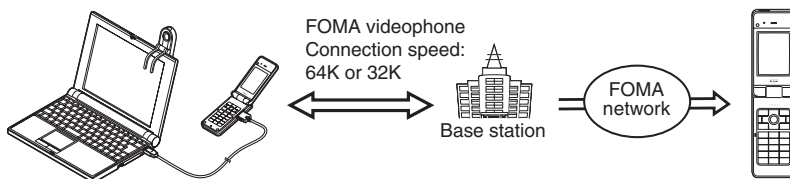
Connecting to an External Device to Make and Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls using an external device such as PC by connecting it to the FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

To enable this function, install a videophone application in a PC or other exclusive device and prepare equipment such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible Web camera (marketed) that will be connected to the PC.

- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions provided with an external device.
- “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005” (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. This application can be downloaded on the following site: (for details about using in PC, check the support page on the website.

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (Only in Japanese)



NOTE

- ◆ You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- ◆ If you subscribe to the “Call Waiting” service and receive a videophone call from an external device during a voice call, you can answer the videophone call after ending the voice call. For a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call received from an external device during a videophone call, the FOMA terminal acts in the same way.

<Remote monitoring>

Viewing Distant Locations Using FOMA Terminal

Default setting Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with the 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either of a dialing or receiving phone for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be carried out when the phone number of the monitoring phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote monitoring and Remote monitoring is set to “ON”.

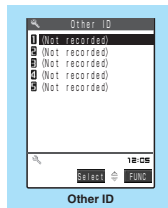
Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and delay until the remote monitoring begins (Ringing time) on the phone receiving the remote monitoring.

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.84) ▶ “Remote monitoring” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Other ID”

The “Other ID” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.89

2 Select “<Not recorded>”

■ To change a previously recorded ID

▶ Select an ID you want to change

3 Enter the phone number of the other phone ▶

After storing an ID, press **CLR** on Other ID screen to return to the remote monitoring screen.

4 “Ringing time” ▶ Enter the ringing time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.

■ To set the displayed time

▶ Without entering a time, press

5 “Set” ▶ “ON”

Remote monitoring is set and “” appears on the standby screen.

■ To turn remote monitoring off

▶ “OFF”

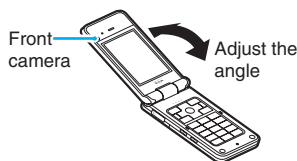


6 Position a FOMA terminal

In remote monitoring, an image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.

Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the monitoring position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.

If the FOMA terminal is left folded, voice and a substitute image overlapped with “カメラオフ Camera off” are sent instead of camera images.



NOTE

- ◆ The ringing time set for remote monitoring cannot be the same as that set for “Record message” or “Automatic answer”.
- ◆ If the ringing time set for “Call Forwarding” on the receiving phone is shorter than the time set for remote monitoring, “Call Forwarding” takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set a shorter ringing time than the “Call Forwarding” setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the phone number of other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a phone number stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
	Dialed calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Dialed calls record. “Dialing a Previously Dialed Number” → p.53
	Received calls	Stores a phone number stored in the Received calls record. “Using the Received Calls Record” → p.62
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID record.	
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. “Set” is set to “OFF” when all IDs are deleted.	

Performing remote monitoring

- To perform remote monitoring, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive remote monitoring calls, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote monitoring begins. Video images from the receiving phone are displayed on the dialing phone and sound is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone.



■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote monitoring

- ▶ Answer by pressing () or before the ringing time has elapsed
- ▶ To return to the list screen, press .

NOTE

- ◆ A remote-monitoring call from a phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting can be received even when “Dial lock” or “Omakase Lock” is set.
- ◆ If the caller ID is not notified, the call is received as a normal videophone call instead of a remote monitoring call.
- ◆ Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions is set at the same time:
 - Public mode (Driving mode) • Manner mode • Call rejection/Accept* • Reject unknown*
 - * When “Call acceptance” is set in a phone number other than the “Other ID” number, when “Call rejection” is set for the “Other ID” phone number on the receiving phone or when the “Other ID” number is not stored in the phonebook and “Reject unknown” is set.
- ◆ If Remote monitoring and Record message or Automatic answer are set at the same time, the ring time set in Record message or Automatic answer is shorter than the one for Remote monitoring and a call arrives from the phone number stored in the Remote monitoring setting, Remote monitoring takes priority.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the speaker regardless of the “Earphone” setting.
- ◆ The ring tone specifically set for remote monitoring is used and it cannot be changed.
- ◆ The ring tone is played at the volume set in “Videophone” in “Ring volume”. However, if the ring volume is set to “Silent”, “Level 1” or “Step”, the volume for remote monitoring call is set to “Level 2”.
- ◆ When a remote monitoring call is received, the incoming call lamp flashes in “Gradation” color and “Standard” pattern, regardless of the “Illumination” setting.
- ◆ You cannot set Answer hold during an incoming remote monitoring call. Press to end the call.
- ◆ If Remote monitoring is set to “ON” on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from a phone number stored in “Other ID” is logged in the Received calls record as a remote monitoring call. If remote monitoring was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed videophone call in the Received calls record.
- ◆ The receiving phone cannot receive a voice or videophone call during remote monitoring. Voice calls or videophone calls made to the receiving phone during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the terminal operates as specified in “Setting when folded”. However, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, the “Setting when folded” specification is ignored and a substitute image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- ◆ The cameras cannot be switched on the receiving phone during remote monitoring.

Ending remote monitoring

1

The call duration appears and the remote monitoring ends.

You can also end remote monitoring by pressing on the receiving phone.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

● Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal	92
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook.....	Add to phonebook 93
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook	Add to UIM phonebook 94
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records	95
Renaming Groups.....	Group setting 96
Making a Call from the Phonebook.....	Search phonebook 97
Editing a Phonebook Entry	Edit phonebook 101
Deleting a Phonebook Entry.....	Delete data 102
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card	UIM operation 102
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status.....	104
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address	Discern connect/Discern group 105
Using Choku-Den.....	Choku-Den 107
Using Dialing Shortcuts	Two-touch dialing 108
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites	Automatic display 108
Saving(Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center	Data Security Service 109

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal







Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

- Besides phonebooks described above, you can create “Choku-Den” available for Choku-Den calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create Choku-Den → p.107

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*1	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage*2	The phonebook will hold up to 2800 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in Choku-Den.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons “  ”, “  ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The “  ” icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2100 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry. And, one address can be stored in Choku-Den.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons “  ”, “  ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The “  ” icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one “Chara-den” character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact's name, reading, ZIP code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1 : You can rename “Group 01” to “Group 19” (“Group 01” to “Group 10” in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently. → p.96

*2 : You can enter 0-9, #, *, + and P (pause) in the phonebook. To use a sub-address (p.58), enter *.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) enables you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → p.108
- You can use the “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number or e-mail address. → p.105
- You can use “Restrictions” to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → p.154
- You can use “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → p.143
- “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” → p.101

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This enables you to use the same phonebook in multiple FOMA terminals.

Displaying names

■ Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the caller ID stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size. The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

■ i-mode mail and SMS

When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender's name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens. The person's name also appears on the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

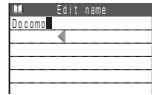
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the "Name" field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 MENU ▶ "Phonebook" ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add to phonebook" ▶ "Phone" ▶ Enter a name

A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.

A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.



2 Check the reading






■ If a reading is incorrect










Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters.

"Search reading" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

 Group	<p>▶ Select a group Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to "group 00".</p>
 Phone number	<p>▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon Enters a phone number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Once you have stored the first phone number, the " <Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.</p>
 Mail address	<p>▶ Enter an e-mail address ▶ Select an icon Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the " <Not stored>" option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.</p>

 Address	▶ Enter a ZIP code ▶ Enter a street address Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
 Birthday	▶ Enter a birthday Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	▶ Enter a memo Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
 Image	Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting "Photo mode" activates the "Photo mode" screen on which you can shoot a still image. → p.168
 Chara-den	Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.
 Memory No.	▶ Enter a memory number A memory number is automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired. Press  ,  or  to automatically* assign an available number.

* : The least of available numbers between 010 and 699 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 699, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

NOTE

- ◆ If you enter “わ , ㇿ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ㇿ” (single-byte, upper case). Only when you press dial Keypad in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
- ◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- ◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
- ◆ If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
- ◆ To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set “Disp. PH-book image” to “ON”. → p.122
- ◆ When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in “Calling” in “Display setting”, the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
- ◆ When you select “Move to top” from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers/mail addresses stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number/mail address is stored as the first.

<Priority sequence for Chara-den setting>

- ◆ The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
 - ① Chara-den setup in Discern connect → p.105
 - ② Chara-den setup in Discern group → p.105
 - ③ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
 - ④ “Substitute image” in “Select image” → p.84

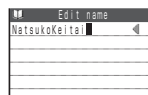
<Add to UIM phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

- Always enter a name in the “Name” field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.


- 1  ▶ **“Phonebook”** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **“Add to phonebook”** ▶ **“UIM”** ▶ **Enter a name**




A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.



- 2 **Check the reading**
■ **If a reading is incorrect**

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used.
“Search reading” in “Search phonebook” uses the reading stored here.

- 3 **Set the respective parameters** ▶  (Finish)

 Group	▶ Select a group Selects a group number between "00" and "10". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
 Phone number	▶ Enter a phone number Enters a phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
 Mail address	▶ Enter an e-mail address Enters an e-mail address. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

NOTE

- ◆ If you enter “わ, ㇿ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ㇿ” (double-byte, upper case). However, “ㇿ” (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you press dial Keypad in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.
- ◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- ◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

- 1  ▶ “Phonebook” ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook” ▶ “Phone” or “UIM” ▶ “Recall”

If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted. If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.



- **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶ “New”

NOTE

- ◆ Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
- ◆ If you receive a voice call or videophone call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
After a voice call or videophone call ends, the original edit screen reappears.


Important

- It is recommended to note the information down separately.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data depending on the specifications of the new model.
Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries. It is recommended to use DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address” or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number to the phonebook.

<Example: Adding information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

- 1 **Received calls screen (p.62)** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Add to phonebook”
- 2 **“Phone”**
■ **To add to the UIM phonebook**
▶ “UIM”

3 “Add” ▶ Locate a phonebook entry to which you want to add the information

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98

■ To store a new phonebook entry

▶ “New”

■ To add information to the UIM

▶ “New” or “Overwrite”

4 Display the phonebook detail screen ▶ (Select)

The phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook edit screen appears.

Editing the phonebook → p.101

5 Press (Finish) when you finish editing

■ If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data

▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ The “Notify Caller ID” setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records is not stored in the phonebook.
- ◆ You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- ◆ The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting>

MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting

FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact’s role (“Work”, “Friends”, etc.) or by hobby (“Baseball”, “Football”, etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Groups 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

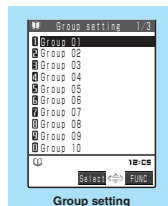
1 ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Group setting”

The “Group setting” screen appears.

2 Select a group ▶ Select a new group name

The “” icon appears next to UIM groups.

If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they appear as separate groups.



Function menu ▶ p.96

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.105
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

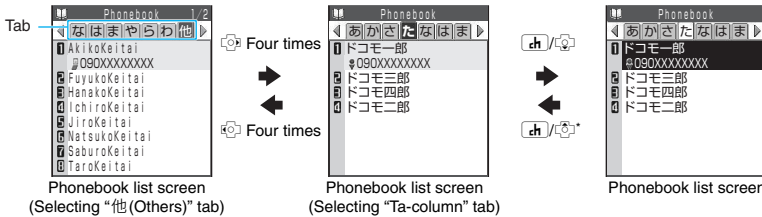
NOTE

- ◆ Resetting a group name does not cancel the “Discern group” settings specified for the group.
- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.
 <Example: Switching tabs from “他(Others)” to “Ta-column” in Alphabet tab display>



* : The display mode is available only when you select the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- ◆ Use to change pages on the same tab. Use and to select a tab.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see “Search column” (p.98) in the search method list.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- ◆ When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in UIM, add “*” before the Group No.).

Opening the other party’s entry to make a call

1 MENU ▶ “Phonebook”

The “Phonebook” screen appears.

■ To make a call on the list screen

▶ Highlight an entry to which you want to make a call and press or ()

Press to make a voice call or () to make a videophone call. If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

■ To switch tabs

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change Display”

You can select either of “Alphabet”, “Memory No.” or “Group”.



Alphabet



Memory No.



Group



Function menu▶p.99

2 Select a desired phonebook entry

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

3 or ()

Press to make a voice call or () to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

Use to display other stored phone numbers.



Phonebook detail
Function menu▶p.100

NOTE

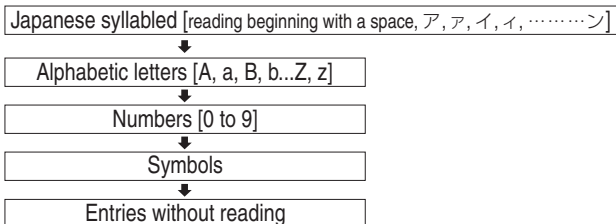
- ◆ You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers. → p.100
- ◆ Press during a call to display the Search group screen, or to display the Search column screen.

Specifying a method to search for an entry

To search for a desired entry, you can select one of 8 search criteria: reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group, column in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.) and all.

Viewing the search results

Except for memory, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the readings entered when entries were stored. If Search all is performed with no search criterion, “A-column” is shown in Alphabet tab display.



1 On the standby screen Select the search method

You can also perform “Search phone No.” by displaying the phone number entry screen (p.46) Enter a part of the phone number or .

To display your preferred search

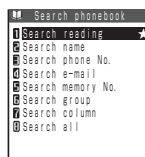
Highlight a search method you want to display preferentially (Prefer)

A star (★) appears next to the preferred search method.

The next time you search the phonebook, pressing on the standby screen will display your preferred search method screen.

To cancel your preferred search method setting

On the standby screen Highlight a search method with a star (★) (OFF)



2 Search the phonebook


When a search ends, the “Phonebook” screen that meets the search criterion appears. “” appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that meets the search criterion is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	Enter some of a reading or Enters a reading from the beginning in the order of family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	Enter part of a name (Exit) or Starts with the surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.
Search phone No.	Enter part of a phone number or You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	Enter part of an e-mail address or
Search memory No.	Enter a 3-digit memory number You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	Select a desired group The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
Search column	Press the key for the “column” you want to search 1 : Only entries that begin with “a” column reading 2 : Only entries that begin with “ka” column reading 3 : Only entries that begin with “sa” column reading 4 : Only entries that begin with “ta” column reading 5 : Only entries that begin with “na” column reading 6 : Only entries that begin with “ha” column reading 7 : Only entries that begin with “ma” column reading 8 : Only entries that begin with “ya” column reading 9 : Only entries that begin with “ra” column reading 0 : Only entries that begin with “wa”, “wo” or “n” column reading * : Other entries

Search method	Procedure and description
Search all	Displays the list of all the entries stored in the phonebook in Alphabet tab.

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing  displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Searching phonebook entries from the Redial, Dialed calls and other records

To easily make a call and send an e-mail, you can search for a desired entry from each detail screen of “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address”.




<Example: To refer to an entry from “Received calls” of voice calls>

1 “Received calls” screen (detail) (p.62) (FUNC) ▶ “Look-up phonebook”

The “Phonebook detail” screen appears.

Function menu (phonebook screen)

- Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Add to phonebook	“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → p.93, “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” → p.94	
Connect to DSC	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶  (Finish) Keeps the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Data Security Service → p.109, 158	
Sort ²	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of “Alphabet”, “Memory No.” or “Group”.	
Discern connect	“Checking the Discern connect settings” → p.107	
Restrictions	“Checking the restriction settings” → p.155	
Group setting	“Renaming Groups” → p.96	
Send 1r data ^{1*3}	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280	
Send all 1r data ³	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.280	
No. of phonebook	Displays the phonebook storage status. → p.104	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this ¹	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶  (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Deletes all the phonebook entries.

*1 : Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.

*2 : Not available when tabs are displayed.

*3 : Not available when the phonebook data is stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- ◆ If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in Choku-Den, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in Choku-Den.
- ◆ If “Delete all” is performed, the UIM phonebook and Choku-Den entries are also deleted.

<Big font/Standard font>

- ◆ You can also change the font size referring to the “Character size” in “Changing the Font” column (p.128).

Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

Edit phonebook	“Editing a Phonebook Entry” → p.101	
Notify Caller ID	<p>Selects whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from “Don’t notify” or “Notify caller”.</p> <p>■ To cancel “Don’t notify” or “Notify caller” in the “Notify Caller ID” setting</p> <p>▶ “Cancel prefix”</p> <p>When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.44) setting applies.</p>	
Chaku-moji	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message” → p.52	
Dial setting	Prefix numbers	▶ Select the prefix name to add “Setting Prefix Numbers” → p.57
	Int'l call	<p>■ When “+” is prefixed (country code is added)¹</p> <p>▶ Select the IDD prefix code</p> <p>“+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code.</p> <p>■ When “+” is not prefixed (no country code is added)</p> <p>▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code</p> <p>The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted.</p> <p>Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → p.49</p>
	Multi Number	“Multi Number” → p.315
	Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call. → p.84 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of “My side” or “Chara-den”.
	Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.
	Discern connect	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address” → p.105
Restrictions	“Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers” → p.154	
Move to top	Specifies the selected phone number/e-mail address as the first number/address when multiple phone number/e-mail addresses are stored in an entry.	
Add to Choku-Den²	Adds the entry to Choku-Den → p.107	
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130	
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211	
Compose SMS	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)” → p.249	
Send 1r data²	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280	
Send all 1r data²	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.280	
Automatic display²	“Specifying phone number to display automatically” → p.109	
Copy	Copies data stored in the phonebook. The copied data can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.334	
	Name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook.
	Phone number³	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook.
Secret code²	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” → p.101	
	Set code	▶ Enter a 4-digit number ▶ “YES” Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
	Set secret^{2,4}	“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.143

Copy to UIM ⁵	Copies phonebook data. "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card" → p.102
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.
Delete data	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry" → p.102

*1 : "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

*2 : Not available for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.

*3 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, "Mail address" appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Address" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Memo" appears.

*4 : If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, "Release secret" appears.

*5 : If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, "Copy from UIM" appears.

NOTE

<Add to Choku-Den>

- ◆ When an entry is added to Choku-Den, "★" appears on the function menu.

<Big font/Standard font>

- ◆ When "Big font" is selected, only the name appears large on the phonebook detail screen.
- ◆ You can also change the font size referring to the "Character size" in "Changing the Font" column (p.128).

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify "phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address. If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode Mail.

NOTE

- ◆ You can only set a secret code to e-mail address "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" or a phone number.
- ◆ You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
- ◆ Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
- ◆ Do not set a secret code using this function if you already registered "phone number+secret code" or "phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry


- Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Edit phonebook" ▶ Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as "Add to phonebook".

Adding information to the phonebook → p.93


■ To assign a new memory number

▶  ▶ Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 Press (Finish) when you finish editing ▶ "YES"

■ For a UIM phonebook entry

▶  (Finish) ▶ "Overwrite" or "Add"

Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.

Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

- ◆ If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in Choku-Den, the entry is automatically edited in Choku-Den.

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Delete data” ▶ Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

- * : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
 - If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.
 - If you have selected a Chara-den character, “Delete Chara-den” appears.

NOTE

- ◆ You can delete a phonebook entry on the phonebook screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.
- ◆ If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number or mail address is deleted, the next phone number or mail address appears.
- ◆ If you select “Delete phone No.” or “Delete this” for a phone number or entry that is stored in Choku-Den, the phone number or entry is also deleted from Choku-Den.

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card


You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot make/receive voice calls or videophone calls, or send/receive mails while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
Items and number of entries that can be copied → p.92

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM).

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code,  appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

2 “Copy” ▶ “Phone → UIM” or “UIM → Phone”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98	
	SMS	Selects SMS data.
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use to select a checkbox (☐) (Finish) “YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu  p.103

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. Copied are up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters for name and up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading.
- ◆ Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- ◆ Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- ◆ Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in group 00.
- ◆ You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- ◆ You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- ◆ If you copy SMS in added folders, “Chat” folder or “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- ◆ Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the selected highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

1  “LifeKit”  “UIM operation”  Enter your security code

2 “Delete”  “Phone” or “UIM”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶ Search the phonebook Displays the phonebook screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish)▶ “YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



Function menu▶p.104

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

- Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the selected highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all the selected highlighted data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.97)▶ (FUNC)▶ “No. of phonebook”

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)
- Secret : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- Image : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)
- Chara-den : Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored Chara-den characters/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

- Phonebook : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful if you want to have ring tone or illumination inform you of the caller, etc.

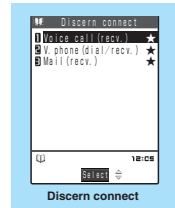
- These functions cannot be set to "Group 00" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The "Discern connect" and "Discern group" functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the "Caller ID Request" service. →p.312

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ [i] (FUNC) ▶ "Discern connect"

The "Discern connect" screen appears.
A star "★" appears next to the selected function.
Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.

■ To set this function for each group

▶ Group setting screen (p.96) ▶ [i] (FUNC) ▶ "Discern group"



2 Select any item

Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number or group.
V.phone (dial/recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

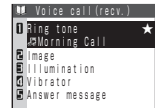
3 Select any item

A star "★" appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶ Highlight a function with "★" and press [R] (Reset)

The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone^{*1}	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112
Image^{*2}	Sets images to distinguish callers. "Changing the Display Settings" → p.119
Chara-den setup^{*3}	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. "Chara-den Set" → p.79
Illumination^{*1}	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails" → p.127
Vibrator	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives" → p.114
Answer message^{*2}	Sets an answer message played when Record message starts for each caller. "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video" → p.71
Connection speed^{*3}	Sets the connection speed used for videophone calls for each phone number. Select "64K" or "32K".

*1 : Available for 64K data communication calls.

*2 : Displayed when "Voice call (recv.)" or "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.

*3 : Displayed when "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.

■ When you set “Discern connect”

The following icons appear on the phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:



: “Ring tone” for voice/videophone calls



: “Ring tone” for mails



: “Illumination” for voice/videophone calls



: “Illumination” for mails



: “Vibrator” for voice/videophone calls



: “Vibrator” for mails



: “Image” for voice/videophone calls



: “Answer message” for voice/videophone calls



: “Chara-den setup” for videophone calls

64k : “64K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls

32k : “32K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls



Example: Videophone setting

NOTE

- ◆ The “Ring tone”, “Illumination” or “Vibrator” in “Mail (recv.)” that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in “[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp” format. When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- ◆ These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary data. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- ◆ When Discern connect/Discern group settings duplicate the ones specified for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with differing settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- ◆ When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination perform as shown below.

Ring tone, Illumination	
Mail only	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.
MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the MessageR.
Mail, MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated → p.127

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated → p.115

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated → p.114
- ◆ Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → p.222, 251

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- ◆ Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated → p.122

<Connection speed priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when connection speed settings are duplicated:
 - ① Connection speed → p.78, 100
 - ② Connection speed for Discern connect
 - ③ Connection speed for Discern group

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in “Discern connect” by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.97) ▶ [i] (FUNC) ▶ “Discern connect”

The “Discern connect checking” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the item for which the function is set.

2 Select a function or item for which “★” appears on the “Discern connect” screen ▶ Highlight the function or item with “★” and press [i] (FUNC) ▶ Select any item

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Choku-Den>

Using Choku-Den

If you register a person in Choku-Den, you can quickly call up the phone number or mail address of the registered person.

Registering in Choku-Den

- Register Choku-Den using the registered data (ex. phone number) of the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- Register the person in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) beforehand. → p.93
- Up to 5 persons can be registered in Choku-Den.

1 [MENU] ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Choku-Den”

“Choku-Den detail screen” appears.

2 [Envelope] ▶ “Store” ▶ Search for the phonebook to register

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98

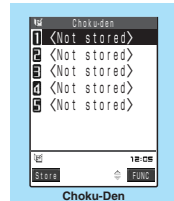
3 [Cursor] to select a checkbox (☐) of the phone number to register

Select the phone number if multiple phone numbers are registered in the phone book.

4 [Cursor] to select a checkbox (☐) of the mail address to register

Select the mail address if multiple mail addresses are registered in the phone book.

5 [Envelope] (Finish)



Function menu▶p.108

NOTE

- ◆ If you press [CLR] on Choku-Den detail screen, Choku-Den list screen appears.

Making a call from Choku-Den

1 [MENU] ▶ “Choku-Den”

Choku-Den detail screen appears.
Choku-Den detail screen is displayed also by pressing [Cursor] on the Stand-by display



Function menu▶p.108

2 Use to select the target person ▶ “CALL”

■ When making a videophone call



■ When composing a mail

“MAIL”

Function menu of Choku-Den list screen




Store	“Registering in Choku-Den” → p.107
Edit	Edits Choku-Den.
Broadcast mail	Composes and sends i-mode mails to all mail addresses registered in Choku-Den. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Broadcast chat	Composes and sends chat mails to all mail addresses registered in Choku-Den. “Composing and Sending Chat Mail” → p.244
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Choku-Den.
Delete all	▶ Enter “Security code” ▶ “YES” Deletes all Choku-Den.

Function menu of the Choku-Den detail screen

Edit	Edits Choku-Den.
Image	Changes the image on the Choku-Den detail screen.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers “000” to “009” to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys  to  and then pressing .

1 to ▶

■ To make a videophone call



NOTE




- ◆ If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, a call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- ◆ When the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of “000” to “009” assigned.
- ◆ When “Restrict dialing” is set, and the first phone number in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not nominated in the “Restrict dialing”, two-touch dialing cannot be used.

<Automatic display>

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

MENU47

Default setting
OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice or videophone call to that number simply by pressing ,  ().

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for mail address.
- You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or Choku-Den.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Automatic display” ▶ “ON”

■ To deactivate the automatic display function


▶ “OFF”

Specifying phone number to display automatically

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Automatic display”

A star (★) appears next to “Automatic display”.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry




▶ Use  to highlight phone number to display automatically

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

▶ Repeat Step 1

The setting is cancelled and a star “★” disappears.


NOTE

- ◆ Press , , (CLR) or  while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.
- ◆ The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
 - Secret data only mode is set
 - You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
 - Restrict dialing is not set for a phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number

<Data Security Service>

Saving(Restoring/Updating) Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center

This service enables you to keep the data stored in your FOMA terminal (e.g. phonebook entries, images, mails) at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to the Data Security Service, the message notifying that you have not subscribed to the service appears. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
Data Security Service → p.158
- When  appears, the Data Security Service operations are not available.
- The packet communication charges apply to data update performed during Data Security Service operations. The charges vary depending on the amount of updated data.
- If a videophone call arrives during a Data Security Service operation, the operation is interrupted. After the call ends, the data backup resumes from where it was interrupted.
- If the memory allotted to your FOMA terminal becomes full at the Data Security Center, data backup is interrupted. If this is the case, the data already backed up are saved.

● Data types supported by Data Security Service

Data		Item to be saved	Refer to
Phonebook	FOMA terminal phonebook	Name, Reading, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number, Secret store, Group number, Group name	p.109
Mail	i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS in Outbox/Inbox/Draft	Unread/Read, Message type, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach	p.239
Image	Images in Camera, Deco-mail-picture and user-created folders	Files in JPEG format (including progressive JPEG) or GIF format, title, file type	p.258

* Phonebook entries or SMS that are stored in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be saved at the Data Security Center. Also, the Data Security Center cannot keep the data stored in Secret folders.

● Saving phonebook entries at the Data Security Center

You can save your FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- If you have already saved your phonebook data at the Data Security Center, performing this procedure will update the data to the one currently stored in your FOMA terminal (Phone).

1 ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Data Sec. Service” ▶ “Connect to DSC”

■ To set sending of images stored in phonebook

▶ “PH-book img. Sending” ▶ “ON” or “OFF”

The default setting is “OFF”. Setting “ON” will also save the images stored in the phonebook at the Data Security Center.

2 Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving (updating) the phonebook data.

3 (Finish)

NOTE




- ◆ Note that a phonebook entry with an image whose size is more than 100K bytes cannot be saved or updated.

■ To restore/update phonebook data

The phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center can be restored to a FOMA terminal via i-mode. Furthermore, you can edit the phonebook data kept at the center from a PC and automatically update the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

For details on how to use this function, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

NOTE

- ◆ Phonebook data may not be updated if another function is activated during the update operation. If this is the case, “” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When the phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center are restored to a FOMA terminal, the icons registered in the phonebook data change to “”, “”.

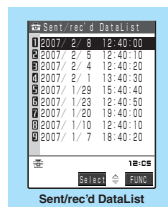
● Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center

- Up to 30 communication logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- On the communication log detail screen, transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, results of sending to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Data Sec. Service” ▶ “Sent/rec’d DataList”

The “Sent/rec’d DataList” screen appears.

2 Select a log item




Function menu▶p.110

NOTE

- ◆ The data size shown on the communication log detail screen is only as a guide.

Function menu (Sent/rec'd DataList screen)

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted communication log.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple communication logs.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all communication logs.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

Tone settings

Changing the Ring Tone	Select ring tone	112
Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound	SRS_WOW	114
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives	Vibrator	114
Setting the Keypad Tone	Keypad sound	115
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging	Charge sound	115
Setting the Clock Alarm Tone	Clock Alarm Tone set	115
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out	Quality alarm	116
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails	Mail/Msg. ring time	116
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker	Earphone	116
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone	Manner mode	117
Customizing Manner mode	Manner mode set	117

Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings	Display setting	119
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls	Disp. PH-book image	122
Making the screen invisible from persons around you	Privacy angle	123
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting	Backlight	123
Changing the Display Color	Display design	124
Changing the Menu Display	Menu display set	124
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails	Illumination	127
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call	Illumination in talk	128
Having a FOMA terminal Show the Call Time During a Call	Call time display	128
Changing the Font	Font	128
Setting the Clock Display	Clock display	129
Using Desktop Icons	Desktop icon	130
Selecting Icons To Show on the Standby Screen	Icons setting	132
Setting Style Mode	Style mode	134

Changing the Ring Tone

Default setting

Phone: Morning Call (Phone color: White & Peridot), Something New (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Night Table (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)
 Videophone: Morning Call (Phone color: White & Peridot), Something New (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Night Table (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)
 Mail: You've Got Mail Chat mail: You've Got Mail MessageR: Notify MessageF: Notify

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively. → p.105

- In addition to the preinstalled ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs and melodies downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be selected as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected.
- Melody list → p.273

1

MENU

▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Phone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)
Mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication, and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone for incoming chat mails and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageR and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone for incoming MessageF and screen for incoming mails. (“Changing the Display Settings” → p.119)

2

▶ “Select ring tone” ▶ Select any item

Melody	Chooses a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the “Pre-installed” folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from “Inbox” or a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from “Inbox”, “Camera” or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the “Pre-installed” folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when calls are received (Chakumotion).
Voice announce	Chooses between “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When you receive a call or message, a FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.
OFF	Plays no ring tone.


3

Select a ring tone or i-motion

A FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press , , , ,  or  to stop playing the melody.

After setting a ring tone, set the receiving screen if necessary.

■ To check settings

▶  (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display
Pattern1 ~4
Morning Call
Something New
Night Table
Afternoon Tea
Wonderful Moments
Emperor
Ave Maria
Jupiter
Traumerei
Ju te veux
Classical Telephone
You've Got Mail
Bossa Jingle
Jazz Jingle
Piano
Notify
Baby Bird
Footstep

* : Any music managed by JASRAC is not included in the above.

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

"Private Cafe" is stored in the "Pre-installed" folder in "i-motion".

NOTE

- ◆ An i-motion with images only or with telop cannot be set as a ring tone.
- ◆ Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
- ◆ The volume level applied for the ring tone playback during selection follows the one set in "Ring volume". If "Silent" is set to "Ring volume", tones are not played back.
- ◆ A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. → p.273
- ◆ Setting the ring tone in "Melody" under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.274
- ◆ Setting the ring tone in "i-motion" under Data box affect the settings of this function. → p.264
- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and the receiving screen, either the ring tone or receiving screen may revert to default set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ The ring tone for voice calls without the caller ID can be set in the "Call setting w/o ID" menu. The ring tone for videophone calls without the caller ID is set according to the "Videophone" setting in this function.
- ◆ When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set as the ring tone of the default setting for "Mail". The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated.
 - ① Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2) → p.315
 - ② Ring tone for Discern connect → p.105 ③ Ring tone for Discern group → p.105
 - ④ Select ring tone/ring tone of style mode (videophone call) → p.112, 134
 - ⑤ Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID → p.156
 - ⑥ Select ring tone/ring tone of style mode (except videophone call) → p.112, 134
- Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:
 - ① i-motion for Ring tone ② i-motion for Image
 - ③ i-motion (without images, such as singer's voice) or melody for Ring tone
- Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated → p.223, 250

<SRS WOW> MENU64

Adding sound effects to i-motion playback sound

When you play an i-motion using sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

- i-motion programs using sound effects can be identified by the icon shown on the Movie List screen. → p.255

Default setting SRS_WOW: OFF

- 1** MENU ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Incoming call”** ▶ **“SRS_WOW”** ▶ **“ON”**
- **Not to add sound effect to i-motion**
▶ **“OFF”**

<Vibrator> MENU54

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

Default setting
All OFF

You can set a FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns for voice calls, videophone calls, e-mail, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF respectively.

- 1** MENU ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Incoming call”** ▶ **“Vibrator”** ▶ **Select any item**

Phone	Sets vibration for voice calls or 64K data communication.
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as the ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the selected pattern.

The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which FOMA function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a voice call or videophone call.

: Shows that vibration starts when receiving a mail, chat mail, MessageR or MessageF.

: Shows that both “” and “” are set.

NOTE

- ◆ To enable “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” and “MessageF” in “Vibrator”, set the respective items in “Mail/Msg. ring time” to “ON”.
- ◆ When “Vibrator” is set to other than “OFF”, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- ◆ When “Ring volume” is set to other than “Silent” and the vibrator is set, a FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls. When “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, a FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- ◆ The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- ◆ When “Melody linkage” is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated.
 - ① Vibration setting for Discern connect → p.105
 - ② Vibration setting for Discern group → p.105
 - ③ Vibrator setting

<Keypad sound>**MENU30****Setting the Keypad Tone**

Default setting
ON

- Setting this function to “OFF” also disables the following tones:
 - Warning tones
 - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
 - Battery low warning tone
 - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad tone sounds at the level set in “Volume” during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
 - You press (MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded
 - You shoot a picture (shutter sound)
 - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
 - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone in “Initial setting” (p.43), select “ON” or “OFF”.

1

MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Keypad sound” ▶ “ON”

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the keypad sound
 - ▶ “OFF”

<Charge sound>**Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging**

Default setting
ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep (“bip”) when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:
 - You are dialing
 - You are on a voice call
 - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
 - Voice announce is being recorded
 - A FOMA terminal is turned off
 - You are receiving a call
 - Manner mode is set
 - Standby voice memo is being recorded
 - Data is sent or received
 - The screen is not standby

1

MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Charge sound” ▶ “ON”

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from emitting the charge sound
 - ▶ “OFF”

<Clock Alarm Tone set>**Setting the Clock Alarm Tone**

Default setting
Alarm Tone

This setting enables you to change the clock alarm tone set for Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list, etc.

1

MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Clock Alarm Tone set” ▶ Select any item

Melody

▶ Select a folder

Selects a ring tone or melody. → p.112

i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion. → p.112
Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2". "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296
OFF	Does not sound the clock alarm.

<Quality alarm>

MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting
High tone

A FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 [MENU] ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"Talk"** ▶ **"Quality alarm"** ▶ **"No tone"**, **"High tone"** or **"Low tone"**

<Mail/Msg. ring time>

MENU68

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails


Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Use this function to specify whether a FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail or a MessageR/MessageF. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

1 [MENU] ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"Incoming call"** ▶ **"Mail/Msg. ring time"** ▶ **Select any item**

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.

2 Specify whether to ring the tone

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press  .
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

- ◆ When "OFF" is selected for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF",  appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone>

MENU51

Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone(only)

Use this procedure to give a ring tone or alarm through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

1 [MENU] ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"External connection"** ▶ **"Earphone"** ▶ **"Earphone+ Speaker"**, **"Earp. (Speaker in 20s)"** or **"Earphone (only)"**

NOTE

- ◆ Even if "Earp. (Speaker in 20s)" or "Earphone (only)" is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker when no earphone/microphone is connected. Even when an earphone/microphone is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the speaker.
- ◆ When "Earp. (Speaker in 20s)" is set, you can hear sound through both the earphone and speaker in about 20 seconds after a ring tone or alarm is emitted.

- ◆ Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

<Manner mode>

Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone

When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker.

- When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:
 - Ring tone*1
 - Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list and Notice designate calls alarm tones*2
 - Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded
- *1 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".
- *2 : A FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Phone" in "Vibrator". If "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", a FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".
- For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select "Manner mode", "Super silent" or "Original" in "Manner mode set". → p.117


1 When the screen is standby or you are talking ▶




[#] (1 second or longer)



A FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and "🔇" appears on the screen.



During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.

While in Manner mode, the icon indicating the specified "Manner mode set" setting appears together with "🔇".

 : Indicates that "Vibrator" works when a call arrives, etc.

, ,  : Indicates that "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".

 to  : Indicates that "Record message" is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.

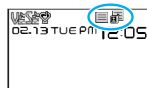
 to  : Indicates that "Record VP message" is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many Record VP messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Hold down [#] for 1 second or longer when the screen is standby or while you are talking.

Manner mode is canceled and "🔇" disappears.

During a call, a FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.



NOTE

- ◆ Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.

<Manner mode set>

Customizing Manner mode

MENU20

Default setting
Manner mode

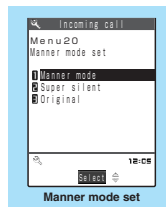
This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.


- The default settings of "Original" manner mode are:
 - Record msg.: OFF
 - Mail vol.: Silent
 - Keypad sound: OFF
 - Vibrator: ON
 - Alarm vol.: Silent
 - Mic sensitiv.: Up
 - Phone vol.: Silent
 - VM tone: ON
 - LVA tone: OFF

1 [MENU] ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.




2 Select any item



Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when  (MEMO/CHECK) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner" → p.118

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.117) ▶ "Original" ▶ Select any item

Record msg.	Sets Record message. "Having the Caller Leave a Message and Video" → p.71
Vibrator	Sets the vibrator. "Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives" → p.114
Phone vol.	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → p.65
Mail vol.	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → p.65
Alarm vol.	▶ Use  to adjust the volume Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. "Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock" → p.287
VM tone	Sets confirmation tones for "Record message" and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Sets the keypad tone. "Setting the Keypad Tone" → p.115
Mic sensitiv.	Selects either of "Normal" or "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets the low voltage alarm. "When the battery runs out" → p.41

2 Press (Finish) after changing the settings

■ When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		"Record msg." settings
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" settings
Ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and MessageR/MessageF	Silent		"Mail vol." settings
Alarm volume for the alarm clock (including the snooze function)	Silent		"Alarm vol." settings
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/Notice designate calls	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" settings
Keypad tone	OFF		"Keypad sound" settings
Microphone sensitivity during calls ¹	Up		"Mic sensitiv." settings

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Holding tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" when an option other than "Silent" is set.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings ²
Low voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" settings Even when "ON" is set, the low voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" for this function.
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." settings ²

*1 : If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

*2 : Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.

■ When an earphone is connected

The table below lists the settings applied when an earphone is connected.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"Phone" settings under "Ring volume" (p.65)		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.

NOTE

- ◆ Regardless of the "Record message" (p.71) setting, Record message is activated when "Record msg." in "Original" is set to "ON" and Manner mode is set.
- ◆ If the Record message set in "Original" starts during manner mode, message recording will start after the ring time set in "ON" in "Record message" (p.71) elapses. (When "OFF" is set, recording will start in 8 seconds.)
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>

MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

Default setting	Stand-by display: White and Peridot 1 (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black and Sapphire 1 (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby 1 (Phone color: Pink & Ruby), Wake-up display: Wake up Dialing screen, Calling screen, V.phone Dialing screen, V.phone Calling screen, Mail sending screen, Mail receiving screen, Check new messages screen: White and Peridot (Phone color: white & Peridot), Black and Sapphire (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby (phone color: Pink and Ruby)
-----------------	---

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

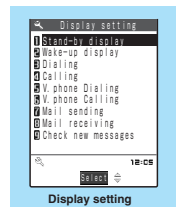
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for a ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, a FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer's voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected.

1 MENU ► "Settings" ► "Display" ► "Display setting"

The "Display setting" screen appears.

If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.

2 Select any item



Stand-by display	"Changing the standby screen image" → p.121
------------------	---

Wake-up display	Specifies a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.		
	OFF	Does not show a message or image.	
	Message	<p>▶ Enter a message</p> <p>A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.</p>	
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
Pre-installed		Sets a pre-installed image.	
Original animation	Sets an original animation.		
Dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.		
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112	
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.120	
V.phone Dialing	Sets a screen shown when you make videophone calls. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
V.phone Calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.		
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112	
	Select calling disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.120	
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send i-mode mails or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails or SMS.		
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112	
	Select receiving disp.	"Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails" → p.120	
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls>

- 1 Display setting screen (p.119) ▶ "Calling" ▶ "Select calling disp." ▶ Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.

* : "i-motion" does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ To check settings



NOTE

- ◆ Flash movies can be set in "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the tone set in "Select ring tone" sounds as the ring tone.
- ◆ Videos or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving call image cannot be set if:
 - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange or the DoCoMo keitai datalink and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
- ◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.122

<Priority sequence for screen>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:
 - ① Automatic display
 - ② Display setting/Style mode

Changing the standby screen image

- The "Pre-installed" folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display. Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display → p.343

1 Display setting screen (p.119) ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.		
Calendar	Sets a calendar.		
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.	
		Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
		Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
No background	Shows a calendar only.		
My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option.		
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.	
	Camera		
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.	
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.	

i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.

■ To specify how to display an image for the standby screen

You can select the setting from Centering disp. (centering an image on the screen), Fit in disp. (enlarging or reducing an image to fit the height or width into the screen size), or Full-screen disp. (enlarging, reducing or clipping an image to fit it into the screen size).

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.

Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Press on the standby screen selects the calendar. (If pressing selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use to select the calendar.) Press again. Press opens the previous month or opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press or to show the previous or next month and press to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- ◆ If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press any one of , , , , , or to stop the playback. While in Manner mode, only the image appears (without sound). When playback ends, the first frame of the movie or i-motion appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If a Flash movie is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the Flash movie (without the melody). When playback ends, the last frame of the Flash movie appears on the standby screen. Pressing or stops playback, and the frame at the time of stop appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ When a playback of an animation GIF image ends, the first frame appears on the standby screen. Pressing or during the animation playback ends the playback, and the first frame of the animation appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that is set for the standby screen restores the default standby screen.
- ◆ When you set the calendar on the Stand-by display, it is displayed large even if you set "Clock display" to "Bigger".

<Disp. PH-book image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting
ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to show the image when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number stored in the phonebook with a still image.

1 ► "Settings" ► "Incoming call" ► "Disp. PH-book image" ► "ON"

■ To hide an image stored in the phonebook

► "OFF"

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the precedence setting or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to default set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If a caller does not show the caller ID, the image does not appear.
- ◆ Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data do not appear.

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the image display when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

- ① Image for Discern connect → p.105
- ② Image for Discern group → p.105
- ③ Image for Add to phonebook → p.92
- ④ i-motion for Select ring tone → p.112

⑤ Display setting/Style mode → p.119, 134

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:


- ① i-motion for Ring tone
- ② i-motion, still image or other images for Image (i-motion only with video)


Making the screen invisible from persons around you

Default setting
OFF

You can narrow the view angle of the display so as not to be seen from persons around you.

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Privacy angle” ▶ “ON”

The privacy angle is set and “” appears.



You can also set the Privacy angle by pressing  for more than 1 second on the display except for the text input screen.

■ Not to set the Privacy angle






▶ “OFF”

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting

Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 3 minutes) Charging: Standard
Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2 Power saver /: ON

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Backlight” ▶ Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal backlight operation. Selecting “OFF” shows the “  ” icon on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	▶ Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen turn off (power saver mode). (The standby screen is also turned off during Voice call). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter the time with a 2-digit number. To set the time currently shown, press  .
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
	OFF	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	▶ Enter the waiting time (01 to 20 minutes) Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen turn off (power saver mode). (The standby screen is also turned off during Voice call). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter the time with a 2-digit number. To set the time currently shown, press  .
OFF		Disables power saver mode.	
Charging	Specifies the backlight operations during charging.		
	Standard	The backlight lights according to the “ON” setting in “Lighting”.	
	All time ON	The backlight stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the backlight area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from Level 3 to Level 1.		
Power saver  / 	Sets the Power saver mode.		
	ON	Decreases the brightness of the display while operating mail or i-mode.	
	OFF	Disables power saver mode.	

NOTE

- ◆ You can also turn the backlight on or off by holding down **[5]** for 1 second or longer.
- ◆ When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the backlight stays on when a call is received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when a FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the FOMA terminal keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The backlight also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight stays on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ If “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the “Area” setting (“LCD+Keys” or “LCD”). If “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the backlight operates following the “Lighting” setting.
- ◆ Even if “Charging” is set to “All time ON” while charging, the brightness of the backlight is set to “Level 1” in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for 15 seconds or so.
- ◆ When the body of a mail or MessageR/MessageF appears, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- ◆ If a FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode while opened, **[Envelope]** and **[Power Saver]** flash at roughly 5 second intervals. Pressing any keys releases power saver mode.

<Display design>

MENU86**Changing the Display Color****Default setting**

Color patter: Pattern 1 (Phone color: White & Peridot, Pink & Ruby), Pattern 5 (Phone color: Black & Sapphire)
Background 1: OFF **Background 2:** Pattern 1 **Battery icon:** White (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)
Antenna icon: White (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)

Use this procedure to change the designs of the text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

1

[MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display design” ▶ Select any item

Color pattern	Selects the color pattern from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 1	Selects Background1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among “OFF” (not displayed), “White”, “Pink”, “Stripe”, “Mesh”, “Diamond”, “Sky”, “Sakura” and “Japanese”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 2	Selects the pattern for background 2 (background pattern for the software keys) from “Pattern 1 to Pattern 3”. The selected background pattern appears on the display during selection.
Battery icon	Selects the pattern for battery icon among “White”, “Black”, “Pink” and “Gray”.
Antenna icon	Selects the pattern for Antenna icon among “White”, “Black”, “Pink” and “Gray”.

NOTE

- ◆ Changing this function does not affect the colors of images. There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to this function, such as i-mode sites.

<Menu display set>

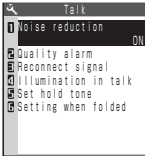
Changing the Menu Display**Setting the menu display mode****MENU57****Default setting**

Menu display: List
Theme: White & Peridot (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black & Sapphire (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink & Ruby (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)
Memory focus: ON

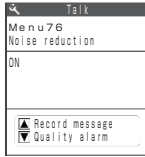
Specify how to show the branch menus (functions) under “Settings” or set the Last one function for the main menu or Simple Menu.

- Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

Menu display



"List"



"Detail"

Theme



"White & Peridot"



"Black & Sapphire"



"Pink & Ruby"



"KiraGotsu"



"Herb"



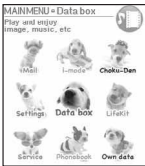
"Floral"



"Simple Style"



"Art Candy"

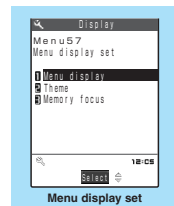


"Dogs & Fashion"

1 MENU ► "Settings" ► "Display" ► "Menu display set"

The "Menu display set" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Menu display	Chooses the display mode for branch menus between "List" and "Detail".
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.
White & Peridot	Sets White and Peridot
Black & Sapphire	Sets Black and Sapphire
Pink & Ruby	Sets Pink and Ruby
KiraGotsu	Sets KiraGotsu
Herb	Sets Herb
Floral	Sets Floral
Simple Style	Sets Simple Style
Art Candy	Sets Art Candy
Dogs & Fashion	Sets Dogs & Fashion
Original theme	"Changing the main menu screen design" → p.126
Memory focus	Specifies whether to highlight the icon you selected the last time when opening the main menu or Simple Menu.

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image used on the main menu screen.

1 Menu display set screen (p.125) ▶ “Theme” ▶ “Original theme”

The “Original theme” screen appears.

Select an image from Inbox in My picture, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created.



Function menu ▶ p.126

2 Select any item

Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
Choku-Den	Sets a Choku-Den icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image.

NOTE

- ◆ You can check the image for the selected item by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.
- ◆ If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.36) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
- ◆ You can set a JPEG image file with a size of 100K bytes or smaller and 690 dots wide × 690 dots high or smaller, and a GIF image file with a size of 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or smaller. If an image is larger than the display area (icon: 64 dots wide × 63 dots high, background: 240 dots wide × 345 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If an image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
- ◆ An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the selected icon or background image to the default settings.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Original menu>

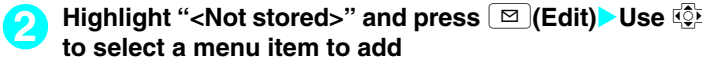
Default setting	My Profile, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code
-----------------	--

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access the functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for “Mail” and “i-mode”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “LifeKit”, “Service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot add the same function twice.



The "Original menu" screen appears.



You can only select main menu items from "Mail/i-mode".

To change an already stored function

- ▶ Highlight a stored item



Original menu
Function menu ▶ p.127

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds items to the original menu.
Sort	▶ to select order, then Sorts the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the selected function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

<Illumination> MENU 89

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting	Phone: Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Missed info: ON
------------------------	--

Use this procedure to set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, mails, chat mails or MessageR/MessageF.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses or groups. → p.105
- The flash pattern for and is the same as for the incoming call lamp.



Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for "Phone", "Videophone", "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF". The incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color during selection.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 sec interval).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Missed info	Sets whether to make the incoming call lamp keep blinking or not when the icon of a missed call or a new mail (i-mode mail, chat mail, SMS) is displayed on the display.	

NOTE

- ◆ If "Pattern 1-4" is selected in the Ring tone settings, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- ◆ If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for the ring tone or Chaku-motion is set, the "Standard" pattern is used regardless of the "Melody linkage" setting.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when call/mail settings are duplicated:
 - ① Illumination for Discern connect → p.105
 - ② Illumination for Discern group → p.105
 - ③ Illumination

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting
OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice or videophone call.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk” ▶ Select a color

- OFF: The incoming call lamp does not flash.
- Color 1 to 7: The lamp flashes in the selected color.
- Gradation 1: The lamp slowly flashes changing the color.
- Gradation 2: The lamp lights up changing the color.
- Gradation 3: The lamp color quickly changes.

NOTE

- ◆ While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played or an incoming call is held, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

Having a FOMA terminal Show the Call Time During a Call

MENU48

Default setting
ON

Use this function to specify whether to have a FOMA terminal show the call time during a voice or videophone.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The shown call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- The call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Call time display” ▶ “ON”

- To hide the call time
 - ▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- ◆ The call time is reset to 0 second every time you switch the call mode between voice and videophone. However, if you switch the call mode and end a videophone call, the call time shown indicates the total time of the voice and videophone calls.

Changing the Font

MENU66

Default setting Type: Font 1 Thickness: Bold Character size: Standard

Use this procedure to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on a screen.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Font” ▶ Select any item

Type	Selects the font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A sample of the selected font appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Thickness	Selects the thickness among “Thin” and “Bold”. A text sample using the selected thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.	
Character size	Sets the font size for the following screens: Text entry (edit), mail detail, webpage, screen memo, MessageR/MessageF detail, full browser, phonebook list, phonebook detail and My Profile.	
	Standard	Sets the standard font size.
	Large	Sets the large font size.
	Separate setting	Sets the font size for character entry, i-mode, full browser and phonebook.

NOTE

- ◆ The characters of the phone number entry screen are not covered by this function.
- ◆ “Font 2” is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using “Font 1”.
- ◆ Setting “Standard” or “Large” in “Character size” changes the font sizes for all functions subject to “Character size” at a time.
- ◆ The font size set in “Phonebook” in “Separate setting” in “Character size” is also applied to the My Profile screen.

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting

Display: Japanese Style: 12h clock Size: Big

You can set the day of the week on the Stand-by display to English or Japanese, set the clock to 12h clock or 24h clock, or set the display size of the clock. Also, you can set to hide the date and the clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. → p.28

1

MENU

▶ “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Clock display” ▶ Select any item

Display	Unavailable when “English” is set for “バイリンガル” (Select language).	
Style	Selects “12h clock” or “24h clock”.	
Size	Bigger	Displays the date and the clock full-screen.
	Big	Displays the date and the big clock.
	Small	Displays the date and the small clock.
	Down Small	Displays the clock down, small.
	OFF	Does not display the date and the clock.

NOTE

- ◆ When you set “Size” to “Bigger”, if you set the calendar on the Stand-by display, this setting will be canceled.
→ p.121
- ◆ When “Size” is set to “Down Small” and “Telop display setting” for i-channel is set to “ON” or “Receiving”, the clock is hidden while the telop text appears.

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select "Add desktop icon" from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to add, a list screen or details screen.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons. You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen.

Action	Icon (Type)	Title* ¹
Retrieve data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no icon title is stored)
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if no icon title is stored)
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no icon title is stored)
	(URL)	Page title (URL excluding "http://" or "https://" if no icon title is stored)
	(Melody)* ²	Melody title ("Melody" if no icon title is stored)
	(Image)* ²	Image title ("Image" if no icon title is stored)
	(Movie or i-motion)* ²	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if no icon title is stored)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if no title is stored)
Access function* ³	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/ (Voice mode)/ (To Do list)/ (Schedule)/ (Text memo)/ (i-channel)/ (Receive Ir data)/ (Dictionary)/ (Original menu)* ³	Respective function name ("Type" on the left)
Open folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title ("Folder" if no icon title is stored)

*¹ : When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.

*² : The pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.

*³ : The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

- 1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add desktop icon" ▶ "YES"





Using desktop icons to access data or functions

1 On the standby screen ▶

The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon






■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The “▶” icon appears on the left and right of the screen. Use  to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon
Function menu▶p.131

Function menu (Desktop icon screen/desktop screen)

Display setting*	Display at all	Always displays desktop icons.
	Display at use	Displays desktop icons only when pressing  , sliding the Enter or setting the calendar.
Edit title	▶Edit a title	A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.
Sort	▶“YES”▶Use  to move an icon ▶ 	Moves the highlighted desktop icon.
Icon info setting		Shows the title, type and details of the desktop icon.
Reset desktop		Restores the default setting (“Photo mode” only).
Delete	Delete this	Deletes the selected desktop icon.
	Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶  (Finish)▶“YES”
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.

* : The “Desktop icon screen” appears.

Checking desktop icon information

MENU63

1 ▶“Settings”▶“Display”▶“Desktop icon”

The “Desktop screen” appears.




2 Select a desktop icon title











NOTE

◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use  to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you that you received a mail. Highlighting this icon shows an emotion-expressing mail icon according to the contents of the mail and “New mail” appears. → p.222	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon according to the contents of the chat mail and “Chat mail” appears. → p.222	Opens the Chat screen.
	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the “Missed calls” record.

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches "Play/Erase msg."
	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches "Play/Erase VP msg."
	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps some recorded messages.	Launches "Voice Mail".
	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of alarm clock, scheduled event or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Shows the information about the "Notice designate calls" alarm following the security code entry.
	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update is not normally terminated or a new pattern is released, the screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
	Notifies you that the Data Security Service information has not been updated. → p.158	Opens the Data Security Service auto start screen.


NOTE

- ◆ If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from the function menu, the desktop icon disappears. However, the desktop icon of "RECORD" remains until you play or delete the Record message.
- ◆ To delete all the desktop icons that give notice, hold down **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer (deleting the icons does not delete their contents). However the desktop icons of "RECORD", "RECALL" and "RECALL" will remain.
- ◆ When you set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the "RECALL" icon does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon. → p.157
- ◆ If you receive a new mail or chat mail when the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon. Instead, "New mail" or "Chat mail" appears.

<Icons setting>

Selecting Icons To Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting
ON

You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the .

1 **[MENU]** ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"Display"** ▶ **"Icons setting"** ▶ **"ON"**

- To disable selection
▶ "OFF"

Selecting the icon by Multi-function keys ()

1 Stand-by display  ▶ Use  to highlight the icon

You can also highlight the displayed date or clock.
The title of the highlighted icon is displayed.

2 

Icon/display	After selected
	Shows "Display design".
	Opens the screen for releasing "Original lock".
	Shows "Inbox".
	Shows the list of unread mails.
	Shows "MessageR".
	Shows "MessageF".
	Opens the screen for selecting "MessageR" and "MessageF".
	Performs "Check new messages".
	Shows "Display design".
	Opens the screen for releasing "Self mode".
	Opens the screen for selecting "Vibrator" or "Mail/Msg. ring time".
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting "Ring volume" or "Mail/Msg. ring time". Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows a message notifying that it cannot be set. Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting "Original" or "Mail/Msg. ring time".
	Shows "Manner mode set".
	Shows "Remote monitoring".
	Shows "Alarm".
	Shows "Voice Mail". Even if there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, "10 Voice mail" appears.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows "Play/Erase msg.".
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows "Play/Erase VP msg.".
	Shows "Backlight".
	Opens the screen for releasing "Key Operation lock".
	Shows "External keys guard".
	Shows "Privacy angle" setting screen.
Date	Shows "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Shows "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.

Setting Style Mode

This function enables you to set the FOMA terminal functions such as the standby screen and ring tone at a time.

- The following functions can be set at a time:
 - “Display setting” (p.119)
 - “Select ring tone” (p.112)
 - “Theme” in “Menu display set” (p.124)
 - “Display”, “Style”, “Size” in “Clock display” (p.128)
 - “Display design” (p.124)

Setting Style mode

Select the items shown on the Style Mode list screen and set the selected items at a time.

- If storing the current settings in “お気に入り” before setting Style mode, you can restore the stored settings later. → p.135
- Style mode has the pre-installed design set that matches to the phone color by default.

<Example: Setting “Herb”>

- 1  “Settings” ▶ “Style mode”
- The “Style mode list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.134

- 2 “Herb” ▶ “YES”

■ To check settings

▶ Highlight an item ▶  (Detail) ▶ Highlight an item ▶  (Play)

NOTE

- ◆ The following items are automatically shown on screens if highlighted while settings are checked:
 - “Color pattern”, “Background 1” and “Background 2” appear as the background on the shown screen.
- ◆ When “Discern connect” or “Discern group” is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
- ◆ If Style mode is set and then the items set in Style mode are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have precedence.
- ◆ Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to check the settings even in the items set.

Function menu (Style mode list screen)

Edit title	Edits a title of a Style mode item. A title can contain up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the “お気に入り” settings.

Bookmarking the current settings

1 Style mode list screen (p.134) ▶ Highlight “お気に入り” ▶ (Detail)

The items that are currently registered in “お気に入り” appear. “No data” appears for unregistered items.

2 (FUNC) ▶ “Take Setting info” ▶ “YES”



Contents checking

Function menu ▶ p.135

● Changing “お気に入り” settings

You can change the items registered in “お気に入り” on the contents checking screen.

1 Contents checking screen (p.135) ▶ Select an item ▶ Change the setting

NOTE

- ◆ Images, i-motion programs or melodies that are downloaded from sites or attached to mails may not be registered in “お気に入り” or not be set at a time.
- ◆ If an image, i-motion or melody that is registered in “お気に入り” is deleted, it is also deleted from “お気に入り” and “No data” appears.
- ◆ You cannot change settings on the contents checking screen except for “お気に入り”.

Function menu (contents checking screen)

Finish	Sets the items registered in “お気に入り” at a time.
Take Setting info	Registers the current settings in “お気に入り”.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the items registered in “お気に入り”.

● Security Settings

■ Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal	138
Changing Your Security Code	Change security code 139
Setting Your PIN Codes	PIN setting 139
Releasing PIN Lock	140

■ Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions	141
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock 141
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule	Secret mode/Secret data only mode 143
Hiding Various Data	Secret folder 145
Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions	Original lock 147
Locking Key Operation Automatically	Key Operation lock 152
Disabling the External Keys	External keys guard 153

■ Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Setting Security for Mail Folders	Mail security 153
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers	Restrictions 154
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers	Call setting w/o ID 156
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook	Ring time(sec.) 157
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook	Reject unknown 157
Disabling Communication Functions	Self mode 158
Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online	Data Security Service 158

■ Other security settings

Other Security Settings	159
-------------------------------	-----

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■ Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, "1111", "1234") for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. NTT DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- DoCoMo never ask you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver's license) proving you are the subscriber to a NTT DoCoMo shop.
For more information, contact Inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. → p.139

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press [OK].

- The entered security code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds, the alarm message appears and then the screen shown before the security code entry screen reappears.



● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time. If you have DoCoMo ID or a password for "My DoCoMo" (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.

To change your network security code from i-mode, access "各種手続き" (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).

* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by your information service providers.)

i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.

To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access [MENU] ▶ "i-mode" ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password".

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code


Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).

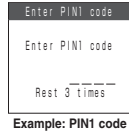
PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros) at time of contract. You can change your codes at any time. → p.139

PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.

PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code that you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting user certificates.

When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press .

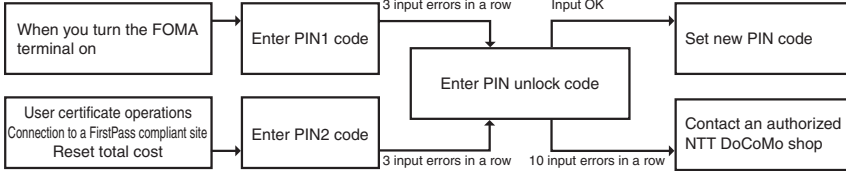


- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
 - If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, your PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.)
- Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



<Change security code>

MENU29

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

- 1  ► “Settings” ► “Lock/Security” ► “Change security code” ► Enter your security code ► Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ► Select “Yes”

■ To change your security code from “Initial setting”

- Enter your security code ► Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code ► “YES”

<PIN setting>

Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting | PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) | PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) | PIN1 code entry set: OFF

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1code entry set are recorded in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

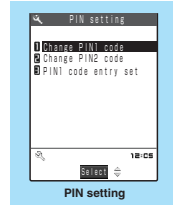
Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

- To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

- 1** **MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIN setting” ▶ Enter your security code**

The “PIN setting” screen appears.

- 2** **Select any item**



Change PIN1 code	▶ Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently set ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code ▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	▶ Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently set ▶ Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code ▶ Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

- 1** **Turn a FOMA terminal on, Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**

If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

- 1** **Enter the 8-digit PUK code**
- 2** **Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**
- 3** **Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again**



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock	p.141
To hide your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.143
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.145
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	Original lock	p.147
To disable call or mail functions		
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls		
To lock key operations automatically keypad lock	Key Operation lock	p.152
To prevent inadvertent use of the external keys	External keys guard	p.153
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice or videophone	Self mode	p.158

<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use "Dial lock" that is set on your FOMA terminal or "Omakase Lock" that is set remotely.

- Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

● Available operations and functions while in setting Dial lock or Omakase Lock

Operation	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/Releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

*: You cannot make voice calls or videophone calls. When a call with a Chaku-moji message is received, the message appears on the incoming call screen. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.


- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" is reached. Once you release Dial lock or Omakase Lock, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, the icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook while Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive while Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in "Received calls".

Using a FOMA terminal to set Dial lock

Default setting
Release

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Lock” ▶ Enter your security code
▶ “Dial lock”


Operations during Dial lock


- “Dial lock” and “” appear on the display.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS or chat mails while in setting Dial lock, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Dial lock is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.

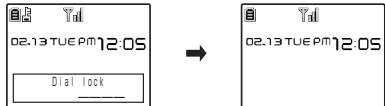


Releasing Dial lock


- If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, a FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

- 1 Enter your security code on a screen when Dial lock is set 

Dial lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.



NOTE

- ◆ Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press  and enter a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

Default setting
Release

If you have lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. Protect your privacy.

To unlock the FOMA terminal, call the Call Center.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

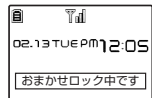
 **0120-524-360** (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (in Japanese only)

* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.


- * For details about Omakase Lock, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Services and Procedures]” or contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover.

Operations during Omakase Lock

- The message “おまかせロック中です” appears on the display.
- Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with a FOMA card (UIM) you have subscribed to inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/ videophone call and turning the power on/off. Other functions are unavailable.
- Mails you receive while Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.
- The FOMA card (UIM) remain unlocked.



NOTE

- ◆ Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)
- ◆ You can set Omakase Lock even when another lock function is set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock function that had been set before Omakase Lock is reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).
- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off, or out of Service area.
 - “” appears on a FOMA terminal because Self mode is set, data exchange via Infrared data exchange or cable connection is in progress, etc.
- ◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you have subscribed to the “Dual Network” service and are using the mova service.

- ◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a subscriber to a FOMA card (UIM) inserted into the FOMA terminal asks to lock the terminal. Even if somebody else uses the FOMA terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.
- ◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the same FOMA card (UIM) as used when the lock was set is inserted. When you cannot release the lock by yourself, contact Inquiries on the back cover of this manual.
- ◆ If you try to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting

Secret mode: OFF Secret data only mode: OFF

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" while a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule", including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries that are stored as secret data.

- You can move and store data in "My picture", "i-motion", "Inbox", "Outbox" or "Bookmark" into the "Secret" folder. → p.145
- If you make or receive a voice or videophone call in Secret or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled. If data in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the list screen of each folder.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data

MENU40

- The operations for using the "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

1

MENU ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Secret mode" ▶


Enter your security code

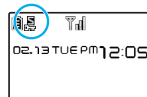
Secret mode is set and "  " appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.27

■ To cancel Secret mode



Secret mode is canceled and "  " disappears.



2

Store a "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entry

The entry is stored as secret data.


Adding information to the phonebook → p.93

Adding information to your schedule → p.289

NOTE

- ◆ When the phonebook is registered in Choku-Den, a confirmation message appears at the time of registration. If you select "YES", it is deleted from Choku-Den, and registered as a secret data.


1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret data only mode” ▶ Enter your security code

Secret data only mode is set and “” flashes.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.27

■ To cancel Secret data only mode



Secret data only mode is canceled and “” disappears.




2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook → p.97

Checking your schedule → p.291

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting “Set secret” from the phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- ◆ In Secret mode, “” flashes when you select or show secret data or show a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.
- ◆ “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
- ◆ If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “Two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when a FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- ◆ If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID, not the name but the phone number appears. Only the phone number appears also on “Received calls”. However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- ◆ If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address appears. The mail address is not stored in the “Received address” record.
- ◆ The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
 - Automatic display → p.108
 - Restrictions → p.154
 - Discern connect → p.105
- ◆ If you edit a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If a phonebook entry is edited, all the data stored in the edited phonebook entry are stored as secret data.
- ◆ You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by pressing (MENU) ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” and then selecting “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- ◆ If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled. The security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set and you can then continue the operation.
- ◆ When you make a call or send a mail by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” is not updated.

Changing secret data back to normal


Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.


<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ For scheduled events

▶ Schedule list screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Release secret” ▶ “YES”

In Secret mode, the “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.
“Schedule list function menu” → p.291

<Secret folder>

Hiding Various Data

You can use “Secret” folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

- “Secret” folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- If you make or receive a voice call or videophone call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call.
If a file in a Secret folder is shown, it returns to the folder list screen.
- The maximum numbers of files that can be stored in “Secret” folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (1.0M bytes)	10 (1M bytes)

* : Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the data size.



<Example: Moving an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.143

2 Image list screen (p.255) ▶ Select an image and press (FUNC) ▶ “Keep in secret”





NOTE

- ◆ Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in “Pre-installed” folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ You can cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode in each mode, by pressing  “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret mode” or  “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Secret data only mode”.

<Bookmark (i-mode)>

- ◆ When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder of i-mode or Full Browser to access a site, the URL of the site is not stored by the Last URL function.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- ◆ When mails are sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- ◆ For mails attached with large images, movies or i-motion programs in Secret folders, only the messages are stored and the attachments are not. On the list or detail screen, “”, “”, “” or “” indicating the attached file cannot be shown or played appears. Even if moving the mails into other folders, you cannot view or play the attached files.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, or Web To function from mails stored in Secret folders.
- ◆ Since a mail becomes a normal if it is moved out of a Secret folder, a chronologically-older mail may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folder including the mail. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders do not appear on the chat screen.

- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if "📧" appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from a Secret folder into another one.

<My picture/i-motion>

- ◆ If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function or Web To function from i-motion.


<Desktop icon>

- ◆ If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
- ◆ Even if a bookmark, received mail or sent mail pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the data from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Open a folder list screen ▶ Highlight the "Secret" folder ▶ Press  (FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode) (p.188)	Inbox/Outbox (p.234)	My picture (p.276)	i-motion (p.276)
Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 Send all Ir data*1 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder Send all Ir data*1 Delete read*1,2 Delete all*1	Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder Delete all*1

*1 : Not subject to the data in the "Secret" folder.

*2 : Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode) (p.188)	Inbox/Outbox (p.236, 237)	My picture (p.256)	i-motion (p.264)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all Mail info* No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Memory info Title name, Picture Delete Put out	i-motion info Memory info List setting Delete Put out

* : Only shown on the received mail list screen.

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (p.239, 240)	My picture (p.258)	i-motion (p.267)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Retry Delete this	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change the data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: Restoring an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

- 1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”
“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule” → p.143
- 2 Folder list screen (p.255) ▶ “Secret” ▶ Select an image and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Put out”
- 3 Select a folder to save the image

NOTE

- ◆ Since a mail removed from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. We recommend you to protect mails before removing them from Secret folders.

<Original lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions

Default setting (Original lock 1 to 3)	OFF (Detail Data disp. edit del.: All selected Dial/sending mail: All OFF Incoming/Mail disp.: All OFF)
---	--

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information. You can also restrict making or receiving voice or videophone, or restrict sending or receiving i-mode mails or SMS.

- You can assign particular functions and data that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 according to the intended purposes.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the lock.


Activating Original lock

- 1  ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Lock” ▶ Enter
your security code

The “Lock selection” screen appears.

- 2 Select Original lock 1 to 3

Lock is enabled, and functions and data that are subject to lock are locked.

“” appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.27

- To change the functions and data that are subject to lock

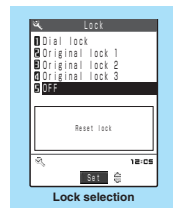
“Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock” → p.151

- To edit the title

▶ Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3 ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit title” ▶ Enter a title ▶  (Set)

- To release Original lock

▶ “OFF”



● Operations during Original lock

To use the functions and data that are subject to Original lock when Original lock is set, the security code entry is required.

- Entering your security code correctly deactivates Original lock temporarily so that the functions and data that are subject to Original lock become available. Exiting all active functions and returning to the standby screen reactivate Original lock.

<Example: To view an i-mode mail while Original lock is set>

1 On the standby screen ()

The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.




2 Enter your security code


Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode mail → p.228

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

Original lock is reactivated and " " appears on the screen.

NOTE

- ◆ The following functions are not available when Original lock is set (release Original lock to use them):
 - Reset settings • Initialize
 - Software Update • "Update" and "Set auto-update" for the scanning function
- ◆ For functions other than "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." that are subject to Original lock, you can temporarily deactivate Original lock to use them. (The "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." functions are not available when Original lock is set.)
- ◆ If you set "Dial/sending mail", "Incoming/Mail disp." and other functions that are subject to Original lock, and release Original lock temporarily, the icon changes to .

● Functions and data that are subject to Original lock

- The functions and data that are subject to Original lock are listed below. You can specify (customize) whether to set Original lock for each group and item. → p.151

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Mail	Mail	Locks the mail function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Mails cannot be composed or sent.
		Mail member	Locks the activation of each function.
		Chat group	
	i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i-mode and i-channel are not available. • The ticker of i-channel does not appear.
		Bookmark	Locks the i-mode bookmark list displays.
	Multi media	My picture	Locks the activation of each function. It cannot be accessed from another function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the data subject to Original lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen or standby screen, a FOMA terminal works according to the default settings while in Original lock. • If "My Picture" or "Chara-den" is subject to Original lock and Original lock is set, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent during a videophone call.
		i-motion	
		Melody	
		Chara-den	
		Voice announce	
	Schedule	Camera	Locks the activation of each function.
		Schedule	Locks the activation of each function. No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No alarm is given and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears while in Original lock. • If "Schedule" is subject to Original lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in Original lock.
		Alarm	
		To Do list	

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Memo	Play/Erase msg.	Locks the activation of each function.
		Play/Erase VP msg.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even if pressing the Ⓞ(MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check missed calls indicated by "Record message".
		Voice memo	Locks the activation of each function.
	Voice memo (in-call)		
	Phonebook	Phonebook/ Choku-Den	<p>Locks the phonebook and Choku-Den activation. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail is received, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. If "Only number in PH-book" is set for "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji", a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number appears in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record. On the mail list and detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. The "Call rejection", "Call acceptance", "Call Forwarding" and "Voice Mail" settings are deactivated. Even if you press the Ⓞ(MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out the caller or sender of "Missed call", "New mail", "Chat mail" or "Record message".
		My Profile	Locks the "My Profile" activation.
		Dialed calls	Locks the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" activation.
		Received calls	<p>Locks the "Received calls" or "Received address" activation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even if you press the Ⓞ(MEMO/CHECK) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check "Missed calls".
		Other settings	Text memo	Locks the "Text memo" activation.
	Other settings	Notice designate calls	<p>No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "Notice designate calls" desktop icon on the standby screen. Original lock does not lock the "Notice designate calls" setting operations. You can change the "Notice designate calls" settings.
Chaku-moji		<p>Locks "Chaku-moji".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Original lock does not lock the operations performed when Chaku-moji mails arrive. (They are performed according to "MSG display settings" in "Chaku-moji".) Select "Create message" from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message. 	

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Dial/sending mail	Keypad dial	Keypad dial	<p>Prohibits you from making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls by dialing a phone number or using the Received calls record.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry. You can make calls using the phonebook, Redial or Dialed calls record. You can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118). You cannot make a call using a desktop icon.
	Sending mail	Input add by keypad	<p>Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS by entering an address.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry, or operate the FOMA card (UIM). "Received calls", "Mail member", "Received address" or "Chat group" cannot be used as a mail address when composing a mail. You cannot compose a mail using a desktop icon. You can create a mail using the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls or Sent address list. All chat members except Myself are deleted. All the mail addresses in Draft are deleted. All the mails in Draft with only addresses entered are also deleted.
		Sending mail	<p>Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails or SMS.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chat mails are not available.
Incoming/Mail disp.	Incoming call		<p>Rejects incoming voice calls, videophone calls or packet communication. A FOMA terminal does not work for incoming calls, and they are logged as Missed calls.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "Missed call" desktop icon on the standby screen.
	Disp. recv. mail/msg.		<p>Automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, but neither works for receiving mails nor displays the receiving and reception results screens.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Releasing the Original lock displays the "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon on the standby screen. Chat mails are not available.

NOTE

- ◆ If desktop icons of data that are subject to Original lock are pasted into the standby screen, they do not appear while in Original lock.

Customizing the functions and data that are subject to lock

- You can assign particular functions that are subject to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 depending on the intended purposes, such as locking only phonebook entries or restricting only outgoing calls/mails.
- Specify Original lock settings for each category, group, and function. → p.148
- The customized settings are retained even when Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.147) ▶ Highlight Original lock 1 to 3 ▶ (Detail)

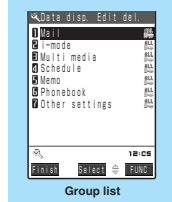
The "Category list" screen appears.
 "ALL" appears if any item in the category is subject to Original lock, and "ALL" appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Function menu ▶ p.151

2 Select a category you want to change

The "Group list" screen appears.
 "ALL" appears if any item in the group is subject to Original lock, and "ALL" appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Function menu ▶ p.151

3 Select a group you want to change

The "Function list" screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.151

4 Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)

The checked () items are subject to Original lock.
 Deselect items you do not want to lock with Original lock.

5 (Finish) ▶ (Finish) ▶ (Set)

Function menu (Category list/Group list screens)

Select	Selects all items in the highlighted item.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in the highlighted item.
Select all	Selects all items in the displayed items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in the displayed items.

Function menu (Function list screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

Locking Key Operation Automatically

Default setting

After folded: OFF Timer: OFF

You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal.

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release Key Operation lock.

Setting Key Operation lock

1  ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Key Operation lock” ▶ Enter your security code




2 Select any item  (Finish)

After folded	ON	Locks automatically when a FOMA terminal is folded.
	OFF	Does not lock when a FOMA terminal is folded.
Timer	▶ Select from “OFF”, “ON after 1 minute”, “ON after 5 minutes”, “ON after 15 minutes” or “ON after 30 minutes” For example, setting “ON after 5 minutes” automatically locks keys in 5 minutes without any operation on the FOMA terminal. Selecting “OFF” deactivates the timer and does not lock keys.	

NOTE

- ◆ The timer count is reset if you use any key or open a FOMA terminal before Keypad lock is activated.

Operations during Key Operation lock

- “Key Operation lock”, “” and “” appear on the display while in Key Operation lock. Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time → p.27
- While in Key Operation lock, you cannot perform any key operation except receiving voice and videophone calls, turning a FOMA terminal on/off and using  (↔).
- While in Key Operation lock, a FOMA terminal receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS and Chat mails, but you cannot view the reception results screen.
- Alarm notification for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “To Do list” is given even while in Key Operation lock.




NOTE

- ◆ You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Key Operation lock.
- ◆ Key Operation lock is not activated even after folding a FOMA terminal or at the time set by the timer while you are on a call, exchanging data (such as i-mode), playing melody/i-motion (including pause), or activating the camera.

Releasing Key Operation lock temporarily

1 Enter your security code on a screen when Key Operation lock is set 

NOTE

- ◆ Releasing Key Operation lock temporarily does not cancel the Key Operation lock settings. Set both “After folded” and “Timer” settings to “OFF” to cancel the Key Operation lock settings completely.
- ◆ Pressing  during a voice call displays the Key Operation lock temporary release screen. You can display the main menu by releasing Key Operation lock temporarily. A FOMA terminal returns to the Key Operation lock waiting status when the call ends.

Disabling the External Keys

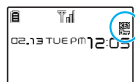
Default setting
OFF

You can disable the external keys (↵) and (MEMO/CHECK) by folding a FOMA terminal.

- In the situations listed below, the external keys are enabled regardless of this setting.
 - FOMA terminal is open.
 - An equipment such as flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone terminal.
 - An external connector is connected to PC or other device and “” appear on the screen.

1 MENU (1 second or longer)

The external keys are disabled (when a FOMA terminal is folded) and “” appears on the screen.



■ To cancel this function

- ▶ Repeat step 1

“” disappears.

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting
No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen to end a mail. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open a Inbox/Outbox folder protected with security functions.
- The “” icon appears with secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as “”, “”, “” or “” appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Mail settings” ▶ “Mail security” ▶ Enter your security code

2 Use to select a checkbox ()

The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.



3 Press (Finish) after the settings

Setting security for individual folders

1 Inbox folder screen (p.228)/Outbox folder screen (p.229) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Mail security” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel mail security

- ▶ Repeat step 1

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

- The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptance	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers.
Call Forwarding	Forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

- You can specify up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.
- Restrictions are only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance, or Call forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number.
- This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you edit or delete a phone number specified in this function, the restrictions are released. However, setting “Restrict dialing” restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number to release Restrict dialing.

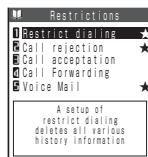
● When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot dial using all the records of Dialed calls and Received calls including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot retrieve phone numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using “UIM operation”.
- The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

- 1 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select a function**

A star (★) appears with the selected function.



■ To deselect selected functions

- ▶ Select a function with a star (★)

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

■ To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers

- ▶ Press [CLR] 2 times to return to the phonebook list screen ▶ Use [←] to show the desired phone number ▶ Repeat step 1

Once you press [☎] to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number and then set restrictions again for phone numbers including the unrestricted one.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- ◆ You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
- ◆ To use “Automatic display” at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which “Automatic display” has already been set.
- ◆ Only the phone numbers specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

<Call rejection/Call acceptance>

- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the number is recorded as a missed call in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptance, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ While Original lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptance.
- ◆ You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

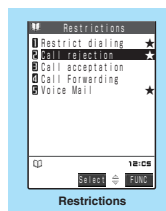
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- ◆ If no forwarding number is designated or you have not subscribed to “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail”, calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- ◆ While Original lock is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and a FOMA terminal acts normally when receiving a call from a specified phone number.

Checking the restriction settings

MENU 12

1 Phonebook list screen (p.97) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Restrictions” ▶ Enter your security code

The “Restrictions” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.155

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1 Restrictions screen ▶ Highlight a function with a star (★) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting

All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls and videophone calls from callers who do not show the caller ID based on the reason given.

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Call setting w/o ID” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or pay phones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.	
	Accept	Accepts calls.
	Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Unknown” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.112 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
	Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Unknown” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.120 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
Reject	Rejects calls.	
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from pay phones.	
	Accept	Accepts calls.
	Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “Payphone” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.112 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
	Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “Payphone” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.120 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
Reject	Rejects calls.	
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller’s phone.	
	Accept	Accepts calls.
	Select ring tone	Selects the ring tone for “User unset” calls from “Same as ring tone”, “Melody”, “i-motion”, “Voice announce”, “Random melody” and “OFF”. → p.112 When “Same as ring tone” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Phone” setting in “Select ring tone”.
	Select calling disp.	Selects the image shown when “User unset” calls arrive from “Same as display”, “My picture” and “i-motion”. → p.120 When “Same as display” is selected, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Calling” setting in “Display setting”.
Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- ◆ The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls hiding the caller ID, the “Videophone” setting in “Select ring tone” and “V.phone Calling” setting in “Display setting” are applied.
- ◆ When “Reject” is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a caller who is set to “Reject”, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting

Set mute seconds: OFF Mute seconds(sec): 1 second Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice or videophone call of which caller is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice or videophone call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ring time(sec.)” ▶ Select any item

Set mute seconds	ON	▶ Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds) Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press [OK].
	OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
Missed calls display		Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.

NOTE

- ◆ While a FOMA terminal is ringing, the terminal emits a ring tone or vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes.
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, a FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- ◆ If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the Record message function, a FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for Record message than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting
Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID. “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID” should be set in conjunction with this function.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Reject unknown” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “Reject”

- To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook
 - ▶ “Accept”

NOTE

- ◆ When “Call setting w/o ID” accepts calls hiding the caller ID, a FOMA terminal acts according to the “Call setting w/o ID” setting even if this function is set to “Reject”.
- ◆ When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to “Reject”.
- ◆ When phone numbers are specified in “Call acceptance” in “Restrictions”, you can only receive calls from the phone numbers even if this function is set to “Accept”.
- ◆ When “Reject” is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if you have activated the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, the caller hears a busy tone. However, if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, or if the ring time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the “Voice Mail service center” or forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails and SMS regardless of this function.

Disabling Communication Functions

Default setting
Release

You can set a FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice or videophone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice or videophone calls.

- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1

MENU ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Lock/Security”** ▶ **“Self mode”** ▶ **“YES”**

A FOMA terminal is set to Self mode and “self” appears on the screen.

■ To cancel Self mode

▶ Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and “self” disappears.

● When Self mode is set

- Received calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. If the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected and 64K data communication are also unavailable.

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online

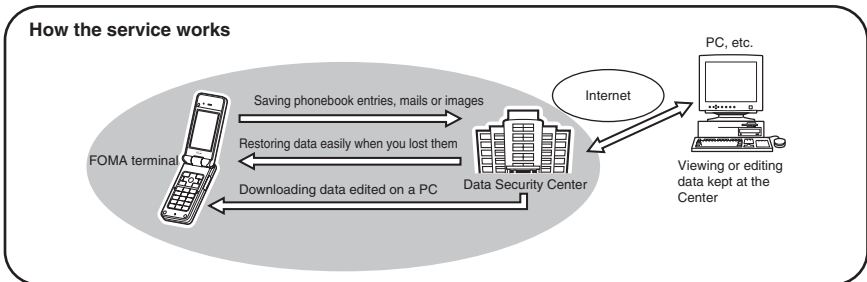
Subscription
Required

● Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service where you can back up phonebook entries, images, messages, etc. (hereinafter referred to as “stored data”) stored on your FOMA terminal to DoCoMo’s Data Security Center.

Even if you lose your FOMA terminal or get it wet then stored data are deleted, use i-mode to retrieve the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can easily edit the stored data on the My DoCoMo page or retrieve the edited data to the FOMA terminal.

* For more details on the Data Security Service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to the service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)
- See the following pages for saving operations of Data Security Service:
 - “Saving Phonebook Data at the Data Security Center” → p.109
 - “Saving the message at the Data Security Center” → p.239
 - “Saving images to the Data Security Center” → p.258
 - “Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center” → p.110

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To avoid "nuisance phone calls" such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.312
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.312
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.199
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.364
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.369
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.223
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains only	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails only from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

- ◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular showing your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking function is set at the same time.
 - ① Nuisance Call Blocking
 - ② Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection


● Camera

Before Using the Camera		162
Shooting Still Images	Photo mode	168
Shooting Movies	Movie mode	173
Changing the Shooting Settings		176

Before Using the Camera

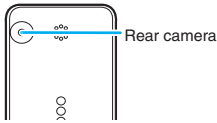
You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera.

Using the camera

To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press  (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

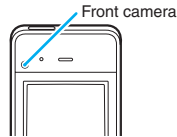
■ Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). This camera is available for close-up shooting.



■ Front camera

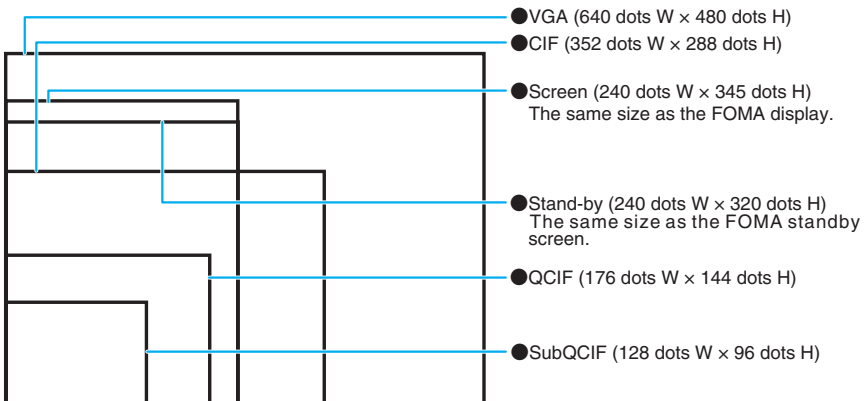
This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.



- The cameras are developed based on the extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if a FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

Image size

- The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N601i. Choose the size that suits your purpose:



* : The image sizes framed above are not the actual sizes.

Image shooting specifications

- The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	N601i (Phone)
	Rear camera	Front camera		
VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 3
			Fine	Approx. 18
			Normal	Approx. 32
CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 8
			Fine	Approx. 32
			Normal	Approx. 45
Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 18
			Fine	Approx. 32
			Normal	Approx. 45
Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 18
			Fine	Approx. 32
			Normal	Approx. 45
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 32
			Fine	Approx. 90
			Normal	Approx. 120
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 60
			Fine	Approx. 90
			Normal	Approx. 120

Movie shooting specifications

- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies depending on factors such as the types of objects.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies depending on shooting lengths.
- The following table lists the sizes and approximate numbers of movies that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		File size setting	Movie type set	N601i (Phone)
	Rear camera	Front camera			
QCIF (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 16
				Video	Approx. 16
				Voice	Approx. 16
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6
				Video	Approx. 6
				Voice	Approx. 6
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3
				Video	Approx. 3
				Voice	Approx. 3
SubQCIF (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 10
				Video	Approx. 10
				Voice	Approx. 10
			Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 6
				Video	Approx. 6
				Voice	Approx. 6
			Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3
				Video	Approx. 3
				Voice	Approx. 3

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After the screen is finished, the camera screen reappears and the shots can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during brightness adjustment, the adjustment is fixed and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during self-timer operation, the operation is interrupted:
 - A voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication data arrives.
 - The alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given.
- Note the following:
 - If you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the Receiving results screen being displayed regardless of the "Receiving display" settings (p.242).
 - Selecting "Operation preferred" in "Alarm setting" does not stop shooting, performing the camera settings or operating the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even in "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)", a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound, auto timer tone and AF lock sound. Even if "Earphone" is set to "Earp.(Speaker in 20s)" or "Earphone(only)" and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). (Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.)
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting "Auto save set" (p.168, 174) to "ON" allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in "Select to save" without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

■ Copyright Information

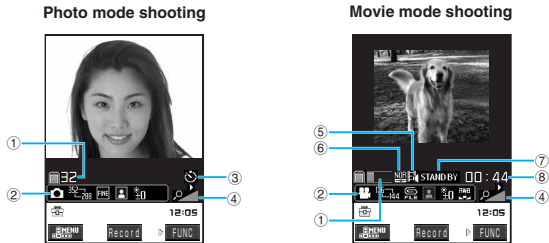
- Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① Remaining storage count/ Memory info		Shows the number of photos on the Photo mode screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> White: 11 or more Yellow: 10 or fewer Red: No memory available 	—
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining Red: No memory available* 	—
② Shooting menu		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing or to .	p.166
③ Auto timer		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.177
④ Zoom		Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (or) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing or .	p.176
⑤ Movie type set		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.174
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	
⑥ Storage setting		Shoots movies with "Normal" set for the image quality.	p.173
		Shoots movies with "Fine mode" set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with "Long dur. mode" set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with "Move mode" set for the image quality.	
⑦ Shooting status		Shows that a movie is being shot.	p.173
		Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
⑧ Remaining shooting time		Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	p.173

* : Still images or movies can be shot. The shot is saved or overwritten.

NOTE

◆ The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

● Guide to the shooting menu

- Pressing or **1** to **6** shows the shooting menu.
- Press (FUNC) and select "Help" or press **0** to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be performed from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

1 Shooting screen Use to select any of the following

Items that can be selected from the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode Shoots a movie. →p.173
- Chance capture Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting. → p.175
- Picture voice (Photo mode) Records voice to add to a still image you shot. → p.175
- Photo mode Shoots a still image. → p.168
- A-Continuous mode Shoots still images continuously at a time. → p.170
- M-Continuous mode Continuously shoots still images one by one. → p.170
- Voice mode Records voice only. → p.176



Select size (Ex. "Photo mode")

- VGA Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96). (Default: CIF)

Select size (Ex. "Movie mode")

- QCIF Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96). (Default: QCIF)



Storage setting (Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal Saves the shot as a small-sized file. (Default: Fine)

File size setting (Ex. "Movie mode")

- Restricted(Short) Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size (Suitable for sending to an i-motion-message-compatible terminal.)
- Restricted(Long) Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size
- Local playback Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size. (Default: Restricted(Short))

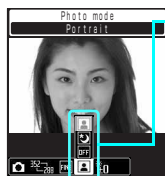
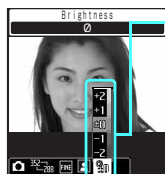


Photo mode (Ex. "Photo mode")

- Portrait Suitable for shooting people.
- Night mode Suitable for shooting objects in poorly lit places.
- OFF Does not use any effects for shooting. (Default: Portrait)



Brightness

- Sets the brightness of the shot (-2/-1/±0/+1/+2).

(When the camera launches: ±0)



White balance



- Auto Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
- Fluorescent lamp Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

(Default: Auto)

NOTE

◆ You can create desktop icons of "Movie mode", "Photo mode" and "Voice mode" from the function menu launched from [MENU] ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Camera". The "Photo mode" desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons → p.130

<Photo mode>

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

Shooting with a FOMA

1 On the standby

screen

The "Photo mode" screen appears.

Pressing (CAM) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the "Photo mode" screen.



Function menu \rightarrow p.168

2 Point the camera at an object or



The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The "image checking" screen appears.

■ To retake the shot

\rightarrow "YES"



Function menu \rightarrow p.169

3

The shot image is stored in the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.169).

NOTE

◆ Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:

- \rightarrow "LifeKit" \rightarrow "Camera" \rightarrow "Photo mode"

◆ Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes.

When you set the "Display size" to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in QCIF (176 x 144) or in SubQCIF (128 x 96), the image may look grainy.

◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.

◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera/ Rear camera	Switches between front camera and rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.166).
Storage setting	
Refer data	Displays the folder list screen in "My picture".

Interval/Number*1	Sets the shooting interval and the number of shots you want to take on the continuous mode. \rightarrow p.171
Image quality	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Photo mode "Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" \rightarrow p.174 Brightness \rightarrow Use to adjust the brightness Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "-2 to \pm0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "\pm0" is the default setting when the camera launches. White balance "Setting the white balance" \rightarrow p.174 The white balance cannot be specified unless Photo mode is "OFF". Color mode set "Setting the effects on the photographed images" \rightarrow p.174
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. \rightarrow p.177
Select frame*2	Sets a frame for the image. \rightarrow p.172
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ON Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in "Select to save". OFF (default) Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved. Select a folder to save the image The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 x 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 x 144) nor SubQCIF (128 x 96). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actual size (default) Displays an image in the actual size. Fit in display Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of still images stored and available spaces.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.

*1 : The option cannot be set in Photo mode.

*2 : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter Sound>

◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting “Original” for “Manner mode set” and “ON” for “VM tone” emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

● Setting the image quality for still images

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/ Continuous mode screen (p.170) ▶

■ (FUNC) ▶ “Storage setting” ▶

Select “Super Fine”, “Fine” or “Normal”

The image quality can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.166
Data sizes caused by the combinations of “Storage setting” and “Select size” settings are listed below. Higher the image quality (in order of Super Fine, Fine and Normal), larger the data size becomes.
For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Storage setting Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
VGA (640 × 480)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.
CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
QCIF (176 × 144) SubQCIF (128 × 96)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 20K bytes max.	Approx. 9,000K bytes max.

Function menu (image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.168).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Compose message	“Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted” → p.172
Edit image	▶ Edit the image Adds a frame or effect to the image. “Editing Images” → p.261

Set as display	<p>■ To specify for the standby screen ▶ Select a screen ▶ Select a display mode</p> <p>■ To specify for screens such as dialing or receiving ▶ Select a screen</p> <p>■ To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select a screen ▶ Check the image ▶ “YES”</p> <p>Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288) and the Storage setting is Super Fine.</p>
Change frame	“Changing the frame” → p.172
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) Displays an image in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved. The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. • File restricted Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

◆ Pressing  () on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

◆ Selecting “Edit image” changes the display to the Normal display.
◆ “Compose message” and “Save” are available after you edit an image.

<Mirror display>

◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting continuously

<Continuous mode>

Default setting	Select size: CIF(352 X 288) Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (A-Continuous mode) Shot number: 4
-----------------	--

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots at the specified interval.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter.
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96)
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.

1 Photo mode screen

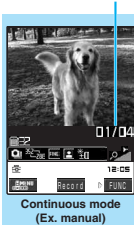
(p.168) ▶ (MENU) (OK)

or ▶ “” or

“”

The “Continuous shooting” screen appears.

Shot number/Max. shot count



Function menu▶p.168

2 Point the camera at an object

▶ or

()

After the shooting, the “Continuous shooting checking screen” appears showing four of the shots at the same time.



Function menu▶p.171

■ To stop the continuous shooting

Auto continuous mode: ▶ ▶ “NO”

Manual continuous mode: ▶ (or) ▶ “NO”

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

3 (FUNC) ▶ Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

“Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)”→ p.171

The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.168). If “Store selection” is selected, the “Continuous shooting checking screen” appears with the saved images removed after the image saving.

■ To select the image to save

▶ Use to select an image

The icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To cancel the selected image, select the image again.

■ To check the images in detail

▶ Use to select an image▶ (Detail)

Use to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press .

To save the image displayed in detail, press .

The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.168).



Function menu▶p.171

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp lights in red in Auto continuous mode.
- ◆ When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.
- ◆ Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.


● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

- “Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5” are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) and SubQCIF (128 × 96).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.170)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Interval/Number”▶

Select any item

Shot interval	Selects the shooting interval among “0.5 seconds”, “1.0 seconds” and “2.0 seconds”. The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	▶Enter the number of shots (2-digit) Sets the number of shots between “05 and 20” (5 to 20 shots)*. Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number, press  .

* : “05 to 10” (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320)

2 After changing the settings, press

 ▶ 

NOTE

<Shot number>

- ◆ When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always set to 4.
- ◆ Changing the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another size changes the number of shots to 5.
- ◆ Changing the image size to Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all	Saves all the still images. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save” The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as the original animation. ▶“Save” or “Mirror save”▶Select No. for original animation The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
Select this	Attaches <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to the selected still image to show that it is selected.
Select all	Attaches <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.

Release all	Deselects all the still images. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disappears.
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot is saved. The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes all shot the images and returns to the continuous shooting screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

- ◆ “Store all&anime” cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more of the photographed images have already been saved.

<Mirror display>

- ◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<File restriction/Restriction all>

- ◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message	“Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted” → p.172
Mirror display, Normal display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, “Normal display” appears.

Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Actual size (default) • Fit in display 	Displays an image in the actual size. Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted (default) • File restricted 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it. Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

◆ Pressing (MAIL) on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

◆ An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Images of CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) can be framed.

- Pre-installed frames → p.343
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)
 (FUNC) ▶ “Select frame” ▶ Select a frame

- To cancel framed photography
▶ “OFF”

2 Point the camera at an object or ()

The “frame shooting check” screen appears.

3 Check and save the shot as you do in “Shooting Still Images” (p.168)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. → p.172

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.
- ◆ Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.
- ◆ If the sizes of the image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.

- If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° counterclockwise.
 - If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° clockwise.
- ◆ Exiting the camera releases the frame.

Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image.

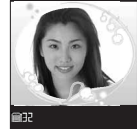
- You cannot remove the frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen (FUNC) ▶

“Change frame” ▶

Select a frame

Use to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

■ To rotate a frame 180°

▶ (Rotate)

■ To cancel the selected frame

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Cancel”

Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: Selecting “Compose message” on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.168)
 (FUNC) ▶ “Compose message”
▶ Select any item

Attach image^{*1} (i-mode mail)	
• Attach mail	Attaches a file after changing only its size.
• QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image^{*2} (Deco-mail)	
• Insert mail^{*3}	Inserts a file after changing only its size.
• SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1 : Shooting an image of Stand-by (240 × 320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting “Attach mail” or “QVGA scale down”.

*2 : Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128 × 96) does not display the screen for selecting “Insert mail” or “SubQCIF scale down”.

*3 : This option cannot be selected for the image size other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing or on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert the image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.
- ◆ An image whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. A large image sent to an i-mode terminal is resized in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by the i-mode terminal.
- ◆ If you attach a large image whose size is 10,001 to 500K bytes, the image to attach is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.168).
- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- The shooting time depends on the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen

(p.168) ()
 or " "

The desktop icon is also available for launching the "Movie mode" screen. → p.130



Function menu → p.173

2 Point the camera at an object or

The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red. You can zoom in/out during shooting.

The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.

■ If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size



The movie checking screen appears.

3 or

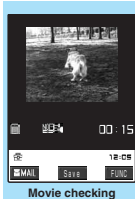
The shooting terminates and the "Movie checking screen" appears.

■ To play the movie you shot

(FUNC) ▶ "Play"

■ To reshoot a movie

▶ "YES"



Function menu → p.173

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.174).

NOTE

- ◆ Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:
 - ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Camera" ▶ "Movie mode"
- ◆ If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the "movie checking" screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.
- ◆ If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ If you press any key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera/ Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.166).
File size	
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• Normal (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• Fine mode	Shoots a movie with quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• Move mode	Shoots a movie when the object is moving around. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Refer data	Displays the folder list screen in "i-motion".
Image quality	
• Photo mode*	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → p.174
• Brightness	▶ to adjust the brightness ▶ Selects the brightness among 5 levels from "−2 to ±0 to +2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. "±0" is the default setting when the camera launches.
• White balance	"Setting the white balance" → p.174
• Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → p.174
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. "Sound 1" is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → p.177

Movie type set	
• Normal (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• Video	Shoots a movie without voice.
• Voice	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	
• ON	Does not display the movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
• OFF (default)	Displays the movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved. The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
File restriction	
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	
• Actual size (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	
Shows the sizes of movies stored and available spaces.	
Help	
Shows the shooting guide.	

* : This options cannot be set in Movie mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆ A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆ The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<File restriction>

◆ You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

● Setting the white balance

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/
Continuous mode screen (p.170)/
Movie mode screen (p.173)▶
[i] (FUNC)▶ "Image quality"▶
"White balance"▶ Select any item

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.166

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

- ◆ If the camera is set to the Photo mode, Auto continuous mode, Manual continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not "OFF", the white balance is automatically set to "Auto".
- ◆ Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent lamp" may make the image more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.
- ◆ The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to the videophone shooting. → p.79

● Setting the effects on the photographed images

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/
Continuous mode screen (p.170)/
Movie mode screen
(p.173)▶ [i] (FUNC)▶ "Image
quality"▶ "Color mode set"▶ Select
any item

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

● Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/
Continuous mode screen (p.170)/
▶ [i] (FUNC)▶ "Image quality"▶
"Photo mode"▶ Select any item
The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. → p.166

Portrait (default)	Is the shooting mode for people.
Night mode*	Is the shooting mode for objects in a dark place.
OFF	Disables any effects for shooting.

* : The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE



- ◆ Portrait is selected for shooting in Continuous mode with the front camera and Movie mode.
- ◆ Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.
- ◆ Night mode is restored to Portrait when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

Function menu (movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	▶ Compose an i-mode message Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie for the standby screen.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• Actual size (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie is saved. The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• File unrestricted (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ Movies to send are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
- ◆ Pressing   on the movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached.

<Set as stand-by>

- ◆ The movie to set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
- ◆ A movie with only voice cannot be set.

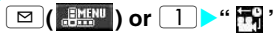
Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 45 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)▶



2 Point the camera at an object▶ or




The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the "0:00:00" flash.

3 or

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in "Shooting Movies" (p.173)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also activate the chance capture function by selecting  (FUNC) ▶ "CHG camera-mode" ▶ "Chance capture" on the "Photo mode" screen.
- ◆ The shot finished before the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as well as the "Movie mode".

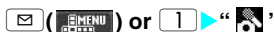
Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add the voice to a still image of QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: Shooting a still image and adding voice>

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)▶



2 Point the camera at an object▶ or



A still image is shot.
The "recording start" screen appears.
You can set the file size by selecting "File size" from the function menu before recording the voice.



Function menu▶p.176

3 or ()

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.





4 or ()

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.173)

NOTE

- ◆ You can also create a picture voice by selecting  (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “Photo mode” on the Photo mode screen.
- ◆ If you want to create a picture voice using the existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press  (FUNC) ▶ “CHG camera-mode” ▶ “Picture voice” ▶ “My picture” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image.

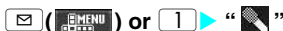
Function menu (recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restricted (Short) (when the camera launches) 	You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Restricted (Long) 	You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.

Using Voice mode

- A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.168) ▶



The desktop icon is also available for launching the “recording start” screen. → p.130

2 or ()

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.


3 or ()

After the recording is finished, the “recording check” screen appears.

4

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.174).

NOTE

- ◆ You can also record in Voice mode by selecting  (FUNC) ▶ “Movie type set” ▶ “Voice” on the “Movie mode” screen.
- ◆ Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image so that it will be shot in your desired size.

- You cannot adjust the zoom if the image size is VGA (640 × 480) Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/ Continuous mode screen (p.170)/ Movie mode screen (p.173) ▶ Use to adjust the zoom

Size	Zoom	Maximum
VGA (640 × 480)	—	—
CIF (352 × 288)	2 steps	Approx. 1.8x
JAVA (240 × 240)	—	—
QCIF (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2x
SubQCIF (128 × 96)		

NOTE

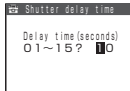
- ◆ “1x” is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to “1x”.
- ◆ Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

Using the auto timer


Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to “OFF” each time you finish shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.168)/Continuous mode screen (p.170)/Movie mode screen (p.173) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Auto timer” ▶ “ON” ▶ Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer




Enter a 2-digit number between “01” and “15” for the auto timer.



Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed number, press .




“10 seconds” is set at the time of purchase.



● If the auto timer is set



The  icon appears on the screen to show that the auto timer is set.




Pressing  or  sounds the auto timer tone, and then the auto timer starts running.

The incoming call lamp, ,  and  flash.


The countdown tone sounds roughly five seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, , and  flash rapidly.

During the auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing  or .

■ To cancel the auto timer settings

▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Auto timer” ▶ “OFF”

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶  (Quit) or 

NOTE

- ◆ Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to “OFF”.

● i-mode/i-motion/ i-channel

What is i-mode?	180
Displaying i-mode Menu	i-mode menu 180
■ Viewing sites	
Viewing Sites	181
Viewing and Using Sites	184
Registering My Menu Entries	My Menu 186
Changing Your i-mode Password	Change i-mode Password 186
Viewing Websites	Internet connection 186
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly	Bookmark 187
Saving Site Content	Screen memo 189
■ Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages	Save image 190
Downloading Melodies from Sites	i-melody 191
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites	192
Downloading Data Files from Sites	192
■ Useful i-mode functions	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions	Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions 192
■ Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode Settings	193
■ Using message services	
When You Receive a Message	Receive message 195
Checking for Messages	Check new messages 197
Viewing Messages in the Message Box	MessageR/MessageF 197
■ Using certificates	
Using SSL Certificate	198
Setting FirstPass	199
Changing the Certificate Host	200
■ Using i-motion	
What is i-motion?	200
Downloading i-motion	Download i-motion 201
Setting i-motion	202
■ Using i-channel	
What is i-channel?	203
Accessing a Site from the Channel List	204
Making the i-Channel Settings	i-Channel setting 205

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

- i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

■ Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (webpage) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders’ permission.
- All data stored (mails, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is recommended to back up the stored data or important data. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs on your i-mode terminal, some data downloaded via i-mode or i-motion are not transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. Also, when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, etc.) attached to sent or received mails, screen memos and MessageR/MessageF.
- If a file for which viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up bookmark contents note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).

<i-mode menu>

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode

1 MENU “i-mode”



The “i-mode menu” screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 10 items.

Pressing on the standby screen also displays the “i-mode menu” screen.

■ If “” appears

You are out of range or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “” appears.

■ If “” is flashing

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.181) or website (p.186) or send an i-mode message (p.211) while you are in range but not using the i-mode service, “” flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ If “” is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), “” flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode center. From this screen, access a variety of sites such as “What’s New!!”.	p.181
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.187
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.189
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.184
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.186
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.203

Item	Description	Refer to
Message	Displays received MessageR/MessageF. The message service automatically delivers required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.197
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	p.197, 224
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.199
i-mode settings	Make the i-mode settings.	p.193

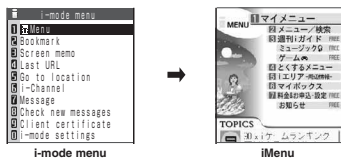
NOTE

- ◆ The i-mode range is the same as the FOMA range (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- ◆ The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of range. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu”

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode center and the “iMenu” screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



- To cancel downloading pages
▶ CLR or (Quit)

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press



2 Select “ENGLISH” and then press



Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- ◆ The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- ◆ メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search), とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), エリア (i-area), マイボックス (My box), 料金 & お申込・設定 (Fee & application, settings) and お知らせ (Information) are not shown on the English iMenu.
- ◆ Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- ◆ English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- ◆ Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New.

Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press “Quit”

“” flashes, then “” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ Press and hold for 2 seconds or longer, and the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Suspending i-mode

1 During i-mode, press “Suspend”

The standby screen appears.
“Using Menus” → p.30

NOTE

- ◆ Press and hold for 2 seconds or longer, and the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu”

2 “ENGLISH” ▶ “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

The “sites” screen appears.



Function menu → p.182

● “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese)

You can download and save dictionaries, Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site “みんなNらんど” under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

The following shows how to access “みんなNらんど”. Select “iMenu” → “メニュー/検索” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど”


NOTE

- ◆ Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- ◆ You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- ◆ If an image cannot be downloaded, the “” icon appears. However, “” does not appear for a background image that cannot be downloaded.
- ◆ You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.284). You can also send and receive messages.
- ◆ You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related page (link destination).
- ◆ The displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the function menu.
- ◆ The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- ◆ On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the selected colors.

Function menu (sites screen)

Add bookmark	Adds the URL of the currently displayed page to the bookmark list. “Adding bookmarks” → p.187
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. You can use bookmarks to access i-mode sites or websites. → p.188
Add screen memo	Saves the displayed page as a screen memo. “Saving a screen memo” → p.189
Screen memo list	Displays the screen memo list screen. “Displaying a screen memo” → p.189

Save image	Saves an image on the displayed page. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” → p.190
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attach URL Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211 • Attach image ▶ Select an image Attaches an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211 • Insert image ▶ Select an image Inserts an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message. “Composing and Sending Deco-mail” → p.214
Enter URL	▶ ▶ Enter a URL ▶ OK ▶ Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	“Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook” → p.185
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page. “Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries” → p.288
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary on the displayed page. “Using dictionaries from other functions” → p.301
Home	
• Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be registered.
• Display home	Displays the home page.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.

Site info	
• Title	▶ Check the title ▶ “OK” Displays the title of the displayed page.
• URL	▶ Check the URL ▶ “OK” Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• Certificate	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	
	Sets the image display mode and sound effects for the displayed page.
• Set image disp.	Sets the image display mode for a page. If “OFF” is selected,  appears instead of an image on the page.
• Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>

- ◆ Storing a URL in the “Set as home URL” option does not change the “Valid”/“Invalid” under “Home URL”.




<Display home>

- ◆ “Display home” is not available when “Home URL” is set to “Invalid”.
- ◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the home page.


<Title>

- ◆ Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>

- ◆ If the entire URL does not appear, press  to display the cursor. Use  to move the cursor and check the URL. Press  again to hide the cursor. Select “OK” to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>

- ◆ Up to 5 certificates are displayed. If there are two or more certificates, use  to check the previous or next certificate.
- ◆ When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls by line regardless of the “Scroll” setting.

<Change CHR code>

- ◆ If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
- ◆ Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
- ◆ If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- ◆ “Change CHR code” only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>


- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

Viewing SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA Certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo Certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting “Client certificate” (p.199) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green).


1 Open an SSL page

An SSL page and  appear.

■ To cancel opening during authentication

▶ 

■ To cancel loading an authenticated page


▶  (Quit)



2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page ▶ “YES”

SSL communication ends and  disappears.


NOTE


- ◆ The message “This site is not certified Do you connect?” may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting “YES”. You may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts. To cancel displaying, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press  to return to the original screen.



Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/ MessageF, i-mode message or SMS and the text or list cannot appear on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.


■ To scroll by line


Press  to scroll down by line to view the next list item or text line.

Press  to scroll up by line to view the previous list item or text line.



You can set the scroll speed and linked page to display when pressing  or . → p.193

■ To scroll by page

Press  (MEMO/CHECK) to scroll down by screens to view the next part of the list or text.

Press  (←) to scroll up by screens to view the previous part of the list or text.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, a message may appear indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. If it is OK to send the numbers, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". Press  (Return) or  to return to the previous screen.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, a message appears indicating that they will be sent. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the currently viewed page is set to "Last URL". When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to "Last URL". Use "Last URL" to reconnect to the last viewed page.

  "i-mode"  "Last URL"  "YES"

NOTE

- ◆ The current URL is not saved to "Last URL" if:
 - You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
- ◆ The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to "Last URL". In this case, "Last URL" will save the URL of page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites




This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.185). Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.

- When a Flash movie is used, display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in "Set image disp." (p.183) under "Site settings".

Image icons


-  (color) : Appears during image loading or if "Set image disp." is set to "OFF".
-  : Appears if image loading failed.
-  (BW) : Appears if the image cannot be loaded.

Selecting an item


When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform the operations below.

- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Radio button

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options.  indicates a selected radio button.

Checkbox

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options.  indicates a selected checkbox.





Text box

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

Pull-down menu



A pull-down menu allows you to choose one of a range of options. Some options are shown and hidden sub-options appear as a list when you select an option.

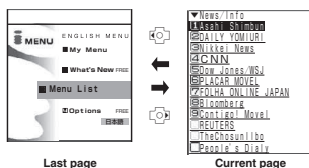
NOTE

- ◆ Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include multiple available options that can be selected by checking . Each time you use  to move the focus between and press  the option is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press  (Finish) or  to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal's cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

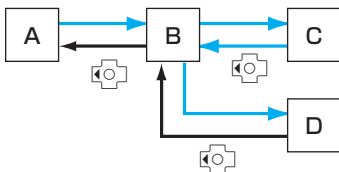
- 1 Press  to jump back to the previous page or  to jump forward to the next page



NOTE

◆ You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing . However, when you have pressed to return to an earlier page (from "C" to "B") and then gone from that page to another page (from "B" to "D"), pressing twice from page "D" will not display page "C", but will take you back to "B" and then to page "A" (see below). The previous page is displayed in order of "D", "B", and "A".

■ When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



— Page display sequence
 — Sequence when you return to previous pages

■ **To view pages stored in cache**

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. Use to move to another page while you are viewing an i-mode site or website. A FOMA terminal will display a page stored in cache without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even when you use . If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you load an SSL-compatible page from the cache, the message indicating that an SSL page will be displayed appears.

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

- 1 **Sites screen (p.182)** (FUNC) **"Reload"**

NOTE

◆ If you perform "Reload" on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a

message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting "YES" will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

- 1 **Sites screen (p.182)** (FUNC) **"Add to phonebook"** **"YES"** **Add the phone number to phonebook**

"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.93
 "Adding information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.94

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to a phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with the phone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "" does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image disp."
- Selecting "YES" in "Use phone information" (p.195) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- ◆ To rerun a Flash movie, select "Retry" from the Sites function menu or other menus. → p.182
- ◆ Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" in "Site settings" from the Sites function menu and then select "OFF". Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.

- ◆ When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using “Display setting”, the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, “Retry” is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
- ◆ Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
- ◆ Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
- ◆ For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the “Vibrator” or “Manner mode set” setting. However, a terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen or as Wake-up display.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark” (p.187).

- 1 **Sites screen (p.182) ▶ “My Menu Registration” ▶ Select the “Input password” box ▶ Enter your 4-digit i-mode password ▶ “Select”**

i-mode password → p.138

NOTE

- ◆ Charged sites in the Menu List are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

- 1 **MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “My Menu” ▶ Select a site you want to view**

NOTE

- ◆ To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
- ◆ Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to “0000” (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver’s license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to “0000”.

- 1 **MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH” ▶ “Options” ▶ “Change i-mode Password”**
- 2 **Select the “Current Password” box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password**
The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as “*”.
- 3 **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter a new password**
Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.
- 4 **Select the “New Password” box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password again**
Enter the number you entered in step 3.
- 5 **Select “Select”**

- **If you enter your “Current Password” incorrectly**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

- **If you enter different numbers in “New Password” and “New Password (Confirmation)”**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.
- A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.

- 1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL” ▶ Select “<NEW>”



- 2 Enter a URL ▶ “OK”

A message appears warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL. Press **[OK]** or **[CLR]** to connect to the website with the entered URL.

- If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with “http://” or “https://”

A message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

- ◆ Some websites may not be displayed correctly on a FOMA terminal.
- ◆ If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing **[ESC]**.
- ◆ You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

Accessing sites from the URL history

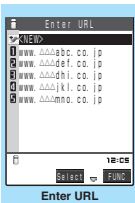
The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

- 1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “Go to location” ▶ “Enter URL”

The “Enter URL” screen appears.

- 2 Select a URL number ▶ “OK” ▶ “OK”

- To edit the selected URL
 - ▶ Select the “Internet address” box ▶ Edit the URL



Function menu → p.187

NOTE

- ◆ Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- ◆ Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.
- ◆ The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters long, excluding the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
------------------	-------------------------------

Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• Delete selected	▶ Use [F249] to select a checkbox () ▶ [Finish] ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple URLs.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the registered URLs.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

- 1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶ **[i]** (FUNC) ▶ “Add bookmark” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder number

NOTE

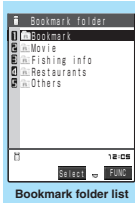
- ◆ A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding “http://” or “https://”).

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode”

▶ “Bookmark”

The “Bookmark folder list” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.188

2 Select a folder number

The “Bookmark” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.188

3 Select a bookmark number

NOTE

- ◆ Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the “Bookmark” folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Sort folder	▶ Select the destination Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Indicates the total number of bookmarks in all the folders. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not included.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the bookmarks via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.280
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.

Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the bookmarks. Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not deleted.
-------------------	---

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
- ◆ All folders including Secret folders are displayed when Secret mode and Secret data only mode are set.

<Add folder>

- ◆ Newly added folders appear below the existing folders.

- ◆ The Secret folder location is not changed even if a folder is added.

<Send all Ir data>

- ◆ Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not sent.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks.
• Move this	▶ Select a folder number ▶ “YES” Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• Move selected	▶ Select a folder number ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) of a bookmark ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
• Move all	▶ Select a folder number ▶ “YES” Moves all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Edit title	▶ Edit a title You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	▶ Use to highlight the head of text to copy ▶ Use to highlight the end of text to copy ▶ Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.

Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.145

* : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. → p.145

NOTE

<Move>

◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.

<Edit title>

◆ If you delete a title and press , the URL is stored without the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

<Add desktop icon>

◆ You can display the bookmark pasted into the desktop by selecting its desktop icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>

◆ “Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

• You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (p.182)▶ (FUNC)▶
“Add screen memo”▶“YES”

NOTE

◆ When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.

◆ A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.

◆ If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as a screen memo.

◆ Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.

◆ When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with set playback period cannot be saved as a screen memo.

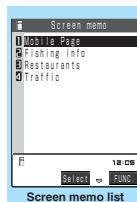
◆ Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 single-byte characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 MENU▶“i-mode”

▶“Screen memo”

The “Screen memo list” screen appears.



Screen memo list
Function menu▶p.189

2 Select a screen memo number

The “Screen memo detail” screen appears.



Screen memo detail
Function menu▶p.190

NOTE

◆ Information on a screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.

◆ If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen memo list screen as “No title”.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with . The disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.
Delete	Deletes screen memos.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
• Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple screen memos.
• Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Deletes all the registered screen memos.

NOTE**<Edit title>**

- ◆ If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as "No title".

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos storable varies depending on the data size.

<Delete>

- ◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	Saves an image or background image displayed in a screen memo. Select "Normal image" or "Background image". "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → p.190
Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number and e-mail address displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.93 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.94
Edit title	▶ Edit a title You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with a URL for a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image pasted/attached.
• Attach URL	Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
• Attach image	▶ Select an image Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
• Insert image	▶ Select an image Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo pasted into a message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → p.214
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing a screen memo. "Adding schedule entries" → p.289

Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary from a screen memo. "Using dictionaries from other functions" → p.301
URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies. Select "ON" or "OFF".
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

NOTE**<URL>**

- ◆ You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

- ◆ Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.


<Delete>

- ◆ Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>**Downloading Images from Sites and Messages**

If saving an image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image on a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>

- Sites screen (p.182)/Message detail screen (p.197)** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Save image" ▶ "Normal image" ▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder number

Position the frame over the image to be saved.

■ To display a background image

- ▶ "Save image" ▶ "Background image"
- ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder number

- "YES" ▶ Select an item**

■ Not to set the image for the standby screen, etc.

- ▶ "NO"

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot save a JPEG image which exceeds a size of 1,616 dots wide or 1,212 dots high.
- ◆ A progressive JPEG image⁷ larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be stored.
 - * : Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed as very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.
- ◆ You cannot save an image with a file size larger than 100K bytes.
- ◆ Up to 36 single-byte characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- ◆ An image cannot be saved if " " is displayed.
- ◆ If you try to save an image during reception of a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- ◆ A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
 - Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), SubQCIF (128 × 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
 - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

Important

- You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images prohibited to be attached to a mail or be outputted externally from the FOMA terminal cannot be transferred to the personal computer.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 200 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the amount of melody data stored).

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶ Select a melody

2 "Save" ▶ "YES" ▶

Select a folder

■ To play a melody

▶ "Play"

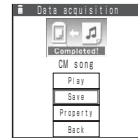
■ To display melody information

▶ "Property"

3 "YES" ▶ Select an item

■ To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ "NO"



NOTE

- ◆ You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.
- ◆ A downloaded melody may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- ◆ Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals).
- ◆ Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume specified in "Phone" in "Ring volume".

Important

- You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images prohibited to be attached to a mail or be outputted externally from the FOMA terminal cannot be transferred to the personal computer.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

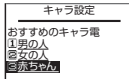
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from i-mode sites and save the characters on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you delete a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese) in “ケータイ電話メーカー” site. Accessing “みんなNらんど” → p.182

1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶

Select a Chara-den character



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

To play the Chara-den character

▶ “Play”

Controlling a Chara-den character → p.271

To view the Chara-den information

▶ “Property”



NOTE

- ◆ The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

Downloading Data Files from Sites

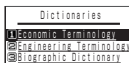
You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, Deco-mail template files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 360 images including Deco-mail pictures, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the preinstalled data can be stored (the number of data that can be stored depends on the amount of data stored).

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶

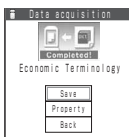
Select a data file



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”

To display dictionary information

▶ “Property”



■ When the memory for storing dictionaries is full

▶ Select a dictionary to delete ▶ “YES”

New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.

NOTE

◆ The file name used for a template is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

◆ You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To functions>

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone, sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with a mail sent from a PC.

Phone To function

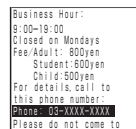
You can make a voice call, videophone call to a phone number displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message or document.

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶

Select a phone number



2 “Voice phone”

To make a videophone call

▶ “V.phone”

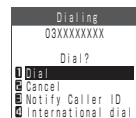


3 “Dial”

To withhold your caller ID when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “ON”

▶ “Notify Caller ID”

▶ “Don't notify”



■ To provide your caller ID when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”

▶ “Notify Caller ID” ▶ “Notify Caller”

■ **To follow the setting of “Caller ID Notification”**

▶ “Notify Caller ID” ▶ “Cancel prefix”

NOTE

- ◆ You may be able to use the Phone To function with the item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. “please contact here”).
- ◆ You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the “phone number@...” format.

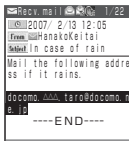
Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

<Example: Sending a mail from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 **Received mail detail screen (p.230) ▶ Select a mail address**



- 2 **Compose an i-mode mail and send it**

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.

NOTE

- ◆ If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- ◆ You may be able to use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. “please contact here”).

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site, in the body of an e-mail message, document.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.

<Example: Displaying a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

- 1 **Received mail detail screen (p.230) ▶ Select a URL ▶ “YES”**



NOTE

- ◆ You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. “for more information”).

Making i-mode Settings


- 1 **MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶**

“i-mode settings”

The “i-mode settings” screen appears.



- 2 **Select any item**

Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and linked page display for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speed (default: High speed) • During scroll in focus (default: OFF) 	<p>Selects the speed for scrolling pages from “High speed” and “Low speed”.</p> <p>Sets whether to highlight the pages (linked pages) when scrolling.</p>
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the image display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo. When “OFF” is set, “  ” icon appears instead of an image. Flash movies are not displayed.
i-motion auto replay	“Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion” → p.202

i-Channel setting	Sets the telop and its speed for i-channel. "Making the i-Channel Settings" → p.201
Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.
Use phone information (default: YES)	"Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies" → p.195
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered.
• Invalid (default)	Disables the home URL display.
• Valid	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the defaults.

NOTE

<Scroll>

- ◆ When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to "1 line".

- ◆ You can also change the font size referring to the "Character size" in "Changing the Font" column → p.128

<Set image disp.>

- ◆ Even if "ON" is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, "📷" is displayed.

<Sound effect>

- ◆ Even if "ON" is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>

- ◆ When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL, selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu screen.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout>

Default setting
60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1** **MENU** ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Set connection timeout" ▶ **Select an item**

Select "60 seconds", "90 seconds" or "Unlimited".

NOTE

- ◆ Even when you select "Unlimited", the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection>


MENU81

Default setting
i-mode


* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides "i-mode".

- 1** **MENU** ▶ "Settings" ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Host selection" ▶ **Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press**  **(Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item**

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters for a host name.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

- 2** Press  **(Finish) after changing the settings**

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change hosts while using i-mode. End i-mode before changing the host.
- ◆ Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- ◆ To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.

- ◆ To delete a stored "User defined host", select a host you want to delete, select "Delete" from the function menu, enter the security code and select "YES". If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to "i-mode".
- ◆ If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to "i-mode".
- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel telop text is not displayed. When the information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing [ch], the telop text appears automatically.
- ◆ If you change a host to connect, the i-channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press [ch] to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the stored data when running Flash movies.

- The stored data may be used depending on the Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set "YES" to "Use phone information" in "i-mode settings". The default setting is "YES". Such movies may use the following types of stored data:
 - Battery level
 - Ring volume setting
 - Signal strength
 - Bilingual setting
 - Date and time
 - Model data

1 i-mode settings screen (p.193) ▶ "Use phone information" ▶ Select an item

Select "YES" or "NO".

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received MessageR and MessageF respectively. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the amount of data in each saved message.

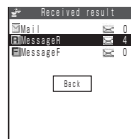
Viewing newly received messages

- To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto-display" (p.194).

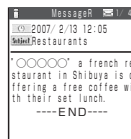
The "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message appears.



- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while a message is being received, hold down [END] (Quit) or [CLR] for 1 second or longer. However, a message may be downloaded depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.



- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the standby screen appears while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.



■ When automatic display is disabled

The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- ◆ When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.
- ◆ Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, the FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), Dial lock is set, or Original lock is set to "i-mode" or "Incoming/Mail disp".
- ◆ If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- ◆ When the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears, a FOMA terminal can receive no further MessageR/MessageF. To receive a new message, delete the

unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear.

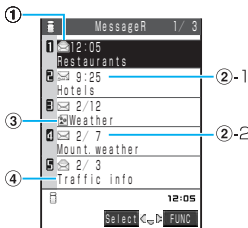
Incidentally, there are some cases that 2 types of statuses are displayed simultaneously as follows.

“” (R, F:Red), “” (R:Red, F:White), “” (R:White, F:Red)

- ◆ When the “” (white) or “” (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Use “Check new messages” to receive your MessageR/MessageF held at the center.
- ◆ When the “” (red) or “” (red) icon appears, the space for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.
- ◆ After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling of screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.
- ◆ When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

Guide to the MessageR/MessageF screen

- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

- ① Shows the MessageR/MessageF status.
 - : Unread MessageR/MessageF
 - : Read MessageR/MessageF
 - : Unread and protected MessageR/MessageF
 - : Read and protected MessageR/MessageF
- ② Shows the message arrival time and date.
 - ②-1 The time is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived today.
 - ②-2 The date is shown for MessageR/MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier.
- ③ Shows any attached or pasted file.
 - : Attached or pasted melody.
 - : Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which are invalid.
 - : All the attached or pasted melodies are invalid.
 - : Attached image.
 - : Multiple attached images, some of which are invalid.
 - : All the attached images are invalid.
 - : Multiple pasted files.

The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:


- : Attached or pasted file.
- : Multiple attached or pasted files, some of which are invalid.
- : All the attached or pasted files are invalid.

- ④ Shows the message subject.

<Check new messages>




Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)
-----------------	---




- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - “” appears
 - Message boxes are full
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - Self mode is set
 - The FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass center
- Use “Set check new messages” (p.244) to specify which items are checked for.

1 “i-mode” ▶ “Check new messages”

The check new messages screen appears. The following procedures are also available to check new messages.



-  “Check new messages”
-  (1 second or longer)
-  “Check new messages”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail” → “MessageR” → “MessageF”.

The “” (white), “” (white) and “” (white) icons flash during checking, and the “Mail Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.





The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down  (Cancel) or  (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry
- Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages




NOTE

- ◆ When the “” (white) or “” (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held for you at the i-mode center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode center for holding your MessageR/MessageF is full, the “” (red) or “” (red) icon appears.

- ◆ The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period.



	Maximum number	Longest period
MessageR	300	72Hours
MessageF	300	72Hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.

- ◆ Even if a MessageR or MessageF is stored at the i-mode center, the “” (white) or “” (white) may not appear if a FOMA terminal is turned off or “” appears.

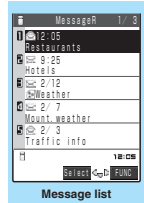
<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode center, “” (white) or “” (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 “i-mode” ▶ “Message” ▶ “MessageR” or “MessageF”



The “message list” screen appears.

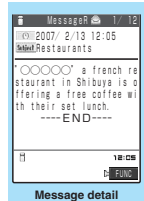


Function menu ▶ p.197

2 Select a message you want to read

The “message detail” screen appears.

To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use . Press  on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Function menu ▶ p.198

NOTE

- ◆ Keys such as “OK” and “Cancel” may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.

Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete read	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE

<Sort/Filter>

- ◆ The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.

<Delete this>

- ◆ You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆ You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete selected>

- ◆ You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆ You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>

- ◆ The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

<Delete all>

- ◆ The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- ◆ The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- ◆ When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting “Delete all” deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → p.93 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” → p.94
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	Saves an image attached to MessageR/MessageF. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” → p.190
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE

<Save melody>

- ◆ Select an attached melody to play it.
- ◆ When you save a pasted melody, it is saved under its title instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is appended.
- ◆ Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>

- ◆ All attached images are displayed regardless of the “Set image disp.” setting.

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid/invalid.

1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶

“Connection setting”

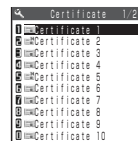
▶ “Certificate”

2 Select a certificate ▶

Check the details

■ To validate and invalidate an SSL certificate

- ▶ Highlight a certificate ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Valid/Invalid”



NOTE

- ◆ All certificates are set to “Valid” at the time of purchase.
- ◆ The “” icon appears when you select “Valid”. The “” icon appears when you select “Invalid”.

- ◆ If you select “Invalid”, you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- ◆ DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to “Valid” and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access FirstPass compliant sites.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to request and download the user certificate.

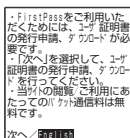
- You can request a user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center. → p.43
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶

“Client certificate” ▶

Check the details ▶

“English”



2 “Request your certificate”

- If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

- To apply invalidation

Select “Other settings” then “Revoke your certificate”.
Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.



3 Check the details ▶ “Continue”

4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code → p.138

5 Check the message

▶ “Download” ▶

Check the details ▶

“Continue” ▶ “Menu”

The confirmation message appears.
The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

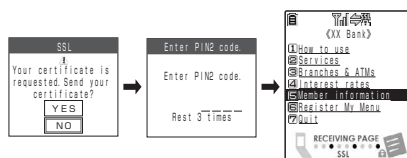


NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- ◆ Before using the FirstPass Center, select “Usage regulations (Japanese only)” and read the information.
- ◆ You cannot use the following functions while you are connected to the FirstPass Center.
 - Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
 - Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
 - Receiving MessageR/MessageF
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To function
- ◆ Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- ◆ Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- ◆ To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certificate again and download it.
- ◆ To check a downloaded user certificate, see “Using SSL Certificate” (p.198).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (p.182) ▶ Confirm the user certificate transmission ▶ “YES” ▶ Enter the PIN2 code



NOTE

- ◆ Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- ◆ If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting “YES”, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select “NO”. When the “SSL session was terminated” message appears, press [F5] to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo's digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates the FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the "FOMA N601i用 CD-ROM" (CD-ROM for FOMA N601i) bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the "FirstPassManual" (PDF file) contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.)
To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.
If this software is not installed on your PC, install it from the CD-ROM. For details on the usage, etc., see the Adobe Reader help.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.138). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling "Inquiries" described on the back cover.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.


Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting
DoCoMo


* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1  "Settings" ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 Press  (Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

- ◆ To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.
- ◆ To delete a stored "User defined host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.

Chaku-motion → p.112

● i-motion types

There are roughly 2 types of i-motions, but FOMA N601i is applicable only to the i-motion of the standard type (You cannot obtain i-motions of the streaming type).

■ Standard Type

A data of up to 500K bytes can be saved, and there are 2 types as follows.

Some i-motion may not be saved even if it is a standard type.

- ① A type playable after being obtained
- ② A type playable while being obtained

■ Streaming Type (Not applicable to FOMA N601i)

This type cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal. This is a type playable while obtained, and a data of up to 2M can be played. As the data is discarded after being played, data should be obtained each time it is played.

NOTE

- ◆ The FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- ◆ The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

- 1 MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶
“メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search)” ▶
Select a site

- 2 Select i-motion

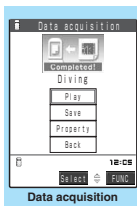
The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.
Use the “i-motion auto replay” setting in “i-mode settings” (p.202) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically during download. Some i-motion may be played after downloaded.

■ To cancel the download

▶ (Quit)

- 3 “Play”

Plays the downloaded i-motion.
“Operation during i-motion playback” → p.266



NOTE

- ◆ Untitled i-motion appears as “No title” on the data acquisition screen.
- ◆ Some sites and i-motion do not allow playback during download.
- ◆ Even if you stop playback of a i-motion program during download, the download continues.
- ◆ Even if “ON” is selected in “i-motion auto replay”, the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
- ◆ Some i-motion are restricted to be played. “⌚” appears at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played. “i-motion information” → p.265
- ◆ Some downloaded i-motion may not be played correctly.
- ◆ When you download and play i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow.
- ◆ If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal reception or the downloaded data exceeds the maximum data size, a message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear, on the condition that “Play”, “Save” or “Property” can appear on the data acquisition screen.
- ◆ The reception status may affect the replay or motion during download.
- ◆ Select “Add screen memo” from the data acquisition function menu (p.201) to save an i-motion as a “screen memo” (p.189), then play the i-motion from the screen memo.
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following i-motion types of i-motion as screen memo:
 - i-motion with playback restrictions
 - Incomplete i-motion
- ◆ i-motion programs saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion programs.

Saving i-motion

When "Save" can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion programs may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion programs can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion programs that can be saved varies between 4 and 100 depending on the amount of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder → p.254

1 Data acquisition screen (p.201) ▶ "Save" ▶ "YES"

■ To cancel saving

▶ "NO"

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder

You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.


NOTE


- ◆ An i-motion without a title is listed as "movieXXX" (XXX are numeric characters).
- ◆ You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site to the standby screen. → p.121
Some i-motion programs cannot be set for the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.201) ▶ "Property"

The "i-motion info" screen appears. Use  to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.

After checking the information, press .

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion

<i-motion auto replay>

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:


- Downloading i-motion from a site
- Downloading i-motion from the received mail screen
- Displaying a screen memo of the data acquisition screen

1 i-mode settings screen (p.193) ▶ "i-motion auto replay" ▶ Select any item

ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion are played during download.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

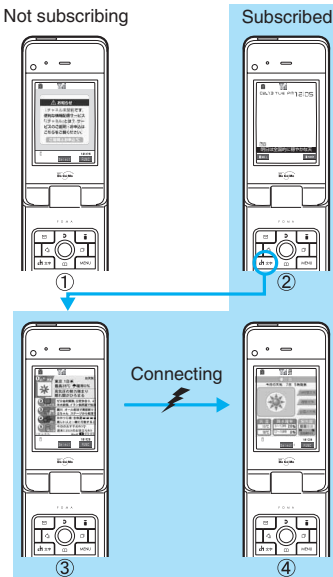
What is i-channel?

i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers).


Information is periodically received and the latest information appears as telop text on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key () displays the channel list (p.204). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions or details on how to use i-channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".



* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

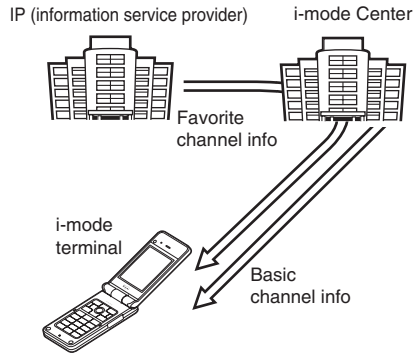
- ① You have not subscribed to i-channel.
- ② After you subscribe to i-channel, telop text automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.
- ③ Pressing () on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.
- ④ Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel". "Basic channel" is provided by NTT DoCoMo

and registered at the time of purchase, so that you can view the channels from when you start subscribing to i-channel. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Basic channel" is included in the i-channel service charge. "Favorite channel" is provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the "Favorite channel" is not included in the i-channel service charge.

Incidentally, it is only "Basic channels" information that can be displayed as a telop on the Stand-by display.



* i-channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (To subscribe to the i-channel, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).

- How to operate → p.204

NOTE

- ◆ An information charge may be made for viewing some "Favorite channel".
- ◆ For some "Favorite channel", you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.
- ◆ A packet communication charge is made for viewing detailed information on "Basic channel" and on "Favorite channel" from the channel list.

Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-channel, you can try the "Basic channel" free of charge for a given time. A packet communication charge will be made for viewing detailed information from the channel list.


- For cautions and details on how to use the trial service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

- ◆ As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press **[ch]** to start it.
- ◆ You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.
- ◆ The trial service will end automatically after a given time. To quit the service before the expiration, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● Telop text on the standby screen

If you subscribe to i-channel, delivered information will automatically appear as telop text on the standby screen.

-  flashes while i-channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the telop display mode in "i-Channel setting". → p.201



NOTE

- ◆ Telop text appears even if i-motion is set as the standby screen background.
- ◆ Telop text does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.
- ◆ The standby screen can display telop text even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-channel information site. The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen ▶

The "channel list" screen appears.

Selecting "i-Channel" from the i-mode menu also opens the i-channel list screen.



Function menu ▶ p.204

2 Select a channel item

NOTE

- ◆ If you have not subscribed to i-channel, launching the i-channel displays an announcement that you have not subscribed to i-channel. Selecting "ご説明&お申込" (Help & Applications) on the screen introduces you to i-channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-channel. Depending on the communication status, a message may appear indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel, and the previous screen may reappear.
- ◆ In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.
- ◆ Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.
- ◆ You can change the i-channel host, though it usually does not need changing. → p.194
- ◆ A message may appear indicating that channel information cannot be delivered if:
 - A call or message is incoming
 - The FOMA terminal was initialized
 - The FOMA card (UIM) was exchanged
 - The host was changed

Function menu (Channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

- ◆ “Sound effect” set for the channel list screen affects “Sound effect” under “i-mode settings” (p.194).

<i-Channel setting>

Making the i-Channel Settings

Default settings

Telop display setting: ON
Telop speed setting: Normal

Set whether to display telop text on the standby screen. Also set the scrolling speed.

- Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays telop text twice when the latest information is delivered.

1

MENU

▶ “i-mode” ▶ “i-mode settings” ▶ “i-Channel setting” ▶
Select any item

Telop display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as telop text on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF).
Telop speed setting	Sets the telop scrolling speed (Normal/High/Low).

NOTE

- ◆ The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Telop display setting>

- ◆ If you unsubscribe from i-mode before unsubscribing from i-channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-channel, the Telop display setting remains unchanged but telop text will not automatically appear.

Mail

What is i-mode Mail?	208
Displaying Mail Menu..... Mail menu	210
■ Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail..... Compose message/Send	211
Composing and Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 214
Self-Decorating a Mail to Text	Auto Deco-mail 216
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail	217
Attaching Files	Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion 218
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later.....	Save i-mode mail 220
Storing Addresses in Mail member.....	220
■ Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
When You Receive i-mode Mail	Auto receive mail 221
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively	Receive option 223
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check new messages 224
Replying to i-mode Mail	Reply to mail 225
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients.....	Forward mail 226
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook.....	226
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail	Save melody 227
Displaying and Saving Images.....	Receive image mail 227
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail.....	i-motion mail 227
■ Using mailboxes	
Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox.....	Inbox/Outbox 228
■ Using mail records	
Using mail records	Sent address list/Received address list 241
■ Specifying mail settings	
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions.....	Mail settings 242
■ Using chat mail	
Composing and Sending Chat Mail	Compose chat/Send 244
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group.....	247
■ Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)	Compose SMS/Send 249
When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)	Receive SMS 250
Checking for SMS (Short Message)	Check SMS 251
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings.....	SMS settings 252
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)	UIM operation 252

What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS.

Subscribing <i-mode> is required for using i-mode mail.

How to send and receive i-mode mail → p.211, 221

- You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode.
How to send and receive SMS → p.249, 250

i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet. Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

For subscribing to i-mode first time

The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ [4] Options
▶ Mail Settings ▶ “Confirm Mail Address”

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), only the part before the “@” symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including “@docomo.ne.jp”, must be used.
- Sending i-mode mail → p.211
- Receiving i-mode mail → p.221
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Receive option

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail. → p.223

Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>

Menu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ [4] Options
▶ Mail Settings ▶ Each setting

* For details, refer to the “Mobile Phone

User’s Guide [i-mode]” provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>

For example, if your address is “docomo.taro~ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”, you can change the part that precedes the “@” symbol to your preferred name.

Confirming your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to “[your-phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”.

Rejecting spam mail

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

① Reject/Receive Mail Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) ▶ Reject/Receive Mail Settings>

- Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka and WILLCOM.

Also accepts only mail from specified domains or addresses when the mail is not from one of the above providers. You can reject messages from addresses disguising mobile phone/PHS domains.

- ② SMS Rejection Settings <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)> SMS Rejection Settings>
- You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: “Reject All SMS”, “Reject Anonymous SMS”, “Reject Intl. SMS” and “Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS”. You can also check the setting status.
- ③ Reject mass i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)> Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
- This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is “Reject”, so you do not have to change the setting to reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders.
- ④ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)> Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
- This feature lets you reject mail marked as “未承諾広告※” that is sent to you without your consent. The default setting is “Reject”, so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. Senders are legally required to include “未承諾広告※” (6 double-byte Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.

■ Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>

Using this option enables restriction to an incoming i-mode mail by size specified in advance.

■ Checking your settings <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

Use this option to stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■ To prevent nuisance mail

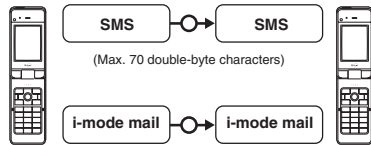
Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

● Your SMS (Short Message)

Your SMS address is your “subscriber mobile phone number”.

● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

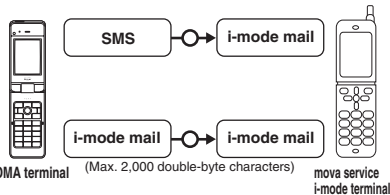
FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal (Max. 70 double-byte characters) FOMA terminal (Max. 5,000 double-byte characters)

FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

SMS from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.

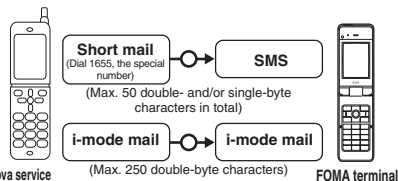


FOMA terminal (Max. 2,000 double-byte characters) mova service i-mode terminal

* If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (p.250), you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



mova service i-mode terminal (Max. 50 double- and/or single-byte characters in total) FOMA terminal (Max. 250 double-byte characters)

* : Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.

- On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

● Not available for receiving mail

As soon as a mail reaches at the i-mode Center, it is transferred to your i-mode terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, mail is kept at the i-mode Center. When the i-mode Center keeps your mail, transfer is tried up to three times at certain intervals. Receive option setting enables you to select the i-mode mail at the i-mode Center for receiving.

● Other useful features

■ Attachments

• Attached melodies

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with melodies → p.218
- For receiving i-mode mail with melodies → p.227

• Attached images

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with images → p.218
- For receiving i-mode mail with images → p.227

■ i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-motion mail → p.218
- For receiving i-motion mail → p.227

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to create and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by changing the font size or the background color, etc. when editing i-mode mail, or by attaching images to the text body. Moreover, your FOMA terminal initially provides the variety of Decorate PI that can be inserted like pictographs and you can easily create a richly expressive mail and send it. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it

did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on the i-mode terminals.)

When you send Deco-mail to the Deco-mail-unsupported terminal, it may be received as a mail containing URL.

In this case, the recipient selects URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail → p.214
- Support model: Deco-mail-supported model is available. For more details, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

<Attachments>

- ◆ Even if "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can send still images using the built-in camera.
- ◆ If you send i-mode mail to the i-mode terminal in mova service, you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.



■ Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal may erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu

1 MENU "Mail"

Pressing  ( MAIL) in standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. → p.228
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail is sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. → p.228
Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. → p.220
Compose message	Shows the screen used for composing i-mode mail. → p.211
Chat mail	Shows the chat screen. → p.245
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS. → p.249

Check new messages	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and receives any i-mode mail held at the Center. → p.223
Receive option	Checks the subject of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then selects the i-mode mail to be received or deletes items of i-mode mail before it is received when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → p.223
Check new SMS	Receives new SMS stored in the SMS center → p.251
Template	Shows the template screen. → p.218
Mail settings	"Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions" → p.242

<Compose message/Send> Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail → p.214

1 MENU "Mail"

"Compose message"

The "New mail" screen appears. Pressing [MAIL] (NEW) on "Mail menu" also displays the "New mail" screen.



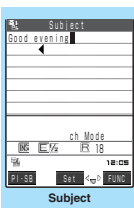
Function menu → p.212

2 "To" Select the address entry method

Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Mail member	Enters e-mail addresses from a mailing list. "Entering mailing list member addresses" → p.213
Enter address	Enters the e-mail address directly.

3 "Subject"

The "Subject" screen appears.



Function menu → p.213

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.

5 "Message"

The "Message" screen appears.



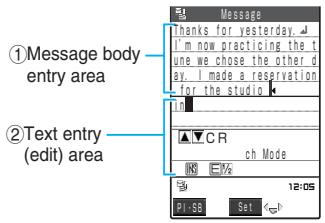
Function menu → p.213

6 Enter message body

You can enter the message body up to 5,000 double-byte characters. You can also insert a line feed while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 double-byte character and shown as "↵". Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters. You can select the font size for the Message screen. → p.325 You can compose and send the Deco-mail. → p.214 You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. → p.217

■ Screen shown when you enter an i-mode mail message

The screen when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.



- Message body entry area
 - Text entry (edit) area
- Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.
 - Text entry (edit) screen: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area. → p.327

7 Check the details

[SEND] (Send)

An animation is displayed while then i-mode mail is being sent. Press [MAIL] to return to the Mail menu screen.



■ **To interrupt transmission**

- ▶ (Cancel) or (1 second or longer)
Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

■ **For another transmission request**

- ▶ “YES”

● **Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen**

Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press (MAIL).

The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.



NOTE

- ◆ If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message, except i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆ When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use single-byte katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- ◆ When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the “184” or “186” prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select “YES” to send the i-mode mail without the “184” or “186” prefix. Selecting “NO” returns you to the previous screen.
- ◆ You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- ◆ Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the “Transmission failed” message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- ◆ If you enter an address that was stored in the phonebook with a “Secret code” assigned (p.101), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not saved in the record of sent mail addresses.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends i-mode mail.
Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message. Selecting “Save” from the function menu when previewing is also available for saving a mail.
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. “Saving i-mode mail” → p.220
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.

Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with a receiver highlighted.
• To	The recipient’s address. The mail address entered in the To field is displayed in other recipients’ terminals.
• Cc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
• Bcc	Broadcasts address. E-mails address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
Template	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.217
Attach file	Attaches the image, i-motion, melody data to an i-mode mail message. “Attaching files” → p.218
Activate camera	Activates camera function. “Shooting Still Images” → p.168 “Shooting Movies” → p.173
• Photo mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• Movie mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long). The image sizes you can shoot are QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
Delete att. file	Deletes the highlighted attachment file.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachment files.
Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.
Erase message	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- ◆ You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses. Note that “To” must be filled in for sending it.
- ◆ E-mail addresses entered in the “To” and “Cc” fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, some terminal devices or mailing applications may not show the address on the receiving side.

<Add header/Add signature>

- ◆ If you select the “Insert” checkbox in “Header/Signature”, the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message. → p.243

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter an address by searching for e-mail addresses in the phonebook.

- 1 **New mail screen (p.211)** ▶ “**To**” ▶ “**Phonebook**” ▶ **Select the search method**

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98

- 2 **Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen**
- 3 **Edit the subject and message body and send it**
For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.

Adding addresses

You can enter additional addresses so that an i-mode mail message is sent to multiple addresses at the same time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

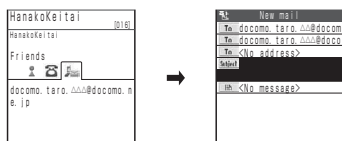
<Example: Looking up and adding addresses from the phonebook>

- 1 **New mail screen (p.211)** ▶ “**To**” ▶ with a blank address ▶ “**Phonebook**” ▶ **Select the search method**

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98

- 2 **Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen**

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



- **To change the entered recipient**
 - ▶ Select the address you want to change
 - ▶ Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

- 3 **Edit the subject and message body and send it**

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.

Entering mailing list member addresses <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add multiple addresses at once.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. → p.220

- 1 **New mail screen (p.211)** ▶ “**To**” ▶ “**Mail member**”

- 2 **Select a mail member**
The selected mail member is entered into the recipient column.



- 3 **Edit the subject and message body and send it**

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.

NOTE

- ◆ If addresses are already entered and you specify another address from a mail member, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite them after selecting the search method. Select “YES” if you want to overwrite the entered addresses. Otherwise, select “NO”.

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen → p.332

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.332) for the other items than the following.


Mail reference	“Referring to the received original mail” → p.214
Decorate mail	“Decorating a message” → p.214
Select area	Decorating the area-selected characters or cut and paste is available. → p.216
Load template	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.217
Activate camera	Activates camera. → p.168
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

- ◆ The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF (128 × 96).

<Undo>

- ◆ After you press “Undo” and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel “Undo”.
- ◆ On the message screen, if you press  to return to the new mail screen and then go back to the message screen, you cannot “Undo”. (If you select “Preview” on the message screen, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)


<Preview>

- ◆ When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

Referring to the received original mail

You can refer to the received original mail while entering a message.

1 “Text Entry screen” (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Mail reference”

- The received original mail is referred.
- When composing a replying/forwarding mail, the received mail detail screen of the original received mail is displayed.
 - In other cases, the inbox folder list screen is displayed.
- Press  (End) to return to the text entry screen.

NOTE

- ◆ When referring to the received original mail, the following functions are available from the function menu:
 - The received mail list screen: “Search mail”, “Display all”, “Sort”, “Filter”, “List setting”
 - The received mail detail screen: “Copy”

<Deco-mail>

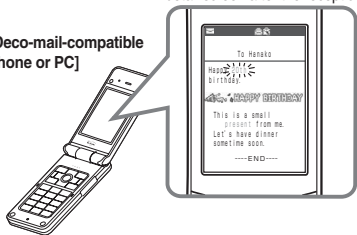
Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, changing the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.

Deco-mail display
(Displayed in the received mail detail screen after the reception)

[Deco-mail-compatible phone or PC]



NOTE

- ◆ If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- ◆ If you use “Reply with quote” or “Forward” with Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

Composing a Deco-mail message

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the “Decomail-picture” folder in “My picture”. Decomail-picture preinstalled at default → p.343
- If you decorate the message in Deco-mail, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting “Preview” from the function menu on the message screen.


<Example: Changing the font size>

1 Inputting the address and subject on the “New mail” screen (p.211) ▶

“”





The “Message” screen appears.

2 Enter message body ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decorate mail”

The decoration menu appears. Pressing  also displays the decoration menu on the message screen while in composing the new i-mode mail.

3 “”

■ To decorate the text already entered

- ▶ “ Edit” ▶ Use  to select a start point of the text to be decorated ▶ Use  to select the end of the text to be decorate ▶ “” ▶ Select size



The size of letters in the specified area is changed.



4 Select size



5 Enter text to be decorated

Press  (Exit) or  to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decorate mail” ▶ Select any item

	"Self-Decorating a Mail to Text" → p.216
	<p>▶ Use to select a color ▶ Enter message body</p> <p>Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (Change) is pressed.</p>
	<p>▶ Select any item ▶ Enter message body</p> <p>Selects the size of the entered text.</p>
	Sets large text.
	Sets standard-size text. Sets standard-size text.
	Sets small text.
	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. → p.255
	<p>▶ ▶ Enter text to be blinked</p> <p>Makes the entered text blink.</p>
	Sets the point at which blinking starts.
	Sets the point at which blinking ends.
	<p>▶ ▶ Enter text to be displayed as ticker</p> <p>Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).</p>
	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
	<p>▶ ▶ Enter text to be swung</p> <p>Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).</p>
	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
	<p>▶ Select any item ▶ Enter message body</p> <p>Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.</p>
	Sets left-justified text.
	Sets centered text.
	Sets right-justified text.
	Inserts a line.
	<p>▶ Use to select a color</p> <p>Selects the background color from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (Change) is pressed.</p>

	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message input screen.)
	"Changing the decorations" → p.216
	Deletes all the decorations.
	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image

NOTE

- ◆ 5 colors last selected from the 256-color pallet appear in the lowest row of the 25-color pallet.
- ◆ If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- ◆ Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select " Edit", specify the extent to be changed and then select " Reset".
- ◆ If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- ◆ You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message and the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).
- ◆ If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- ◆ If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit screen, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image.
- ◆ When inserting an animation to Deco-mail, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- ◆ If you select "Add header" or "Add signature" on the compose message screen to paste a non-decorative text-only header or signature, the pasted header or signature takes over the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning or end of the message, respectively.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you delete all texts by holding down for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
- ◆ If a mail is exchanged with PC or other devices other than an i-mode compatible terminal that supports Deco-mail, decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- ◆ If a Deco-mail is sent to a non-Deco-mail-supported terminal, it is held for up to 10 days at the i-mode Center. The message can be viewed in i-mode using the Web To function during those days.

Changing the decorations

- 1 **Message screen (p.211)** ▶ (FUNC)
 - ▶ “Decorate mail” ▶ “Edit” ▶ Use to select the start ▶ Use to select the end ▶ Select any item

■ To change the decoration after specifying the area

- ▶ Message screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Select area” ▶ Use to select the start ▶ Use to select the end ▶ “Decorate mail” ▶ Select any item

	▶ Use to select a color Selects the color of the text or lines to be changed from the color palette. The palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors every time (Change) is pressed.
	Changes the font size in the specified range.
	Changes to large text.
	Changes to standard-size text.
	Changes to small text.
	Changes or cancels blinking for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the blink setting.
	Cancels blink.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.
	Changes the ticker setting.
	Cancels ticker.
	Changes or releases swinging for the text in the specified area.
	Changes swinging.
	Cancels swinging.
	Changes the position of the text in the specified area.
	Changes to left-justified text.
	Changes to centered text.
	Changes to right-justified text.
	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step. (You cannot use this operation after ending the message entry screen.)
	Cancels blinking.

	Previews the entered text and decoration in sending image
--	---

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot change the inserted images or lines. If you do, delete the images or lines in the message entry screen and try to insert them.
- ◆ To change the specified background color, select “Decorate mail” from the message input function menu and choose (Change background color).

<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating a Mail to Text

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion expressed on the message you enter, and chooses the best suited decoration to your message in self-decorating. The entire message is displayed in the background color standing for the message emotion, as well as decorated with the font color, font size and tickers which are suited for the sentences.

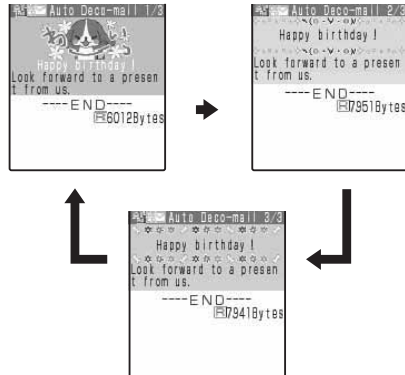
- 1 **Message screen (p.211)** ▶ (FUNC)
 - ▶ “Decorate mail”

- 2 “Auto”



- 3 Press (Next) to select a decoration pattern

Three decoration patterns are available.



NOTE

- ◆ You cannot use the auto Deco-mail in the following case:
 - When ten files are attached
 - When 5,000 bytes or less remains in total of the attached files and messages

- When a message alone has a 1,000-byte capacity or more
- ◆ If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the decoration patterns are stored.
- ◆ Immediately after returning to the message screen from the auto Deco-mail screen, selecting “Undo” is not available on the function menu.
- ◆ When running the auto Deco-mail to the message already decorated, the message appears to say “All decorations of mail will be released OK?”.
- ◆ The following emotions are recognized and classified by priority.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Love/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fun/Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer up/Join/Remark/Please/Information/OK
4	Reply/Notice

- ◆ The auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
 - Background color
 - Character color /font size (big or small)
 - Word alignment (Center)
 - Telop/swing/blink
 - Insert image (animation GIF or still image)
- ◆ The best picture, which matches the contents of the message, is automatically selected from “Auto Decomail-picture”. Depending on the contents, the picture displayed may not be the one you imagined. Auto Decomail-picture preinstalled at default → p.344

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default → p.345
- You can download templates from sites. “Downloading Data Files from Sites” → p.192
- You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → p.218
- The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
 - When there is already text entered in the mail message
 - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
 - When there is an attached file

1 New mail screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Template” ▶ “Load template” ▶ Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

- ▶ Highlight the template ▶ (Play)
 - The template is shown in the preview. → p.218
 - During preview, use (F) to display other templates.
 - If the template will not fit into the screen, use (D) to scroll the screen.
 - During preview, you can select the template by pressing (O).

■ To load the template from the message screen

- ▶ Message screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Load template” ▶ Select a template

2 Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use “Decorate mail” (p.214) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3

This confirms the edited i-mode mail message and returns to the new mail screen.



4 (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in “Template” in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the received mail detail screen (p.239) or sent mail detail screen (p.240).

1 New mail screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Template” ▶ “Save template” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- ◆ The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

Viewing the templates list

1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Template”

The “Template” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.218

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.217
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	▶ Enter a title You can enter the title up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes templates.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted template.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple templates.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

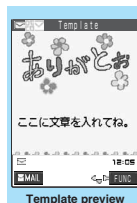
<Compose message>

- ◆ If you attempt to use “Header/Signature” to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (p.218) ▶ Select a template

The “Template preview” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.218

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail” → p.217
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder ■ If the image can be set as a screen such as standby ▶ “YES” ▶ Select an item Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select “NO” after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆ If you attempt to use “Header/Signature” to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

- ◆ The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- ◆ If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.


<Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion>

Attaching Files

1 New mail screen (p.211) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Attach file” ▶ Select any item

Attach image	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image Attaches an image.
Attach i-motion	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select i-motion Attaches i-motion.
Attach melody	▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody Attaches melody.



■ To switch the image list screen

▶ On the image list screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶
"Title name"


The Picture list screen changes to the Titles list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture list screen, select "Picture" from the function menu.


■ To display an image

▶ Use  to highlight the image to be displayed ▶  (Play)







Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.

To return to the list screen, press .

■ To play a melody

▶ Highlight a melody you want to play ▶  (Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press any one of , , , , , .

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select "YES" to play the melody.

■ To send an image as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

To send mails to the mova service i-mode terminal, a message that the other party can receive is up to 184 double-byte characters long (369 bytes) when the number of the received characters is not set on the other side. When the number of the received characters is set on the other side, a message that the other party can receive is up to 2000 double-byte characters long including i-shot URL (where the image is stored).

■ To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select "Trim for mail" from the video edit function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes. → p.270

NOTE

- ◆ The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail
Melody	Up to 10 files and 10,000 bytes (5,000 double-byte characters worth)
Image*1	including melodies and images. The maximum number of files may vary depending on the file sizes.
Large image*2	Either a large image or movie/i-motion can be attached.*
Movie/i-motion*3 (i-motion mail)	* : Some i-motion programs cannot be attached.

*1 : Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) or less that was downloaded from a site.

*2 : JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (256,000 double-byte characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).

*3 : Movie or i-motion of up to 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 double-byte characters)

- ◆ If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), "Attach image" comes out and you can select any one from "Attach mail" or "QVGA scale down".
- ◆ If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.
- ◆ When you attach a large still image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters) or 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 double-byte or 400 single-byte characters).
- ◆ When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing an i-motion is sent and you can view an i-motion.
- ◆ Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.
- ◆ When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.
- ◆ You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL.
- ◆ Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- ◆ You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it from the FOMA terminal.

- ◆ You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
- ◆ If the recipient is not using a FOMA N601i, melodies you send may not be playable.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you have saved.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox.

- The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.
- Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

1 New mail screen (p.211)▶

FUNC (FUNC) ▶ "Save"

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 **MENU** ▶ "Mail" ▶ "Draft"

The "Draft mail list" screen appears.

2 Select a mail ▶ Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail



Function menu▶p.220

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Send Ir data	"Sending on data at a time via infrared data exchange" → p.280
Send all Ir data	Sends all mails in Draft using Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.280
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Store at DSC	"Saving the message at the Data Security Center" → p.239
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple mails.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Storing Addresses in Mail member

Default setting
Not stored

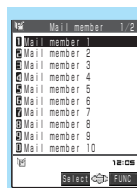
Store two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter several addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 **MENU** ▶ "Own data" ▶

"Mail member"

The "mail member list" screen appears.



Function menu▶p.221

2 Select a mail member

The "mail member detail" screen appears.



Function menu▶p.221

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press

 (Edit) ▶ Enter the e-mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To add another mail address, repeat step 3.

■ To look-up and enter the mail address

<Example: Look-up and enter the phonebook address>

▶ Select “<Not recorded>” ▶ “Phonebook” ▶

Select a look-up item

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail member pasted to the address field. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Edit member name	▶ Enter a name Edits the name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Restores Name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	▶ Enter an address Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Look-up address	<p>■ When no addresses are recorded</p> <p>▶ Select any item</p> <p>■ When the address is recorded</p> <p>▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item</p> <p>Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or history.</p>
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all members in the selected mail member.

<Auto receive mail>

When You Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

- Inbox can contain up to 1,000 messages* (i-mode mail and SMS in total).

* : Secret folder in Inbox can contain up to 100 messages separately.

- You can receive i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal which sent from the mova service i-mode terminal.

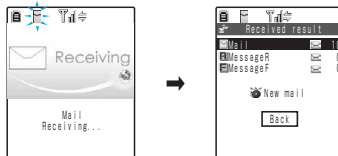
1 When you receive an i-mode mail, “ (white)” icon blinks and “Mail Receiving...” is displayed.

After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received messages, MessageR and MessageF.

When “Mail” is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.



The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of “Mail” under “Ring volume”.




■ When the i-shot service mail is received



When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image file is received as an attachment.


■ When a mail with a large size of image file is received

If you automatically retrieve a large size of the image file exceeding 10,000 bytes, “” is displayed and the received image is stored in “My picture”. If not, display the mail detail screen and select “”, then a large size of the image file is retrieved and stored in “My picture”.

NOTE

- ◆ “ (white)” icon blinks when the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.

- ◆ When the “ (red)” or “ (red)” icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete some unnecessary mails or read the unread mails until those icons no longer appear. Mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.

- ◆ If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → p.236
- ◆ If you select “ON” in “Receive option setting” (p.242) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center (the standby screen shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the “” icon appear). In this situation, you can use “Check new messages” (p.224) to receive all the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center, or use “Receive option” to check the subject lines of the i-mode mails held at the i-mode Center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. → p.223
- ◆ Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- ◆ You can use “Attached file” (p.242) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- ◆ When i-mode mail is received in the FOMA terminal, i-mode mail is deleted stored in the i-mode center.
- ◆ You can send or receive the i-mode mails, melodies, images as attachment. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the “添付ファイル削除”(Attached file deleted) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- ◆ When new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF stored on the i-mode Center.
- ◆ If you receive i-mode mail from a phone on which specifying To, Cc and Bcc is available, you can confirm which address type you receive that is To, Cc, Bcc in the mail detail screen. → p.230
- ◆ You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. → p.209
- ◆ When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/ MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>


- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail.
 - ① “Discern connect” specified for each e-mail address → p.105
 - ② “Discern group” specified for each group → p.105
 - ③ “Select ring tone”/“Style mode” → p.112, 134, “Illumination” → p.127

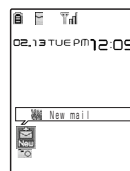
Displaying the new i-mode mail

- Select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed.

1 On the standby screen



Highlighting the “” (white) icon displays the unread mail list. The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.236).



NOTE

- ◆ Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- ◆ If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either “/” or “/” is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- ◆ If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in “Limit Mail Size” in “Options”, the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- ◆ Some background colors may overlap with the color of URL text to download image or i-motion and hence the URL text may be unreadable.
- ◆ If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- ◆ You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a mail message received from a PC.

● Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and shows the emotion matching the contents of the received mail. You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

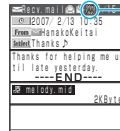
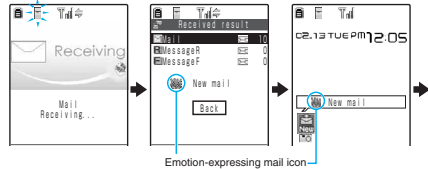
- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Cheer up		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		notice		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

- * : "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:
- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
 - Mail restored from the Data Security Center
 - SMS copied or moved from FOMA card (UIM)
 - SMS in FOMA card (UIM)
- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword notice". → p.244
 - The followings are "Disp keyword" icons that appear when you receive a mail that includes the specified keyword.
You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword notice". → p.244



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
 - ① Disp keyword 1 ② Disp keyword 2
 - ③ Disp keyword 3 ④ Emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified. → p.236
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows.



NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the wrong icons may be displayed misunderstanding the contents.
- ◆ The icons for an emotion-expressing mail does not appear on MessageR/MessageF.
- ◆ The reception date and time, subject and up to 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the beginning in the message are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon and the subject and all the message texts are searched for "Disp keyword" icon.
- ◆ When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.242). Note that you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail if you set this function to "ON".

When mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode Center and the "📧" icon is displayed rather than "📧 (white)" or "📧 (white)".

Receiving mail selectively

- If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "📧" icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.
The "📧" icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Receive option”

■ If “Receive option setting” is set to “OFF”

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select “Receive option setting” to specify the “Receive option” setting. When you set the receive option to “ON”, the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set an option for each item of i-mode mail

“受信” (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.

“削除” (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.

“保留” (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.

Use “Check new messages” (p.224) to receive the mail.

■ To delete all mails




- ▶ “削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page
- ▶ “決定” (Set)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

- ▶ “前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page) ▶ Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ”(Size):XXXバイト(bytes)” are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	Attaches an i-motion.

3 “受信 / 削除” (Receive/Delete) ▶ “決定” (Set)

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

- ▶ “キャンセル”(Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

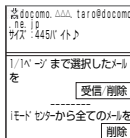
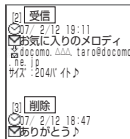
Selecting “受信 / 削除”(Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also access “Receive option” as follows (only Japanese mode available):

- MENU ▶ “i-mode” ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “メニュー / 検索” (Menu/Search) ▶ “メール選択受信”(Receive option)


- ◆ If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new messages” (p.244) if you do not want to receive any mail.



<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail




Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)
-----------------	---

- i-mode delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
 - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - When “” is displayed
 - When the Inbox is full
 - When “Receive option setting” (p.242) is set to “ON”
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - Self mode is set
 - The FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass center
- Use “Set check new messages” (p.244) to specify which items are checked for.




1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Check new messages”

The check new messages screen appears.



The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

-  “i-mode” ▶ “Check new messages”
-  MAIL (1 second or longer)
-  MAIL ▶ “Check new messages”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail” → “MessageR” → “MessageF”.



The “ (white)”, “ (white)” and “ (white)” icons flash during checking, and the “Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ To cancel the inquiry



- ▶ Hold down  (Cancel) or  (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry
- Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- ◆ When the “ (white)” icon appears, i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode Center, the icon is changed to “ (red)”.



- ◆ Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the  (white) icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the  is displayed.
- ◆ This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to send a reply to an i-mode mail message. To return the mail, there are two manners: inputting the new message or quoting the received i-mode mail.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Re:."), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (p.229) or Received mail detail screen (p.230)

▶  (Reply) ▶ Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.



■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶ "Reply" ▶ "To sender"


To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ The  icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).
- ◆ When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:."), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.

- ◆ You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files of i-mode mail or Deco-mail you quote are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.230)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Reply with quote" ▶

Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

▶ "Reply with quote" ▶ "To sender"



To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply with quote" and then "To all".

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A quotation mark (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.

To edit the quotation symbol → p.243

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.211.

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the  icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to quote are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- ◆ If i-mode message contains data such as melodies, you cannot reply message with quoting the pasted data.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

Use this procedure to forward the received i-mode mail to other people.

- Forwarded mail has "Fw:" added in the subject line of i-mode mail. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Fw:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.230)

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Forward" ▶ "To"

▶ Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses → p.213

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the icon changes to .

NOTE

- ◆ When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Fw:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Fw2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is inserted in the forwarded mail, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "W" ("FW:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Fw:" in the forwarded mail.
- ◆ If files attached or pasted into an i-mode or Deco-mail message to forward are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal, those files or contents are deleted.
- ◆ Images are not attached when you forward an i-mode mail without retrieving the large size of a still picture after you receive it.
- ◆ If i-mode message contains data such as melodies, you cannot forward message with quoting the pasted data.
- ◆ If you transfer the received mail containing URL for referencing the Deco-mail in the message, the person who receives the transferred mail cannot view the Deco-mail through the URL selection and the Web To functions. Moreover, it is not available to input the URL directly and view the Deco-mail.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

Use this procedure to add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.230)

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save address"

■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

▶ On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ To add the e-mail address or phone number of a recipient specified in a sent i-mode mail

▶ Sent mail detail screen (p.230) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ "Save address"

If the i-mode mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

▶ "Sent mail detail screen" or "Received mail detail screen" ▶ Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Add to phonebook"

2 "YES" ▶ "Phone" ▶ "New"



The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → p.93 "Adding information to the UIM Phonebook" → p.94

■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

▶ "YES" ▶ "UIM"

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

<Save melody>

Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to save a melody (🎵 or 🎶) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- If the sender is not using a FOMA N601i, melodies you receive may not be playable.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.230)

- ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES”
- ▶ Select a folder

■ To stop the melody

- ▶ , 0 to 9 , * , #

■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open a mail

- ▶ Set “Start attachment (auto)” (p.242) to “OFF”

2 “YES” ▶ Select an item

- To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.
 - ▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Displaying and Saving Images

This function enables you to save images (🖼️) inserted or attached to received i-mode mail. Saving inserted images → p.239

1 Select the image to be saved in “Received mail detail screen” (p.230)

■ To change from image display to file name display

- ▶ Select the image
- To return to image display again, select the file name.

2 (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES”

- ▶ Select a folder

3 “YES” ▶ Select an item

- To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.
 - ▶ “NO”

NOTE

- ◆ Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.

- ◆ Images may be displayed differently between i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder.

<i-motion mail>

Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.230) ▶ Select a URL ▶ “YES”

The “data acquisition” screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way

- ▶ (Quit)

■ To save a downloaded i-motion

- ▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶
Select a folder

Can be saved in the “Inbox” folder under i-motion. → p.254

■ To display information about the downloaded i-motion

- ▶ Data acquisition screen ▶ “Property”
→ p.202



NOTE

- ◆ If “ON” is selected in “i-motion auto replay” (p.202), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
- ◆ You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing while downloading (first playback only).

<Inbox/Outbox>

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

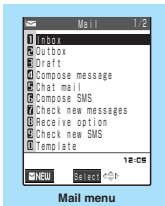
The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000* i-mode received mail and/or SMS and up to 400* sent mail and/or SMS. Both received mails and sent mails can be protected up to half of the maximum storage capacity. The number of mail messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When files sizes are large, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

* : Up to 100 mails can be stored in the Secret folders of the received mails and sent mails, respectively.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

- 1 MENU ▶ "Mail" ▶ "Inbox" ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a mail



Mail menu



Inbox folder list




Received mail list






Received mail detail

■ To view the previous or next mail

▶ Mail detail screen ▶ 

Press [CLR] to return to the Mail menu screen.

NOTE

◆ You can also place the received address for the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can then use the placed desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address (or to compose a new SMS message addressed to the phone number). However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the "" , "" or "" icon as

desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.

- ◆ You can also view the mails contained in other than the "Secret" folder even in the Secret data only mode.
- ◆ You cannot view the large size of images or play i-motion from the mails in the Secret folder.

Guide to the folder list screens











- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Inbox", "Secret", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Inbox folder list screen.
- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Outbox", "Secret" and "Chat" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Outbox folder list screen.


* : The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

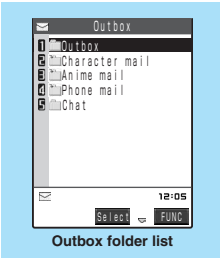


Inbox folder list






Function menu ▶ p.234

-  : Folder containing no unread mails
-  : Folder containing unread mails
-  : Folder with security (p.234) set containing no unread mails
-  : Folder with Auto-sort (p.235) set containing no unread mails
-  : Folder with security set containing unread mails
-  : Folder with Auto-sort containing unread mails
-  : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing no unread mails
-  : Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing unread mails
-  : Trash box folder
-  : Trash box folder with security set

 : Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) → p.145



Outbox folder list
Function menu → p.234

-  : Outbox folder
-  : Outbox folder with security (p.234) set
-  : Outbox folder with Auto-sort (p.235) set
-  : Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set
-  : Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) → p.145









Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list
Function menu → p.236

① Shows the mail status.











①-1 receive

-  : Unread mail
-  : Read mail
-  : Forwarded mail
-  : Replied-to mail
-  : Unread protected mail
-  : Read protected mail
-  : Forwarded protected mail
-  : Replied-to protected mail




Sent mail list
Function menu → p.237

①-2 Transmission

-  : Mail sent successfully
-  : Mail sent unsuccessfully
-  : Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
-  : Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
-  : Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully
-  : Protected mail sent successfully
-  : Protected mail sent unsuccessfully
-  : Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
-  : Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
-  : Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

② Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message

 etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons → p.223

③ Shows the time and date of transmission




③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

④ Shows the sender/recipient or subject of a mail. You can switch the display mode by address or phone number, by name or by subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

⑤ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2 lines>

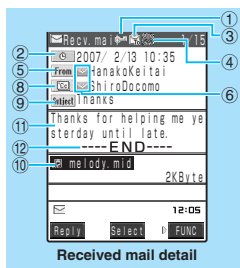
-  : SMS
-  : SMS with SMS report received
-  : SMS on the FOMA card

- : Attached melody
 - : Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.
 - : All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.
 - : Attached images
 - : Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.
 - : All the attached images were invalid or deleted (too much pasted images to be displayed in the mail detail screen).
 - : Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.
 - : Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.
 - : Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.
 - : Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.
 - : Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.
 - : An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.
 - : Before downloading a large image pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.
 - : Multiple data pasted
 - : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.
- <1 line/1line+body>
- : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.
 - : Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.
 - : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.
 - : One or more files attached, including one or more large files
 - : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.
 - : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.
 - : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

NOTE

- ◆When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display every time you press

Guide to the mail detail screens



Function menu → p.239

- ① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on p.229.)
- ② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).
- ③ Shows the sending type of received mail.



: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

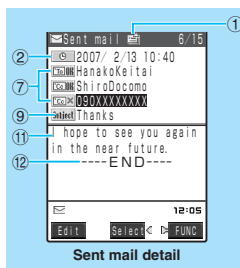


: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient in broadcast sent as a copy from the sender.



: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

- ④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons → p.223



Function menu → p.240

- ⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.


From :

Sender's mail address

Fm :


E-mail address to which replies


cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 single-byte characters, etc.)


⑥ : If the addresses and phone numbers of the sender and broadcast are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.


⑦ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.


Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.


: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.


: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent for broadcasting as a copy.


: Recipient to which mail failed to sent for broadcasting as a copy.


: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.


: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.




⑧ Received mail with multiple addresses (not including the recipient itself). Up to 4 addresses can be shown.

: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.




: An e-mail address to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.


The "", "" or "" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.


If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑦ and ⑧.


To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook. → p.93


⑨ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, "" is displayed ("" if the SMS is in the FOMA card (UIM)) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the "" icon is also displayed.


⑩ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).


: Pasted melody (if the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.)


: Multiple data pasted


: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

: i-motion attached to sent mail is subject to Original lock

: An attached image was deleted.

: Large image was deleted after downloading (also displayed when data was edited or overwritten after downloading).

: Attached large images are subject to Original lock

: An attached melody was deleted.

Attached file icons → p.229

⑪ Shows the mail message.

⑫ Shows the end of the message body.

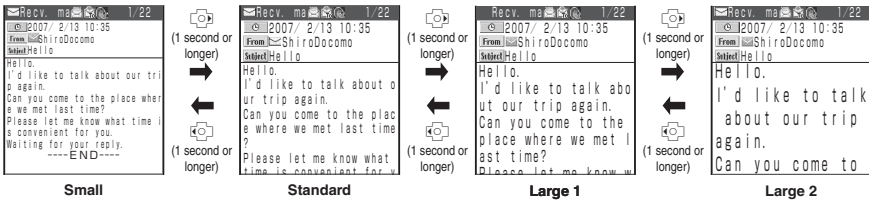
On the following situations, the e-mail address and not the "Name" is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When "Restrict dialing" (p.154) is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
- When details are displayed in Secret data only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret data only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

● Changing the mail character

On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body.

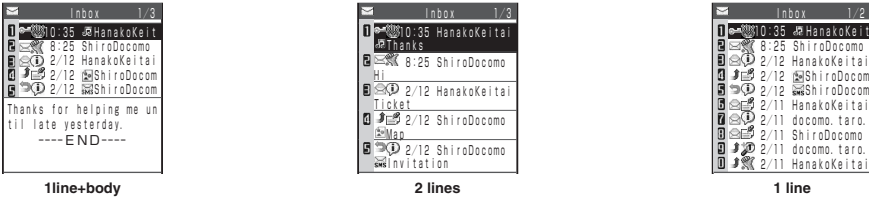


NOTE

◆ When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in “Font size” (p.242) also changes.

● Changing the mail list screen display mode (1line+body/1 line/2 lines)

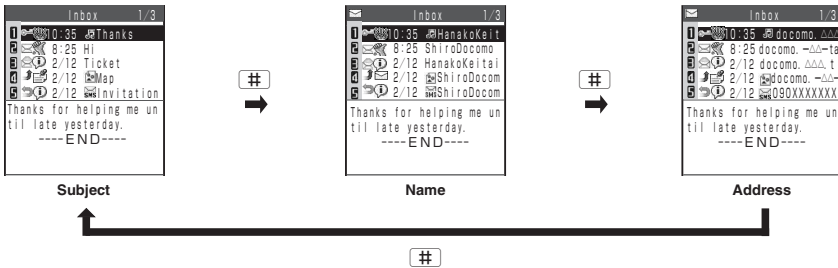
You can switch to any one of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the “Mail list disp.” setting in “Mail settings” in the Mail menu → p.242



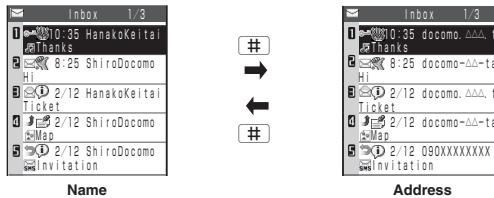
● Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

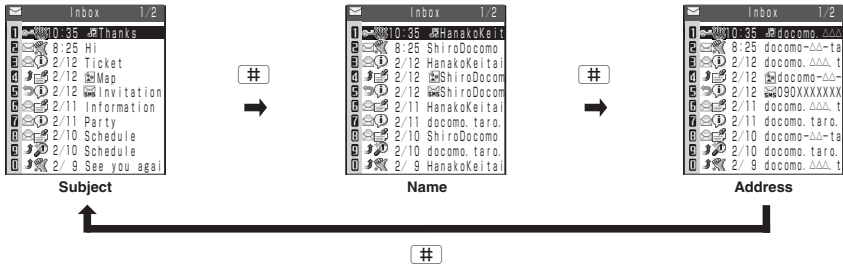
- Mail list screen (1line+body)



- Mail list screen (2 lines)



● Mail list screen (1 line)



NOTE

◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting "List setting" from the function menu in the received mail list screen, sent mail list screen or draft mail list screen and then selecting "Subject", "Name", or "Address".

● **Checking the number of received or sent mail messages**

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the function menu.

● **Backlight function**

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's backlight comes on for around 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the backlight stays on in "Mail/Msg. ring time".) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message. The backlight does not turn on if "Lighting" is set to "OFF" in "Backlight".

Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu

- You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name ▶ Set the filter conditions Adds a new folder. Sets the auto-sort settings for the added folder. "Automatic sorting settings"→p.235
Auto-sort	"Automatic sorting settings"→p.235
Edit folder name	▶ Enter a folder name You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for a folder name.
Mail security	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Sets or cancels folder security. "Setting security for individual folders"→p.153
Sort folder	▶ Select the destination Rearranges folders.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays list of the mails in the selected folder.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.130
Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected box using Infrared data exchange. However, neither mails in the Secret folder nor SMS on FOMA card (UIM) are sent. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.280
Delete folder	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"
Delete read*	Deletes all the read mails.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all mails.

* : Only displayed in the Inbox folder screen.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

- You cannot edit the folder name for the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>

- You cannot set the mail security to the "Secret" folder.

<Delete folder>

- You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

- You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

<Sort folder>

- You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.
- You cannot run "Sort folder" when only one folder was added.

<No. of messages>

- Mail messages stored in the Secret folder are not included.

<Delete read>

- This option does not delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all> (on the Outbox folder screen)

- This option does not delete SMS or i-mode mails that are protected.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all>

- This option deletes unread mails except for the protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

● Automatic sorting settings


You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as the e-mail addresses, phone numbers or subjects used in the received or sent mails.

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- When Original lock is in setting to the phonebook, the group name is displayed as "Group". When Original lock is in setting to the mail member on the contrary, the mail member name is displayed as "Mail member".
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below. Chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
 - ① Subject sort
 - ② Reply/Send impossible
 - ③ Address/Number sort
 - ④ Mail member
 - ⑤ Phonebook group
- If you use Look-up group to store a mail address registered as secret data in a folder and receive a mail from the mail address, the mail is sorted into "Inbox" folder when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is not set. When Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set, the mail is sorted into the folder set in Auto-sort. If you register a folder using Look-up address and receive a mail from the destination stored as secret data, a mail is sorted to the folder set in Auto-set regardless of setting in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remains in their original folders.



1 Select the destination folder for sort

2 Inbox folder list screen (p.228) or Outbox folder list screen (p.229)

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto-sort"

If even one message is set for sorting, additionally Press  (FUNC).

3 Set Auto-sort from the following item

Address sort	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• Look-up address	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by browsing the phonebook and records.
• Phonebook	Sets the e-mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
• Received address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• Sent address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number from the sent address list.
• Look-up group	▶ Select a group Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• Look-up member	▶ Select a mail member Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• Enter address	Sets an e-mail address or phone number directly entering each character.
Subject sort	▶ Enter a subject Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets an e-mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified e-mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from "Name" or "Address" about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Releases the auto-sort conditions.
• Release this	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• Release selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>)▶  (Finish)▶ "YES" Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• Release all	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

* : If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders in automatic sorting.
- ◆ If even a single address on the broadcasted mail fits the auto-sort condition, the message is sorted to the folder set in "Address sort" or "Send impossible". Sort condition is looked up to in order of entries for address.
- ◆ For the folder with mail security (p.234) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting "Auto-sort" from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- ◆ You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- ◆ Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. If the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- ◆ If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- ◆ Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- ◆ You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- ◆ "Reply impossible" can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

<Send impossible>

- ◆ "Send impossible" can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can also switch between the "Name" and "Address" by pressing **[#]** in the Auto-sort settings screen.

Function menu (received mail list screen)

- The available functions vary between the received mail list screen and unread mail list screen, which means that the functions to be listed are different.

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message" → p.225
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use [F2] to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ [F3] (Finish) ▶ "YES" Moves the selected mail to another folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Search sender 	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phonebook 	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Received address 	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sent address 	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter address 	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Search subject 	▶ Enter a subject

Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unread 	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read 	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Protected 	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image 	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or inserted images, or with pasted downloading information for large images.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Melody 	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or pasted melodies.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMS 	Displays only SMS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • keyword 	▶ Select a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Keyword notice" → p.244
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emotion 	▶ Select a "Disp emotion" icon Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp emotion" icon added.
Color coding	Selects the color to the received mail (date, address/name and subject) from "Default" (Black), "Red" and "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange" → p.280
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → p.252
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	"Saving the message at the Data Security Center" → p.239

Move trash box	▶ Use to select a checkbox (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves the selected mail to the trash box folder.
Delete this ^{*1}	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes received mail.
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (Finish) ▶ “YES”
• Delete read	Deletes read mails.
• Delete all SMS-R	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all SMS reports.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the received mails.
Keep in secret ^{*2}	“Hiding Various Data” → p.145

*1 : The option only appears on the unread mail list screen.

*2 : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. → p.145

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- ◆ You can also search the results of a search.
- ◆ Filter and Sort can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆ You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort/Filter>

- ◆ Sort and Filter can be used together.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you end the received mail list screen.

<Color coding>

- ◆ You can switch colors by pressing in the received mail list screen as well.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can switch to the “Subject”, “Name” or “Address” by pressing in the received mail list screen as well.

<Read all>

- ◆ If you view mail with Filter and then select “Read all”, only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS)(p.228), precedence is given to deleting mail in the “Trash box” folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the “Trash box” folder, read received mail with unprotected is deleted starting with the oldest message. However, i-mode mails and SMS in the “Secret” folder are not deleted.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ Mails in the “Trash box” folder cannot be protected.

<Unprotect all>

- ◆ If you view mail with the Filter function and then select “Unprotect all”, protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Move trash box>

- ◆ This option moves mail to be deleted to the “Trash box” folder. Mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.
- ◆ If you move unread mail to the “Trash box” folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>

- ◆ You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).
- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to select protected i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).

<Delete read>

- ◆ If you select “Delete read” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>




- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>

- ◆ You can delete unread i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

Function menu (sent mail list screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶ (Send) Re-edits the message.
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use to select a checkbox (Finish) ▶ “YES” Moves the selected mail to another folder.

Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Search receiver 	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phonebook 	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sent address 	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Received address 	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter address 	Specifies an e-mail address by entering each character.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Search subject 	▶ Enter a subject
Display all	Reverts a display resulted from search, sort or filter to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only mails that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color to the sent mail (date, address/name and subject) from "Default"(Black), "Red" and "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → p.252
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	"Saving the message at the Data Security Center" → p.239
Delete	Deletes sent mail.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this 	Deletes the highlighted mail.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete selected 	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple mails.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete all 	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.145

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.145

NOTE

<Move>

- ◆ You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.


<Search mail>

- ◆ You can also search the results of a search.
- ◆ Filter or Sort can be used together.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- ◆ You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.


<Sort/Filter>

- ◆ The Sort display and Filter function can be used together.
- ◆ Sort and Filter are released when you end the sent mail list screen.
- ◆ To return to the original display, select "Display all".

<Color coding>

- ◆ You can switch colors by pressing  in the sent mail list screen as well.

<List setting>

- ◆ You can switch to the "Subject", "Name" or "Address" by pressing  in the received mail list screen as well.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- ◆ Once you reach the maximum number of the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode and SMS) (p.228), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message. i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆ SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆ If you select "Delete all" after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

● Saving the message at the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

You can keep i-mode mail or SMS at the DoCoMo's Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to perform "Data sec. Service" for subscribing.
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service → p.109, 158


1 Received mail list screen (p.229)/ Sent mail list screen (p.229)/Draft mail list screen (p.220)▶

 (FUNC) ▶ "Store at DSC"

2 Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 messages can be selected.

- To save a message with an attached file or inserted image that cannot be stored at the Data Security Center

▶ Use  to select a checkbox ()▶

 (Finish)▶ "OK"

The attached file or inserted image is deleted before the message is saved.

3 Enter your security code▶ "YES"

A FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails at the center.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot save an SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ A large image, movie or i-motion attached to an i-mode message is deleted when the mail is saved.
- ◆ If an image that is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal is attached to or inserted into a received mail, the image is deleted when the mail is saved.
- ◆ The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen, Outbox screen or Draft screen cannot be saved.

■ Restore mail

Message put in the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Function menu (received mail detail screen)

Reply	"Replying by composing a new message"→p.225
Reply with quote	"Replying by quoting the received message"→p.225
Forward	"Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients"→p.226
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶ Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text"→p.334
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→p.226
Add to phonebook	
Save data	Saves a melody, image that is attached to or pasted into mail. "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail"→p.227 "Saving Images in Image Mail"→p.227
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES"▶ ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES"▶ ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.130
Save template	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template"→p.217
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries"→p.300
Property	▶ Select an image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
Dialing	When the sender's mail address and phone number is registered in the phonebook, set the call type selecting from among "Dial", "V.phone" or "Select image", then dial.
Chat	Starts chat mail. →p.245
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time"→p.280
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.252

Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the received mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.145

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.145

NOTE



<Move>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret" folder.
- ◆ You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<URL>

- ◆ Select  or  on the received mail detail screen, then "URL" from the function menu, and you can check the destination URL for the images. You can enter URLs up to 150 single-byte characters long including "http://".


<Delete att. file/Delete all att. files>

- ◆ You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>

- ◆ You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶  (Send) Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶ Select a folder Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. "Copying (or cutting) text" → p.334

Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → p.226
Add to phonebook	
Save data	Saves a melody, image that is attached to mail "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail" → p.227 "Saving Images in Image Mail" → p.227
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes an address (recipient) as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Save template	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template" → p.217
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → p.300
Property	▶ Select an image Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS. → p.250
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → p.252
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small", "Large 1" or "Large 2".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments. Note that data saved in the data box is not deleted.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.145

* : The option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.145

NOTE

<Resend>

- ◆ Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- ◆ When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

- ◆ If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.
- ◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu even if "SMS" appears on the SMS list or detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

- ◆ When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Sent address list/Received address list>

Using mail records



When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

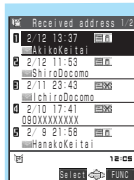
- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the received address list screen>

- 1 MENU ▶ "Own data" ▶ "Received calls" ▶ "All calls" ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Received address"



The "Received address" screen appears. You can also display the "Received address" screen by pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Pressing  also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list
Function menu ▶ p.241

■ To display the sent address

- 1 MENU ▶ "Own data" ▶ "Dialed calls" ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Sent address"

You can also display the Sent address list by pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Pressing  also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

2 Select a sender





"Received address detail screen" appears.





3 Check the details

NOTE

- ◆ The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode mail transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode mail transmission failed.
- : SMS transmission succeeded.
- : SMS transmission failed.

- ◆ The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail.
- : Received SMS.

- ◆ Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleted sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

Function menu (Sent address/Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menu in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → p.226
Look-up phonebook	Displays the detail screen of the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Compose message¹	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address pasted to the address field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
Dialing	Uses the Phone To or AV Phone To function to make a voice, videophone call to the phone number on the phonebook which the e-mail addresses are stored. → p.192
Received calls²	Switches to the received calls screen (or Dialed calls screen) (list). → p.53, 62

Delete	Deletes e-mail addresses.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this 	Deletes the highlighted e-mail address.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete selected 	▶ Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes the selected sent or received address.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete all 	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list.

- *1 : If an SMS is selected, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted to address. “When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)” → p.249
- *2 : “Redial” is for the sent address list screen from redials and “Dialed calls” is for the sent address list screen from dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>
 ♦ The displayed received calls screen is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

<Mail settings>
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

- 1** MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Mail settings”
The “Mail settings” screen appears.
- 2** Select any item





Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of “1 line”, “3 lines” and “5lines” to specify the number of lines scrolled when using on the mail detail screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects the size of displayed characters on the mail detail screen from “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2”.
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	<p>Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. You can select either of “2 lines”, “1 line” or “1line+body”.</p> <p>■ To switch the mail list display ▶ Select the display mode Switches to “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.</p>
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard (default) 	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From message 	Displays the message from the message body onwards.

Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.
Header/Signature	“Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks” → p.243
Mail security	“Setting security for individual mailboxes” → p.153
Receiving display	Sets whether to give display priority to receiving and reception results screens if a mail, MessageR or MessageF is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alarm preferred (default) 	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Operation preferred 	Gives priority to the screen being used rather than showing the receiving and reception results screens.
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON 	Does not automatically receive mail.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OFF (default) 	Receives mail automatically.
Attached file (default: Valid all)	▶ to select a Checkbox(□) ▶ (Finish) Sets whether to receive the melody and the image attached to the mail.
Chat	“Specifying the chat mail settings” → p.248
Emotion/Keyword notice	“Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail” → p.244
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMS report request (default: OFF) 	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMS validity period (default: 3 days) 	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”. Set “None” not to store SMS at the SMS Center.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMS input character (default: Japanese (70char.)) 	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in “Mail settings”.
Reset	Resets the settings specified in “Mail settings” to the default. → p.244

NOTE**<Scroll>**

- ◆ The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

- ◆ You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing  or  for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail detail screen or Read out mail screen by selecting "Font size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- ◆ When you switch to a screen other than the mail detail screen, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the mail detail screen, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.
- ◆ You can also change the font size referring to the "Character size" in "Changing the Font" column. → p.128

<Message display>

- ◆ If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (date and time received/sent) may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Start attachment (auto)>

- ◆ Even when you select "ON" in this option, you may be unable to play melodies sent from devices other than a FOMA N601i correctly.

<Receiving display>

- ◆ When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

<Receive option setting>

- ◆ This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS, MessageR and MessageF are automatically received regardless of this settings.

<Attached file>

- ◆ The files of the types unchecked by this function will be deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.
- ◆ Even if you uncheck "Image valid", the image inserted into the text of the Deco-mail will be received.
- ◆ The melody may not be played correctly if you receive it through other than FOMA N601i terminals.

<SMS report request>

- ◆ You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks

Default setting

Header/Signature (Not stored):
Insert
Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.242) ▶ "Header/Signature"

2 "Edit header" or "Edit signature"



- To edit the quotation symbol
▶ "Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter your header and signature



(Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte (10,000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for quotation marks.

- To enter a quotation mark
▶ Enter a quotation mark
- To decorate header or signature
You can decorate header or signature.
"Composing a Deco-mail message" → p.214

4 "Insert setting" ▶ Select the checkbox for the header or signature ▶ (Finish)

- To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically
▶ Deselect the checkbox for the header or signature

NOTE

- ◆ Even if you check the "Insert setting" checkbox, it will not be pasted when composing an i-mode mail from template or chat screen.
- ◆ You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.
- ◆ When pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it is Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new messages>


messages>

Default setting
Check new messages

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new messages". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox () denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 **MENU** ▶ **"Settings"** ▶ **"Connection setting"** ▶ **"Set check new messages"**

2 Use  to select a checkbox () **(Finish)**

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword notice>

Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF
-----------------	---------------------------------------

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- "Emotion-expressing mail" → p.223

1 **Mail settings screen (p.242)** ▶ **"Emotion/Keyword notice"**

The "Emotion/Keyword notice" screen appears.

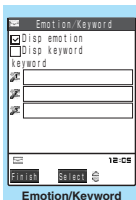
■ To use "Disp emotion"

- ▶ Select the checkbox () of "Disp emotion". The checkbox is checked () and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ To use "Disp keyword"

- ▶ Select the checkbox () of "Disp keyword" ▶ Enter one keyword or more. The checkbox is checked () and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "keyword", the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2  **(Finish)**



Function menu ▶ p.244

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

- ◆ Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

Resetting your mail function settings <Reset>

1 **Mail settings screen (p.242)** ▶ **"Reset"** ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **"YES"**

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

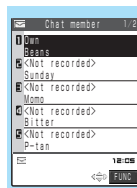
- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
 - When "ON" is selected in "Receive option"
 - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 **MENU** ▶ **"Mail"** ▶ **"Chat mail"** ▶ **(FUNC)** ▶ **"Chat member"**

The "Chat member" screen appears. For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Refer address" in the Chat member function menu list.



Function menu ▶ p.245

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	<p>■ If no address is stored ▶ Select any item</p> <p>■ When the address is recorded ▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item</p> <p>Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or history.</p>
• Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	“Changing chat session members” → p.245
Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

- ◆ If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-pitch characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

- ◆ If you change an e-mail address of the registered chat member by searching it in the phonebook, the name of a person and an image file (if an image is registered) on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen.

<Display setting>

- ◆ If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

<Delete/Delete all>

- ◆ You cannot delete yourself.

Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (p.244)▶

- (FUNC)▶ “Change member”
▶ **Select any item**

Chat group	Selects the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• Group list	▶ Select “Chat group”
• Member list	▶ Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish)
Mail member	▶ Select a mail member

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive chat mail from a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select “Quit” without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the next chat mail, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail message.

1 MENU▶ “Mail”▶

“Chat mail”

The “Chat” screen appears.

2 Enter your message▶

(Send)

You can send up to 250 double-byte characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session



▶ Chat function menu▶ “Quit”



NOTE

- ◆ Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- ◆ Sent and received chat mail is stored in the "Chat" folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the "Chat" folder.
- ◆ The subject used for chat mail you send is "チャットメール" (single-byte characters).
- ◆ Chat mail displayed in the chat screen is marked as read in the "Chat" folder.
- ◆ If you receive i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.
- ◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)
Chat member	"Selecting chat session members" → p.244
Broadcast address	"Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail" → p.246
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.
Quit	Selects whether to delete a chat mail message, and then quits the chat mail.
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.

NOTE

<Delete read>




- ◆ This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

<Quit>

- ◆ The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.
- ◆ To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
- ◆ If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively.
- ◆ Chat mails failed to send are stored in the "Chat" folder under the Outbox list.
- ◆ If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, the chat mail appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order at the start of next session.
- ◆ When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mails. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

- You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting to the chat mail.


- 1 Chat screen (p.245)▶  (FUNC)▶ "Broadcast address"▶ "YES"▶ Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)



- When all the addresses are for chat session members

▶ "Broadcast address"▶ "OK"

Receiving chat mail

<Chat mail recv.>

If you receive a chat mail while chat is not running, the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 double-byte characters (or 500 single-byte characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat screen.
- If you launch chat by selecting  or by selecting "Chat" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, the chat session members and recipients change as follows:
 - When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a chat session are again set. However, if you launched chat from the received mail detail screen, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you select  and the sender's e-mail address is not specified as a recipient, it is added to the list of recipients in accordance with the "Select receiver" setting.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member but is registered in a chat group, all the members of the chat group to which the sender belongs are set as chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member and is not registered in a chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a chat session member.

1 On the standby screen



- When the sender is not registered as a chat session member

▶ “YES”

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat members and launch a chat mail. Select “YES” to change the current chat members and launch a chat mail.

- To remain the currently specified chat members

▶ “NO”

The current chat session member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.



Standby

2 Start chat mail

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

- ◆ The FOMA terminal recognizes the mails as a Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:
 - The subject line includes “チャットメール” (all single-byte or all double-byte characters)
 - The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a chat member or chat group
 - When it is not Deco-mail
 - When it is not SMS
- ◆ You cannot use Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function on the chat screen. You can use those functions in the mail screen that you opened from Inbox.

Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group

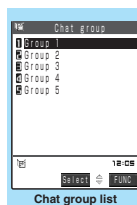
Registering proposed chat session members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot register the same chat session member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you register a chat session member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶

“Chat group”

The “Chat group” screen appears.



Chat group list
Function menu▶p.247

2 Select a chat group

The “group member list” screen appears.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press

(Edit) ▶ Enter the e-mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 2 and 3.

- To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook

▶ “<Not stored>” ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ Select the search method ▶ Select a mail address you want to enter

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98



Group member list
Function menu▶p.248

NOTE

- ◆ If your i-mode address is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” for registration to Chat member, enter only phone number. If your address is an e-mail address, you can use either letters preceded before @ (at mark) or the entire address including “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- ◆ The first 8 characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The registered image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	▶ Edit a group name Edits a group name. You can enter the title up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (group member list screen)

Edit	▶ Enter the e-mail address Edits the e-mail address. Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered.
Refer address	■ When no addresses are recorded ▶ Select any item ■ When the address is recorded ▶ “YES” ▶ Select any item Enters the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history.
• Phonebook	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
• Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
• Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	■ If no member is registered ▶ “Mail member” ▶ Select a mail member ■ If a member is registered ▶ “Mail member” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a mail member
Member setting	“Setting member details” → p.248
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the members in the selected group.

● Setting member details

1 Group member list screen (p.248) ▶

☰ (FUNC) ▶ **“Member setting”** ▶

☰ (FUNC) ▶ **Select any item**

Edit member name	▶ Enter a name Edits a member name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
-------------------------	--

Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.

NOTE

<Edit member name>

- ◆ If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

<Set image>

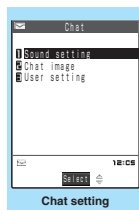
- ◆ You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

1 Mail settings screen (p.242) ▶ **“Chat”**

The “Chat setting” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• Pre-installed	Select the chat sound from “Alarm 1” to “Alarm 3”.
• Voice announce	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in “Voice announce”.
• OFF	No notification tone sounds.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.
User setting	“Setting user details” → p.249

NOTE

<Sound setting>

- ◆ The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat group member

● Setting user details

1 Chat setting screen (p.248) ▶ “User setting” ▶ Select any item

Name	▶ Enter a user name Enters a user name. Name can consist of up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters.
Image	Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
• Inbox	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• Camera	Selects an image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• Pre-installed	Selects an image pre-installed on the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.

NOTE

<Name>

◆ If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

◆ You cannot change the background color.

<Compose SMS/Send>

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 [MENU] ▶ “Mail” ▶

“Compose SMS”

The “New SMS” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.250

2 “ [To] ” ▶ Select the address entry method

You can only enter 1 SMS recipient.

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98
------------------	---

Sent address ¹	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address ²	Enters the phone number from the received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1 : “Sent address list” can be displayed by pressing [OK] on the “New SMS” screen as well.

*2 : “Received address list” can be displayed by pressing [OK] on the “New SMS” screen as well.

■ If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

▶ Enter + (hold down the [0] key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party’s mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of “010” - “Country code” - “the other party’s mobile phone number” (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter “010” to send overseas).

■ To change the entered recipient

▶ Enter an address ▶ Select the address entry method

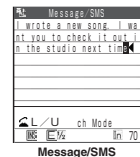
If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks “X” or hash symbols “#”
- When it includes “+” as second or later character
- When it includes a space

3 “ [SMS] ”

The “SMS message” screen appears.



4 Enter message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the message entry screen are as specified in the “SMS input character” settings (p.250). If “Japanese” input is selected, you can enter up to 70 double-byte or single-byte characters in all. If “English” input is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the “Enter address” function menu (p.332) while entering a message.


5 [OK] (Send)


An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.

Editing sent and unsent SMS → p.240

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (p.250), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report (), select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by “ SMS report” in the subject line.

NOTE

- ◆ If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: sent mails in protected, or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders.
- ◆ Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- ◆ Even when “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”, your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- ◆ If additional number of the multi number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
- ◆ You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in double-byte alphanumeric input mode.
- ◆ Some characters cannot be properly displayed at the received side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the sending side.

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Send SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.
Save	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in Draft. You can save up to 20 mails in total for SMS and i-mode mails. SMS saved by this function can be sent later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Sets how long an SMS is stored at the SMS center when the SMS cannot be received. Select “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”.

SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the SMS body character input method. Up to 70 of all double-byte and/or single-byte characters can be entered for Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered for English.
Erase message	Only the message body is deleted.
Delete	The SMS being edited is deleted.

NOTE


- ◆ If you set “SMS input char.”, “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid. per.” in the mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the “SMS input char.”, “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid. per.” set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.
- ◆ If “SMS valid. per.” is set to “None”, an attempt continues to be made to resend an SMS for a given time, then the SMS is deleted from the SMS center.

<Receive SMS>

When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 SMS and/or i-mode mail in all.

- 1** When you receive an SMS, the “ (white)” icon flashes and the “Mail Receiving...” message appears




After receiving is completed, the number of messages appears for the received SMS or i-mode, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.

When “Mail” is selected, the received mail list screen appears.

No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The display time for the receive result screen depends on the “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting.

The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of “Mail” under “Ring volume”.

NOTE

- ◆ If the total number of received i-mode mail messages (both i-mode and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep.
→ p.236, 239
- ◆ If the “ (red)” icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or SMS. To receive a new mail or message, delete the unnecessary i-mode or SMS, or read the unread i-mode or SMS until those icons no longer appear. The mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.
- ◆ When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and/or SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- ◆ If you receive short mail sent from the phone such as a mova terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- ◆ If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority sequence for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>


- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS.
 - ① “Discern connect” specified for each phone number
→ p.105
 - ② “Discern group” specified for each group → p.105
 - ③ “Select ring tone”/“Style mode” → p.112, 134, “Illumination” → p.127

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- For received SMS reports, “SMS report” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- Select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body is displayed.


1 On the standby screen



Selecting the “ (white)” icon displays the unread mail list. The function menu of the unread mail list screen is the same as that of the received mail list screen (p.236).



NOTE




- ◆ If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- ◆ The phone number of the sender of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Pressing  in highlighted condition makes a voice, videophone call to the displayed number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored “Name” is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.

Replying and forwarding to received SMS (Short Message)

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject. “Replying by composing a new message” → p.225

NOTE


- ◆ You cannot reply to an SMS by quoting the received message.
- ◆ You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support Caller ID Notification (Not support).
- ◆ You cannot forward or reply to an SMS report.
- ◆ You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.
- ◆ If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the “” remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the “”/“” icon does not appear.

<Check SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.

1 “Mail” “Check new SMS”

“SMS Checking...” is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press .

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.

In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- ◆ Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.
- ◆ This function is not available for receiving the i-mode mails or MessageR/MessageF. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use “Check new messages”.

<SMS settings>

Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

Specifying the SMS (Short Message) center setting

Default setting
DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “SMS center selection”
▶ Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	▶ Enter the SMS center address ▶ “International” or “Unknown” Uses another provider's SMS center.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes the “User setting” data and resets the setting to “DoCoMo”.

NOTE

- ◆ If the entered SMS Center address includes “#” or “X”, you cannot select “International”.

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.




Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

- 1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight SMS ▶
i (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation” ▶
Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- ◆ Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- ◆ If there appears “”, “ (white)” or “ (red)” icons, you cannot move or copy SMS.
- ◆ You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).
- ◆ If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

- 1 MENU ▶ “Mail” ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight SMS ▶
i (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation”
▶ Select any item

Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

● Display/Edit/Organization

■ Mastering still images

Data Box		254
Displaying Still Images.....	My picture	255
Editing Images	Edit image	261

■ Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion	i-motion	263
Editing Movies	Edit movie	268

■ Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den?.....	Chara-den	271
-------------------------	------------------	-----

■ Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies.....	Melody	273
-----------------------	---------------	-----

■ Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files.....		276
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding.....	Forwarding image	277

■ Transferring data via infrared data exchange/cable connection

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ Cable Connection	Infrared data exchange/OBEX	277
Transferring one Data at a Time		280
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time		280

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone):
My picture: 360 including images you shoot
i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
Melody: 200
Chara-den: 10 including characters preinstalled at the time of purchase
Secret: Up to 100 data, up to 1,000K bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 1,000K bytes in Secret under i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion and Melody, respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, i-motion, Melody can be moved to another folder in the same item.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF ^{*1}	All images can be saved here. Images transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Camera		
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Pre-installed		Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret ^{*2}		Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.
Frame	IFM	Frames preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded will be saved.
Stamp	IFM	Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded will be saved.

i-motion

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here.
Camera		Movies or i-motion transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Pre-installed		i-motion preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
Secret ^{*2}		Stores movies or i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Movies and i-motion can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Playlist ^{*3}	—	—

Melody

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies transferred via infrared data exchange are saved to Inbox.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
Voice announce	—	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
Playlist ^{*3}	—	—

Chara-den

Folder	File format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movies.

*2 : The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/i-motion stored at the time of purchase.

*3 : Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

Important

- You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be transferred to a PC.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to use DoCoMo keitai datalink to save the data to your PC just in case.

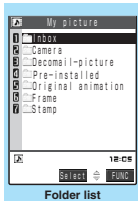
Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites appear in My picture under the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if it exceeds the size of 1,616 dots wide or 1,212 dots high, if the size exceeds 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or if the file size exceeds 600K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 690 dots cannot be displayed. Progressive JPEG image → p.191

1 MENU ▶ “Data box” ▶ “My picture”

The “folder list” screen appears.
The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in My picture → p.254



Function menu → p.276

2 Select a folder

The “image list (picture list)” screen appears.
Image list screen → p.255



Function menu → p.256

3 Select an image

The “My picture” screen appears.
Use ◀▶ to view the previous or next image.

■ Displaying an image in large size



The image is displayed in large size.
Press ◻ (Normal) to return to the normal display.

Use ⬅➡ to scroll the image if the whole image is not displayed on the screen.



Function menu → p.258

NOTE

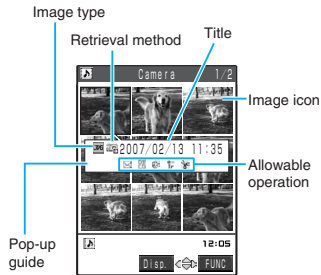
- ◆ If an image is displayed in the actual size or large size, you cannot use ◀▶ to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- ◆ Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- ◆ It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal.

- ◆ Flash movies are played at the volume set in “Phone” under the “Ring volume” settings. If “Step” is set, Flash movies are played at volume “Level 2”.

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

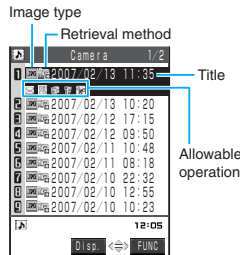
■ Picture list

Nine images stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image acquisition method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.



■ Title list

Titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image acquisition method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.



■ Image type icons

Icon	Description
	JPEG-formatted image*1
	GIF-formatted image*1
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp*1
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion*1
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects*1
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions*2
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions*2
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

- *1 : “” is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail or infrared data exchange, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.
- *2 : “” turns to “” when the playback count reaches the limit or playback period expires.

■ Acquisition method icons

Icon	Description
	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, messages
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from a PC, acquired via infrared data exchange
	Frame/Marker stamp

■ Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Movies/i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide x 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller/500 to 10,001K bytes/larger than 500K bytes) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to a message. “Clipping a movie to be attached to a message” → p.270
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange
	Can be edited

■ Titles and file names

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera are automatically titled and named.
Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
(Year/Month/Day Time)
File name: yyyyymmddhhmmxxx
_____ Date and time
(xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)
*Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the “Auto save set” is set to “OFF”, the time when the movie is saved appears.
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.

- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to “imagexxx” or “moviexxx”.

● Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations are always listed by title.

- 1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Display” ▶ “Viewer settings” ▶ Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	“Editing Images” → p.261
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. ■ To set to the standby screen ▶ Select an item ▶ Select the display setting ■ To set to screens for dialing or receiving ▶ Select an item ■ To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling) ▶ Select an item ▶ Check the image ▶ ▶ “YES”
Image info	“Image information” → p.259
Compose message	
• Attach image	“Composing a message with an image attached” → p.259
• Insert image	“Composing a Deco-mail message” → p.259
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to the phonebook. → p.93

Edit file name	<p>▶ Edit a file name</p> <p>Edits the file name of the highlighted image.</p> <p>The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (" ", "_"). Symbols other than "." or "-" cannot be used.</p>
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted 	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Move	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move this 	<p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Moves the highlighted image to another folder.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move selected 	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move all 	<p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Moves all images stored in the folder to another folder.</p>
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space. The amount of Secret is not included.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	"Making a composite image out of 4 images" → p.259
Store at DSC	"Saving images to the Data Security Center" → p.258
Delete	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this 	Deletes the highlighted image.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete selected 	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete all 	<p>▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Deletes all images from the folder.</p>
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.145

* : The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears. → p.145

NOTE

<Edit title>

- ◆ You cannot edit the titles of images preinstalled at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>

- ◆ Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the following screens:
 - Stand-by display
 - Wake-up display
 - Dialing
 - Calling
 - V.phone dialing
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail sending
 - Mail receiving
 - Checking
 - On hold

- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

- ◆ Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.
- ◆ You cannot set an image to the screens if:
 - It is larger than 690 dots wide × 690 dots high
 - The file size exceeds 100K bytes
- ◆ Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
- ◆ Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

- ◆ You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 690 dots high.
- ◆ You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the file name of the image if it is:
 - An image stored at the time of purchase
 - Not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>

- ◆ You cannot restrict an image if it is:
 - Neither JPEG nor GIF

<Delete>

- ◆ You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to default.
 - Original animation is released.
 - The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which "🔔" was set.

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation. The amount in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts images in the following order:
 - ① Images stored at the time of purchase
 - ② Images downloaded
 - ③ Images shot with the camera
 - ④ Images acquired via infrared data exchange

* : The order may differ depending on the folder to sort.

● Saving images to the Data Security Center <Data Security Service>

Save images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture and user-created folders under "My picture" to DoCoMo's Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".
- If you have not subscribed to "Data Security Service", a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. Access the site from the screen to subscribe to the service. Data Security Service → p.109, 158

1 Image list screen (p.255)▶

 (FUNC)▶ "Store at DSC"

2 Use to select images▶

 (Finish)

Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Enter your security code▶ "YES"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot save an image if the size exceeds 100K bytes, if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or it is a Decomail-picture stored at the time of purchase.

■ To retrieve images

Images stored at the Data Security Center can be retrieved to the FOMA terminal. To retrieve, connect to i-mode. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images" → p.261
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the selected image to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	"Image information" → p.259
Compose message	
• Attach image	"Composing a message with an image attached" → p.259
• Insert image	"Composing a Deco-mail message" → p.259
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280

Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 345 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to the phonebook. → p.93
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.

NOTE

<Set as display>

- ◆ An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Dialing
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- Calling
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

- ◆ You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- It is larger than 690 dots wide × 690 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes

- ◆ Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

- ◆ Some images cannot be set to screens.


<Add image to PB>

- ◆ You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 690 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 690 dots high.

- ◆ You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Delete this>

- ◆ If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which "" was set.

- ◆ Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

● Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Transfer for Repair	Whether stored data can be backed up at DoCoMo's repair center when your FOMA terminal is repaired (Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable even if the data cannot be transferred or if any loss or damage occurs to the data). "Permitted" appears for downloaded images/melodies that are allowed to be moved.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Set as display	Where the image is set When no image is set, "No set" appears.

● Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.255) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Compose message" ▶ "Attach image"

- If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high
 ▶ Select any item ▶ Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.

2 Compose an i-mode message "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail → p.211

NOTE

- ◆ Whether "Attach image" appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ JPEG image from 10,000 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. A large image sent to the FOMA terminal is resized at the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored

- Flash movie is to be attached
- The image is GIF whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes
- The image is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal

● Composing a Deco-mail message

- If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.255) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Compose message" ▶ "Insert image"

- If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message
 ▶ Select any item ▶ Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*

* : If the mail size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message Composing and sending a Deco-mail message → p.214

NOTE

- ◆ Whether "Insert image" appears depends on the image size/file size.
- ◆ You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 9,000 bytes

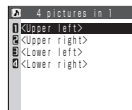
● Making a composite image out of 4 images

- An image cannot be set if the size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.


1 Image list screen (p.255) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Composite image"

2 Select a position ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select four images in total


- To cancel a specified image
 ▶ Select an image to cancel ▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



3 (Finish) ▶

- To retry creating a composite image
 ▶  (Cancel)

NOTE

- ◆ The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- ◆ Four images are synthesized without changing the aspect ratio. The original images are not resized.
- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image, which cannot appear in the actual size.

Creating animations

<Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 ▶ “Data box” ▶ “My picture” ▶

“Original animation”

The “Original animation list” screen appears.



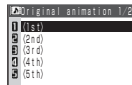
Function menu → p.260

2 “<New>”

3 Select a frame ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an image ▶ Repeat to select images


■ To cancel a specified image

- ▶ Select a frame to cancel
- ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Pressing  (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the selected image.
- ◆ Only frames with an image specified are played in order.
- ◆ You can specify a JPEG image whose size is 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller as original animation.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when “New” is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).
Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets the highlighted original animation to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. Whether no animation is set, “Not set” appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE


<Set as display>

- ◆ An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- Wake-up display
- Dialing
- Calling
- V.phone dialing
- V.phone calling
- Mail sending
- Mail receiving
- Checking

Playing an original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.260) ▶ Select an original animation

The "original animation playback" screen appears. If there are two or more original animations, use  to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback
Function menu▶p.261

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

Set as display	▶ Select an item Sets an animation being played to the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 345 dots high).
• Normal (default)	Displays an animation in the actual size.
• Fit in display	Enlarges an animation to the display size.
Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE

<Set as display>

- ◆ An animation can be set to the following screen:
 - Stand-by display
 - Dialing
 - V.phone dialing
 - Mail sending
 - Checking
 - Wake-up display
 - Calling
 - V.phone calling
 - Mail receiving

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the phone.

- The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image. → p.262	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high* ¹ Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high ¹

Method	Size of editable file
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image. → p.262	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image. → p.262	Up to 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high* ²
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image. → p.263	Up to 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high* ²
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size. → p.263	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness. → p.262	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high* ³
Rotate • Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees. → p.262	Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high* ³
Change size • Resizes an image. → p.262	
Correct backlight • Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight. → p.262	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 690 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Corrects the skin parts. → p.262	Up to 690 dots wide × 480 dots high

*1 : You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).

*2 : An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

*3 : Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images → p.256
- When "Edit image" is selected from the image checking function menu, only "Frame", "Retouch", "Refresh skin tone" and "Correct backlight" are available.


1 My picture screen (p.255) ▶

 (FUNC) ▶ "Edit image"

The Edit image function menu (p.262) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image

The "Edit image" screen appears. To edit further, press  (FUNC) to select a method.



Function menu → p.262



4 "YES" or "NO"

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image. Selecting "NO" saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

- ◆ Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
- ◆ Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	"Adding frames" → p.262
Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• Sharp	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• Blur	Softens the outline of an image.
• Sepia	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• Emboss	Impresses an image in relief.
• Negative	Makes a negative image.
• Horizontal flip	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	"Pasting marker stamps" → p.262
Character stamp	"Pasting character stamps" → p.263
Trim away	"Trimming" → p.263
Brightness	 Use  to adjust the brightness Selects the brightness among 5 levels from " - 2 to ± 0 to + 2".
Rotate*1	Rotates an image. Select "90° to right", "90° to left" or "180°".
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select "VGA(640 × 480)", "CIF(352 × 288)", "QVGA(320 × 240)", "QCIF(176 × 144)", "SubQCIF(128 × 96)", "VGA+ Vert.(480 × 690)", "VGA Vert.(480 × 640)", "Screen(240 × 345)", "Stand-by(240 × 320)", "CIF Vert.(288 × 352)", "QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)" or "SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)" *2
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message	"Composing a message with an image attached" → p.259
Save	Saves the edited image.

*1 : Rotating may change the aspect ratio.

*2 : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.


Adding frames

- You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.343).


1 My picture screen (p.255)

 (FUNC) ▶ "Edit image" ▶

"Frame" ▶ Select a frame

The image appears in the selected frame. Use  to try another frame.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**

▶  (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Cancel"


NOTE

- ◆ The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
- ◆ If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

- You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
- You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.255)

 (FUNC) ▶ "Edit image" ▶ "Marker stamp" ▶ Select a marker stamp

■ **To edit a marker stamp**

▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp

Use to position the marker stamp.

To use another marker stamp

(Add) ▶ Repeat

Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

- ◆ You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Larger stamps are regarded as GIF images.
- ◆ You can repeatedly resize a marker stamp.
- ◆ A marker stamp cannot be larger than an image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Font size: Standard size
-----------------	--

- A character stamp can contain up to 3-15 double-byte or 6-30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

1 My picture screen (p.255)

(FUNC) ▶ “Edit image” ▶

“Character stamp” ▶ Enter text

To edit a character stamp

(FUNC) ▶ Select any item

Character input	▶ Enter text Reenters text.
Character color	▶ Use to select a color Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Font	Selects “Gothic style” or “Pop style” as the font setting.
Font size	Selects “Enlargement size”, “Standard size” or “Reduction size” as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp

Use to position the character stamp.



NOTE

- ◆ The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

Trimming

1 My picture screen (p.255)

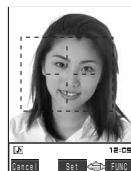
(FUNC) ▶ “Edit image” ▶ “Trim away”

Select “VGA(640 × 480)”, “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “VGA Vert.(480 × 640)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “CIF Vert.(288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)”, “SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)”, “Menu icon(64 × 63)” or “Chat(80 × 80)”.

* : Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip

Use to position the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

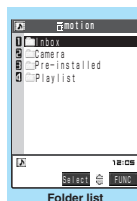
Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on the i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of QVGA (320 × 240) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal → p.201
- After you perform “Set repeat play” to start playing a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. → p.267

1 (MENU) ▶ “Data box” ▶ “i-motion”

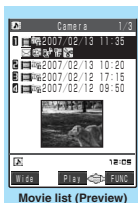
The “folder list” screen appears.
The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in the i-motion folder → p.254



Function menu ▶ p.276

2 Select a folder

The “movie list” screen (Preview) appears.
Movie list screen → p.264



Function menu → p.264

3 Select a movie

Press to play on the portrait screen, or (Wide) to play on the landscape screen.

The “i-motion” screen appears to play the movie.

Operation during playback → p.266

■ If the message “Play continue? YES/NO” appears

- Selecting “YES” plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting “NO” plays the movie from the beginning.

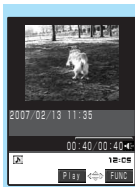


i-motion (high)



i-motion (wide)

When playback ends, the “i-motion stopped” screen appears.



Function menu → p.267

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to play a movie or i-motion with sound in manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play it. Selecting “YES” plays it with sound. Selecting “NO” plays it without any sound. If you attempt to play a voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) or if the turn of voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) comes around during continuous playback or playlist playback, the playback will be canceled or stopped.
- ◆ Video or sound in a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
- ◆ A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N601i.
- ◆ The following movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time (it may not be played from the exact point):
 - You receive a voice call, etc. during playback
 - Playback is stopped by pressing or

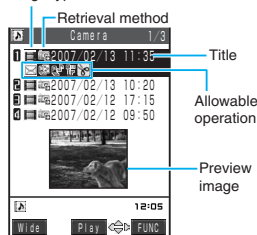
Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, acquisition methods and available settings → p.255
- Titles and file names → p.256

■ Preview

The screen shows four movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the movie. A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice).

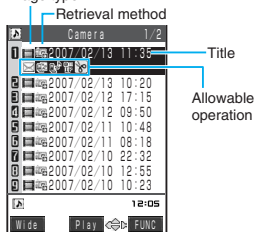
Image type



■ Title list

Titles of nine movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.

Image type



Function menu (movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion	“Editing Movies” → p.268
Edit title	<p> Edit a title</p> <p>Edits the title of the highlighted movie.</p> <p>The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.</p>
Select ring tone	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone. → p.112
Stand-by display	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen. → p.121

i-motion info	"i-motion information" → p.265
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached. → p.211
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280
Move	
• Move this	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves the highlighted movie to another folder.
• Move selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
• Move all	▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES" Moves all movies stored in the folder to another folder.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Edit file name	▶ Edit a file name Edits the file name of the highlighted movie. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("_", " "). Symbols other than "." or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted movie.
• File unrestricted	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• File restricted	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space. The amount of Secret is not included.
Sort	Sorts movies by specified criteria.
List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
• Title	Changes to the title list.
• Title+image (default)	Changes to the preview display.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted movie.
• Delete selected	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all movies from the folder.
Keep in secret*	"Hiding Various Data" → p.145

* : The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.
→ p.145

NOTE

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
 - The movie or i-motion contains no sound

- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie or i-motion contains ticker
- ◆ A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".

<Stand-by display>

- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- ◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Sort>

- ◆ "By source" sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
 - ① i-motion downloaded
 - ② Movies shot with the built-in camera
 - ③ Movies acquired via infrared data exchange

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
Saved at	"The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)"
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired
Description	The file description If there is no information, "Unknown" appears.
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"

Replay restriction	
• If there are count restrictions	Remaining play count and total play count
• If there are period restrictions	Date of play period
• If there are span restrictions	"Playable date ~ Date of play span"
• If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted"
Video	"Included"/"Not included"/ "Unplayable" for video
Audio	Audio information "AMR"/ "AAC"/"Not included"/ "Playable"/"Unplayable(MP4)/ "Enhanced aacPlus"/"HE-AAC"
Text	"Included"/"Not included"/ "Unplayable" for text
Ring tone	Whether a ring tone is "Available" or "Unavailable" The setting appears when a ring tone is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is "Available" or "Unavailable" The setting appears when a receive display is set.

Operation during i-motion playback

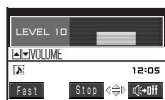
You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Operation
	Pauses/resumes playback
	Adjusts volume
	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion ^{*1} *3
	Winds forward ^{*3} *4
	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio) ^{*4}
	Skips backward ^{*2}
	Skips forward ^{*2}
	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed) ^{*3}

Control keys	Operation
	Plays slow ^{*3}
	Ends

*1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the data acquisition screen (p.201).

*2 : The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

*3 : Unavailable for a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is played during downloading.

*4 : Unavailable for landscape displaying.

NOTE

- ◆ The volume for i-motion is set to "Level 10" at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between "Level 0" and "Level 20", and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.
- ◆ The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- ◆ Seek (skip backward/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or while a movie is paused.
- ◆ Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/forward).
- ◆ Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:
 - The i-motion can be played during downloading
 - There are no seek points in the i-motion
 - The interval between seek points is too long
 - A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
- ◆ Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip backward/forward) or during frame advance.

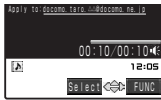
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.192) if:
 - An underlined phone number, mail address or URL appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
 - A phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text then you select "Select link" from the function menu
- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.

- Adding information to phonebook
 “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → p.93
 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” → p.94



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press [] or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press [] or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	▶▶▶ Select a point where playback is to start Starts playback from the specified point.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (p.192) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running telop text.
Edit i-motion	“Editing Movies” → p.268
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone. → p.112
Stand-by display	Sets an i-motion being played to the standby screen. → p.121
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play an i-motion continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select “ON” (play repeatedly) or “OFF”.

i-motion info	“i-motion information” → p.265
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for i-motion. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal (default) Displays an i-motion in the actual size. • Fit in display Enlarges an i-motion to the display size. • Wide Play Plays the i-motion on the landscape screen.

NOTE

<Slow>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
- ◆ You cannot play slow a i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>

- ◆ An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
- ◆ You cannot play fast a i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>

- ◆ You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion.

<Compose message>

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The i-motion is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆ If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is “Available”. Refer to the “i-motion info” to check whether it is “Available” or “Unavailable”.

<Stand-by display>


- ◆ Deleting a movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the screen set at the time of purchase.
- ◆ You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 × 240)
- ◆ Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆ You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>

- ◆ The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing i-motion.
- ◆ If Set repeat play is set to “ON”, data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- ◆ If you attempt to play i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

● Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>


Select and register up to 10 i-motion or movies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 **Folder list screen (p.263) ▶ Highlight “Playlist” and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit playlist” ▶ Select No. for the movie ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a movie ▶ Repeat to add**

■ To release an added movie

- ▶ Select a movie to release ▶ Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen ▶ “YES”




- 2  (Finish)

The i-motion folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1 Highlight “Playlist” on the i-motion “folder list” screen (p.263) and press  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item


Add folder	▶ Enter a title Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all movies/i-motion from the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders. i-motion stored in the Secret are not deleted.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order” → p.268
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

<Edit movie>

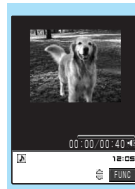
Editing Movies

- Editable movies → p.256


<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

- 1 **Movie list screen (p.264) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Edit i-motion”**

The “edit movie” screen appears.






Function menu → p.268

- 2  (FUNC) ▶ Select an editing method → p.268

NOTE

- ◆ Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.
- ◆ While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call or fold the FOMA terminal or if the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.
- ◆ The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	“Clipping a part of a movie” → p.269
Trim for image	▶  ▶ Press  when you want to clip a frame ▶  (Set) ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder Clips the selected frame as a still image.
Rerecord sound	Erases the sound so that new sound can be recorded. “Rerecording sound” → p.269
Edit ticker	“Subtitling movies” → p.269
Trim for mail	“Clipping a movie to be attached to a message” → p.270
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the edited movie.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted 	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE**<Compose message>**

- ◆ You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
 - The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
 - There are already 20 draft messages stored
 - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

● Clipping a part of a movie**1 Edit movie screen (p.268) ▶ (FUNC)**▶ **“Trim i-motion”** ▶ (Start)

Clipping starts.

■ To start clipping from your desired frame

▶ ▶ Press when you want to start clipping ▶ (Start)

2 Press when you want to finish clipping ▶ (End)

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

■ To check the clipped section again

▶ (Play)

3 ▶ ▶ “YES”**NOTE**

- ◆ The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
- ◆ A movie of larger than QCIF (176 × 144) cannot be clipped.

● Rerecording sound

Add new sound to a movie.

1 Edit movie screen (p.268) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Rerecord sound” ▶

(Start)

Recording starts.

■ To start recording from your desired point

▶ ▶ Play a movie until you want to start recording ▶ (Start)

2 Press (End) to finish recording

Movie playback continues. Press (Start) and (End) to record again.

3 Press to finish rerecording**■ To check the rerecorded movie**

▶ (Play)

4 ▶ ▶ “YES”**NOTE**

- ◆ Rerecording sound onto a movie with subtitles deletes the subtitles.

● Subtitling movies

Default setting	Character color: Black, Background color: White, Font size: Normal, Word alignment: Left, Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF
-----------------	---

Add new subtitles (text displayed during playback) to a movie or edit the existing subtitles.

- You can edit up to 5 subtitles per movie. Each subtitle can contain up to 20 double-byte characters.

1 Edit movie screen (p.268) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit ticker” ▶ “New”**2 (Start) ▶ Enter subtitles****■ To show subtitles from your desired point**

▶ ▶ Press when you want to show subtitles ▶ (Start)

3 Set subtitle effects

Select “Finish setting” when you finish setting.

Font color	▶ Use to select a color Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Background color	▶ Use to select a color Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press (Change).
Font size	Selects “Normal” or “Large” as the font size.
Word alignment	Sets the text position. Select “Left”, “Center” or “Right”. This setting may be unavailable depending on the Scroll setting.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash subtitles.
Underline	Specifies whether to underline subtitles.
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OFF Cancels scrolling. • Scroll in ▶ Select “Right to left”, “Left to right”, “Bottom to top” or “Top to bottom” as the scrolling direction • Scroll out • Scroll in&out
Finish setting	Exits the subtitle effects settings.

4 **Press** **when you want to finish subtitles** **(End)**

Repeat Steps 2 to 4 to add another subtitle.

■ If the subtitle list appears

(Finish)

Go on to Step 6.

5 **Press** **(FUNC)** **when you finish editing** **“Finish editing”**

■ To check the subtitled movie

(Play)

■ To edit subtitles

(Edit)

Editing subtitles → p.270

6 **“YES”**

NOTE

- ◆ If you edit subtitles, the edited data cannot be specified as a ring tone.
- ◆ The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- ◆ Subtitle effects unsupported by FOMA N601i may be deleted or altered.

● Editing registered subtitles

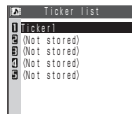
- If you attempt to edit subtitles already added to a movie, a message appears warning you that the subtitle data may be deleted.

1 **Edit movie screen (p.268)** **(FUNC)** **“Edit ticker”** **“YES”** **“Edit”**

The subtitle list screen appears.

■ To check subtitle details

Select a subtitle Check the details CLR



2 **(FUNC)** **Select any item**

Change text	Edits subtitle text.
Change effect	Changes subtitle effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the subtitle start point.
Change end point	Resets the subtitle end point.
Add ticker	“<Available>” Add a subtitle
Delete ticker	Deletes the highlighted subtitle.

3 **Press** **(Finish)** **when you finish editing**

4 **“YES”**

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot edit a subtitle when no subtitles have been added.

● Clipping a movie to be attached to a message

- A movie whose size is larger than 290K bytes, which is shot with the built-in camera, can be clipped using this function.

1 **Edit movie screen (p.268)** **(FUNC)** **“Trim for mail”** **Select any item**

Mail(L)	Clips a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail(S)	Clips a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

2 **Press** **when you want to start clipping** **(Start)**

Clipping starts.

Playback stops automatically when the size becomes the maximum that can be attached to a message.

■ To check the clipped movie

(Play)

3 **“YES”**

NOTE

- ◆ A movie with subtitles inserted cannot be clipped with the subtitles remaining.
- ◆ The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
- ◆ “Trim for mail” is unavailable for a movie of QVGA (320 × 240).

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a videophone call.

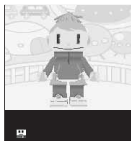
Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image: ビーンズ (Beans)
-----------------	---

- Downloading Chara-den characters → p.192
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:



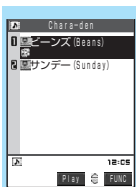
ビーンズ (Beans)



サンデー (Sunday)

1 MENU ▶ “Data box” ▶ “Chara-den”

The “Chara-den list” screen appears.
Guide to the Chara-den list → p.271



Function menu ▶ p.272

2 Select a Chara-den character

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character → p.271

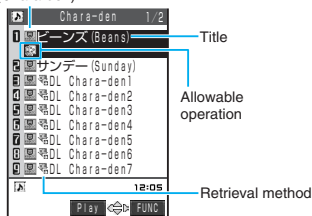


Function menu ▶ p.272

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, acquisition methods and available settings → p.255
- Titles and file names → p.256

Image type (Chara-den)



Titles of nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image (Chara-den) type, Chara-den acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the Chara-den.

Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting from preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.271) ▶ Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list



Actions shown in the list depend on the character type. No. such as “1” or “#1” appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

Action list	No.
泣き	:1
パンザイ	:2
泣き	:3
怒る	:4
驚く	:5
悩む	:6
首を傾げる	:7
寝る	:8
驚愕	:9
YES	:#1

■ To check the action details

▶ Highlight an action ▶ (Detail) ▶ Check the details ▶ (Exit)

■ To change the action mode

▶ (Parts) or (Whole)

The mode is Parts action when (Parts icon) appears and Whole action when (Whole icon) appears.

(Whole):

The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Parts):

The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback

Press the following keys to perform character actions:

“Whole”:

1-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or # (1 to # 9)

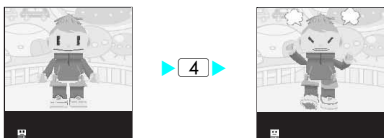
“Parts”:

2-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 1 to 9 9)

<Example: “怒る” (Angry) in Whole action mode>

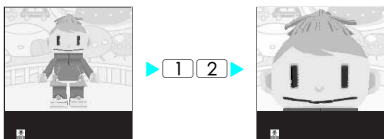
* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

▶ [] (Whole) ▶



<Example: “顔アップ” (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶ [] (Parts) ▶



■ To have a character's mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking.

If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.



Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [] or [] Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use [] to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Chara-den info	“Chara-den information” → p.273

Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal • Fit in display (default) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Displays a character in the actual size. Enlarges a character to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this • Delete selected • Delete all 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Deletes the highlighted Chara-den character. “Selecting multiple data” → p.276 ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all Chara-den characters.

NOTE

<Memory info>

◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

◆ If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as an alternative image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If “YES” is selected to delete the character, the preinstalled Chara-den “ビーンズ (Beans)” is set as an alternative image. If you have already deleted “ビーンズ (Beans)”, a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

◆ If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If “YES” is selected to delete the character, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	▶ Enter a phone number ▶ [] or [] Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use [] to search a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Switch Chara-den	▶ Select a character Switches a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode. → p.271
Chara-den info	Displays information about the displayed Chara-den character.

Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Normal • Fit in display (default) 	Displays a character in the actual size. Enlarges a character to the display size.

● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted" An unrestricted Chara-den character becomes restricted after it is downloaded.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Substitute image	Where the alternative image is set When no image is set, "No setting" appears.

<Melody>

MENU16

Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

1 MENU ▶ "Data box" ▶

"Melody"

The "folder list" screen appears.



Function menu → p.276

2 Select a folder

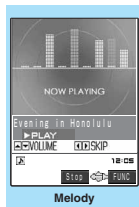
The "melody list" screen appears.
Melody list → p.273



Function menu → p.274

3 Select a melody

The "Melody" screen appears to play the melody.
Operation during playback → p.274



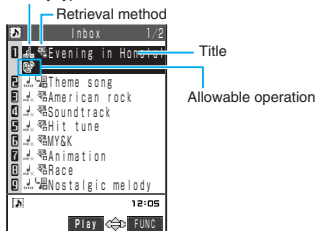
Function menu → p.275

NOTE

- ◆ Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings. They are played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

Guide to the melody list

Melody type



Titles of nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, melody acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the melody.

■ Melody type icon

	MFI/SMF ^{*1,2}
--	-------------------------

*1: "■■■■■" is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

*2: A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

■ Acquisition method icons

	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from PC, acquired via infrared data exchange

■ Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via infrared data exchange

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.

If a file name you attempt to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control keys	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
	Adjusts volume*1*2
	Stops playback
	Ends

*1 : After you adjust the volume, if you press or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.

*2 : Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, user-created folders → p.274
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announcement → p.275

■ Melody list function menu for Inbox, user-created folders

Edit title	<p>▶ Edit a title</p> <p>Edits the title of the highlighted melody.</p> <p>The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.</p>
Edit file name	<p>▶ Edit a file name</p> <p>Edits the file name of the highlighted melody.</p> <p>The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("_", "_"). Symbols other than "_" or "_" cannot be used.</p>
Play melody	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. → p.112

File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted melody.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File unrestricted 	Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File restricted 	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached. → p.211
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280
Melody info	"Melody information" → p.275
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Sort	Sorts melodies by specified criteria.
Move	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move this 	<p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Moves the highlighted melody to another folder.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move selected 	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move all 	<p>▶ Select the destination folder ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Moves all melodies stored in the folder to another folder.</p>
Delete	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete this 	Deletes the highlighted melody.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete selected 	"Selecting multiple data" → p.276
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete all 	<p>▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"</p> <p>Deletes all melodies in the folder.</p>

NOTE

<Edit file name>

- ◆ You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via infrared data exchange or OBEX.

<Compose message>

- ◆ A MFI-formatted melody cannot be attached regardless of the acquisition method or the File restriction setting.
- ◆ You cannot attach a melody whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>

- ◆ You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>

- ◆ The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

- ◆ If you attempt to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If "YES" is selected to delete the melody, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Sort>

- ◆ If you exit a sorted melody list, sort is released.
- ◆ "By source" sorts melodies in the following order.
 - Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
 - ① Melody downloaded
 - ② Melody acquired via infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce

Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
Ring tone	Sets the selected melody as a ring tone. → p.112

Function menu (Melody screen)

Ring tone	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone. → p.112
Set repeat play¹	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon²	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Compose message²	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.211
Melody info²	"Melody information" → p.275

*1 : The option does not appear for the Voice announce folder.

*2 : The option does not appear for the Pre-installed or Voice announce folder.


● Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
File classification	Melody file type "MFI" or "SMF"
Transfer for Repair	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs → p.259
Source	From where the file was acquired
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Vibrator linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON"/"OFF" of Illumination linkage
Ring tone	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, "No set" appears.

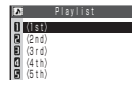
● Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>


Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

- 1 Folder list screen (p.273) ▶ Highlight "Playlist" and press  (FUNC) ▶ "Edit playlist" ▶ Select No. for the melody ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select a melody ▶ Repeat to add**

■ To release an added melody

- ▶ Select a melody to release ▶ Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen




- 2  (Finish)**

The melody folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- ◆ The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

- 1 Highlight "Playlist" on the melody "folder list" screen and press  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item**

Add folder	▶ Enter a folder name Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing melodies in your preferred order" → p.275
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all melody files stored in the Inbox, user-created, Voice announce and Playlist folders.

Working with Folders and Files

Add folders on the folder list screens of My picture, i-motion and Melody to organize the files.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (folder list screen)

- Function menu appearing when highlighting a folder under i-motion or Melody → p.268, 275

Add folder	<p>▶ Enter a folder name Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p>
Edit folder name	<p>▶ Edit a folder name Edits the name of the added folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p>
Delete folder	<p>▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” You can delete a folder containing data.</p>
Delete all*	<p>▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.</p>

* : “Delete all image” appears for My picture, and “Delete all” for i-motion and Melody.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

- You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder/Delete all image/Delete all>

- You can delete only user-created folders.
- If you attempt to use “Delete folder”, “Delete all image” and “Delete all” to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use “Delete folder” or “Delete all” to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select “YES” to delete the item, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens, ring tones or alarms restore to default.
 - Original animation or playlist is released.
 - The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which “🕒” was specified.
- Even if the original image is deleted by “Delete folder” or “Delete all image”, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

- If the original movie is deleted by “Delete folder” or “Delete all”, the same one attached to a message is also deleted.

Selecting multiple data



Delete multiple images or movies at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item.

1 Image list (Picture list) function menu, etc.

- **To delete**
 - ▶ “Delete” ▶ “Delete selected”
 - **To move**
 - ▶ “Move” ▶ “Move selected” ▶ Select the destination folder

2 Use to select an image

▶ **(Finish)** ▶ **“YES”**

If it is the Title list, use  to select a checkbox () , and press .



Function menu → p.276

Function menu (multi-selection screen)

Select all	Selects all images and movies.
Release all	Deselects all the selected images and movies.
Title name, Picture*	Switches between Picture and Title name.

* : The option appears only when the folder is “My picture”.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select "YES" on the message

- To cancel saving the data
▶ "NO"

2 Select a folder ▶ Select data to delete

Selecting multiple data → p.32, 276

3 [Envelope] (Finish) ▶ "YES"

[Envelope] (Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated to save the data.

NOTE

- ◆ When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If "YES" is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting
ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when transferring phonebook data via infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX).

1 [MENU] ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Forwarding image"

▶ "OFF"

- To transfer
▶ "ON"

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection

The infrared data exchange or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

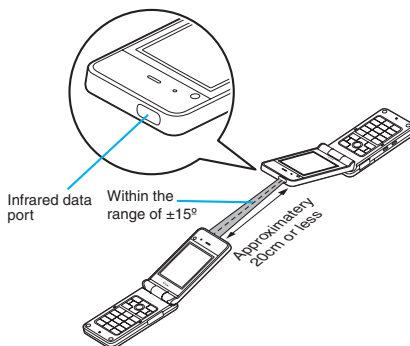
- The infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or a PC supporting the feature allows you to transfer one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. "IR" appears during infrared data exchange.
- Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from the PC via OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between the FOMA terminal and the PC. "C" appears while a cable is connected.

- You can transfer the following:

- Received mail
- Sent mail
- Draft mail
- i-mode bookmark
- Phonebook
- My Profile data
- To Do list
- Text memo
- Schedule
- Image*
- Movie (i-motion)*
- Melody*

* : You cannot send all data via infrared data exchange.

Transferring data via infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby, and keep approximately 20cm or less between the infrared data ports of the FOMA terminals.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as DoCoMo keitai datalink.
"DoCoMo keitai datalink" → p.322

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N601i communication setting file (driver). → p.321
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal's battery level and the PC's power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while Dial lock, Self mode or Omakase Lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send data with "Restrict dialing" and data in "My Profile".
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party's FOMA terminal. If you transfer with the terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via infrared data exchange or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with the terminal or a PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N601i.
- You may be unable to transfer data via infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/ videophone call/use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
 - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
 - The sending device cannot find the receiving deviceSelect "YES" to retry the communication. Select "NO" to cancel the communication. If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set "Forwarding image" to "OFF", so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder.	
Movie/ i-motion		
Melody		
Phonebook, My Profile	The lowest memory number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009".	
Schedule	In date order of received schedules.	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list.	
Received mail	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender.

Data	Destination/Order	
Sent mail	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders according to the folder tree on the sender.
Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages.	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>.	
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender.

* : The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender's model.

- Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
- Receiving the entries of the phonebook saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
- Titles of still images, movies, i-motion can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 25 double-byte characters or 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook.
- You cannot send or receive:
 - UIM phonebook, SMS
 - Data stored in the Secret folder
 - Frame/Stamp data (can be received only), Flash movie
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
 - Image other than JPEG or GIF
 - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
 - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
 - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data

- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:

- The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, mail address, ZIP code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on the phonebook, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
- The Secret code cannot be transferred.
- If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via infrared data exchange, the Secret is released before the transfer.
- When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.
- The "My Profile" data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of "My Profile" stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
- Some pictographs or symbols in a phonebook entry may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.

- Note the following when you transfer messages:

- A large image acquisition information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection.
- If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, received mails in protected or i-mode mails and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep.
- If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
- Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.
- Some pictographs or symbols in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
- You cannot transfer data inserted into an i-mode message.
- The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.

Transferring one Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent.

Sending one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

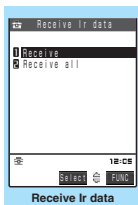
Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

- 1 **Phonebook detail screen (p.97)** ▶
[Phonebook icon] (FUNC) ▶ "Send Ir data"
- 2 **Direct the infrared data port toward the other party** ▶ "YES"
Make sure that the other party is set to standby. Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
 - To cancel the transfer
▶ "NO"
 - To exit during transfer
▶ [Exit icon] (Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data> MENU79

- 1 [MENU] ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Receive Ir data"
The "Receive Ir data" screen appears.
- 2 **"Receive"** ▶ Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ Receive data from the other FOMA terminal
Data transfer starts.
The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.
- 3 **"YES"**
A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.
 - To cancel saving received data
▶ "NO"



NOTE

- ◆ Even if you select "Receive", you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.
- ◆ Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

- 1 **Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC**
- 2 **Send data from a PC**
A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.
- 3 **"YES"**
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed. The received data will be discarded if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.
 - To cancel saving received data
▶ "NO"

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. "Session number" → p.281
- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: Send all phonebook data>

- 1 **Phonebook list screen (p.97) ▶**
[FUNC] (FUNC) ▶ "Send all Ir data"
- 2 **Enter your security code ▶ Enter the session number**
"Session number" → p.281
- 3 **Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ "YES"**
Make sure that the other party is set to standby. Data transfer starts. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
 - **To cancel the transfer**
▶ "NO"
 - **To exit during transfer**
▶ [Quit] (Quit)

Receiving all data via infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

- 1 **Receive Ir data screen (p.280) ▶**
"Receive all"
- 2 **Enter your security code ▶ Enter the session number**
"Session number" → p.281
- 3 **Direct the infrared data port toward the other party ▶ "YES"**
 - **To cancel the transfer**
▶ "NO"
- 4 **Press "YES" on the Overwrite confirmation screen**
 - **To cancel the transfer**
▶ "NO"

5 Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.

- **To exit during transfer**
▶ [Quit] (Quit)

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Transferring all data via cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: Send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

- 1 **Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal**
It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.
- 2 **Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal ▶ Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal**
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
"Session number" → p.281

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access.....	Multi access	284
Setting Alarm Mode	Alarm setting	285
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm	Alarm	287
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries	Schedule	288
Adding To Do List Items	To Do list	292
Storing Your Name and Image.....	My Profile	293
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice	Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo	295
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones	Voice announce	296
Checking Call Times and Charges	Call data	296
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm	Notice designate calls	297
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator	Calculator	298
Composing Text Memos	Text memo	299
Using Dictionaries.....	Dictionary	300
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/microphone with switch	301
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected	Auto dial setting	302
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached	Automatic answer	303
Selecting a Microphone to Be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone	Select microphone	303
Selecting Your Provider	NW search mode	303
Resetting Function Settings.....	Reset settings	304
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default.....	Initialize	305

Multi Access

Multi access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, use packet communication and SMS at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services. "Multi Access Combination Patterns" → p.352

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

By using the multi access function, a FOMA terminal can concurrently use the three communication lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE


- ◆ Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.
- ◆ Multi access is not available during a 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received simultaneously.

When you receive a call or mail during communication

● Receiving i-mode mails during a voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a voice call, the in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

1 Receiving an i-mode mail

" " flashes and lights up.

2 Checking the i-mode mail

"Reading i-mode mail messages" → p.228

3

The voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF during a voice call, the "Mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF" icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.

● Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

1


The voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

2 To end the call, press


The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

Using two types of communication simultaneously


Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- The main menu can be displayed by pressing  during a voice call or i-mode communication. "Using Menus" → p.30

● Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

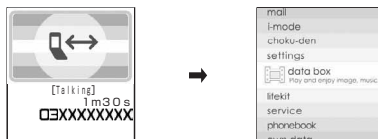
During a voice call, press  and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode. → p.180

● Sending an i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, press  and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a voice call Select the Mail menu

"Using Menus" → p.30



2 Compose an i-mode mail Send it

"Composing and sending i-mode mail" → p.211

3

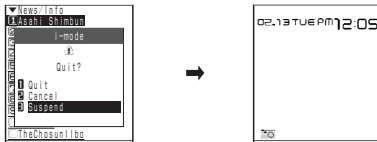
The voice in-call screen reappears.

● Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode ▶ ▶ “Suspend”

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

Making voice calls → p.46

3 To end the call, press

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the “Disconnecting” message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode Default setting Alarm preferred

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm setting for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”.

1 ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Alarm setting” ▶ “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred”

■ When Operation preferred is selected

The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

■ When Alarm preferred is selected

The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions


When you set an alarm for the “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

● When you set an alarm


When you set an alarm for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”, an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)

“” appears.

■ For alarms set for tomorrow or later

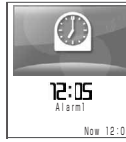
“” appears.

NOTE

- ◆ If a schedule event or To Do list item is stored with “OFF” selected, neither “” nor “” appears.

● When the specified time is reached

An alarm is given as follows for each function.





Alarm*1






Schedule*1




To Do list*1

Status	Function	
	Alarm	Schedule, To Do list
Standby screen displayed	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly at the specified times and intervals. An animation or i-motion appears on the display	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If “Auto power ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to “Auto power OFF”, the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The “  ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A voice, videophone call in progress ²	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal's earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or dialing a voice, videophone ²	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm cannot be activated on the specified time, the alarm tone sounds after the FOMA terminal gets into the state that alarm can be activated.	
i-mode or sending/receiving a mail ²	An alarm is given the same way as for “Standby screen displayed”.	
Infrared data exchange or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the “  ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → p.286	

Status	Function	
	Alarm	Schedule, To Do list
Earphone/microphone connected (Standby screen displayed)	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed". The alarm sounds when "Earphone" (p.116) is set.	
PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry screen which is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on appears. ^{*2}	An alarm is given the same way as for "Standby screen displayed". When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
Dial lock/Omakase Lock/Original lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" mode, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When Original lock is set, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. → p.286	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" mode, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When Original lock is set, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. However, when Dial lock/Omakase Lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. → p.286

*1 : The animation shown for the "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for "Alarm", "Schedule" or "To Do list", the image appears during the alarm.

*2 : This operation is performed when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → p.286

NOTE

- ◆ The alarm volume for "Schedule" and "To Do list" follows the "Phone" setting under "Ring volume".
- ◆ The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- ◆ Even if "Snooze ON" is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm during a call.
- ◆ Unless "Phone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.

◆ Even if an i-motion is set in "Alarm tone", the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when the "Alarm", "Schedule" and "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time:

- ① Alarm ② To Do list ③ Schedule


● To stop an alarm tone

■ Alarm

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message "Snooze..." appears. After the "Snooze..." message appears for about 5 minutes, the alarm is given again. If you press  while the "Snooze..." message appears, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is released.

■ Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any external key with a FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

■ If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm" snooze setting is also canceled.


NOTE

◆ Snooze is canceled when:

- A voice call, videophone call is received
- "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting" and then the alarm for Alarm, Schedule or To Do list is given

◆ If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the  (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen  

The missed alarm information for “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” appears.



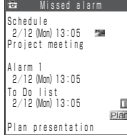
2 Check the details ▶

CLR

The standby screen reappears and the “” (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarms are set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.
- ◆ To clear the desktop icon “”, press CLR for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.



<Alarm>

MENU44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm

Default setting

All OFF

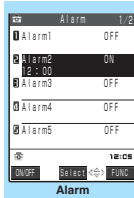
- You can store up to 10 alarm settings.

Setting the alarm

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶

“Alarm”

The “Alarm” screen appears. If you have set the alarm before, the previously specified settings appear.



Function menu ▶ p.288

2 Select an item to set ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit”

3 Set the respective parameters

Edit title	▶ Enter the title of the alarm Enters the title of the alarm. The title of up to 6 full-pitch characters or 12 half-pitch characters can be entered.
Time setting	▶ Enter a time Enters a time when the alarm will sound.
Repeat	Sets the alarm repetition.
• 1 time	Sounds the alarm only once.
• Daily ()	Sounds the alarm every day.
• Select day ()	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).

Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. “Changing the Ring Tone” → p.112
• Clock Alarm Tone	Sets the alarm tone selected at the “Clock Alarm Tone set”. → p.115
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.296
• Random melody	▶ Select a folder Automatically selects a ring tone from the selected folder to set it as an alarm tone.
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
Volume	▶ Use to adjust the volume Sets the alarm tone volume. “Adjusting the Ring Volume” → p.65
Snooze setting	Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.
• ON	▶ Enter “Ring number of times” (01 to 10 times) ▶ enter “Ring interval” (01 to 10 minutes) The alarm continues ringing the number of times set by “Ring number of times”, and for interval set by “Ring interval”. (The maximum ring time for each alarm tone is 1 minute.) Enter “Ring number of times” and “Ring interval” in 2 digits. When you enter the same number of Ring number of times or Ring interval as displayed, press .
• OFF	▶ Enter the ring time (01-10 minutes) Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press .
Auto power ON	Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ When “Auto power ON” is set to “ON” and a melody or i-motion downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the “Alarm Tone” sounds because of the FOMA card operational restriction function.
- ◆ Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal

level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

- ◆ By pressing [] on the Alarm screen, you can enable or disable the highlighted alarm. When the highlighted alarm is "OFF", it will become "ON", and when it is "OFF", it will become "ON".

Function menu (Alarm screen)

Edit	Edits the alarm settings.
Finish(Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm settings.

<Schedule>

MENU45

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms → p.285

1 MENU ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "Schedule"

The "Schedule" screen appears.



Function menu → p.288

Function menu (Schedule screen)


New	"Adding schedule events" → p.289 "Adding holidays and anniversaries" → p.289
Weekly display, Monthly display	"Changing the schedule display mode" → p.289
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon" → p.290
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.292).
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode", entries stored as secret events also appear.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.280
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.
Delete	
• Delete selected	▶ Use [] to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ [] (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ "YES" Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• Delete past*	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

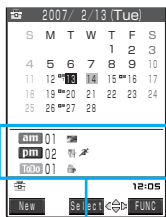
*: Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

● Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: “Monthly display” and “Weekly display”. Use  to select a date. You can check the number and icons of scheduled and To Do list events stored for the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

Blue date: Saturday

Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday

Pink date: Anniversary

○ : Today

□ : There is an event scheduled for the morning.

■ : There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.

T : There is a To Do list item.

Public holidays are based on “国民の祝日に関する法律（昭和23年法律第178号までのもの）およびその法改正（平成17年法律第43号までのもの）” (Public Holiday Law (Up to 1948 No. 178) and its amended version (Up to 2005 No. 43)). The official dates of vernal and autumnal equinoxes are gazetted on February 1 the previous year, and they may differ from ones preset on the FOMA terminal. (As of November, 2006)


Adding holidays and anniversaries




<Example: Storing a holiday>

1  ►►► “LifeKit” ►►► “Schedule” ►►►  (New) ►►► “Holiday”

■ To store an anniversary
►►► “Anniversary”

2 Set the respective parameters

 Date setting	► Enter the date Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
--	--

 Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
• 1 time	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
• Annually ()	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.
 Contents	► Enter a message Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.


3  (Finish)

NOTE




◆ If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.











Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

1 Schedule screen (p.288) ►  (New)
►►► “Schedule”

2 Set the respective parameters

 Contents	► Enter a message ► Select an icon Enters the scheduled event details. Contents can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the contents appear on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and contents are entered, the summary appears first and the contents next.
 Date (from)*	► Enter “Start Year”, “Start Date” and “Start Time” Enters the starting date and time for the schedule event.
 Date (to)*	► Enter “End Year”, “End Date” and “End Time” Enters the finishing date and time for the schedule event.

 Repeat	Sets the repetition of the schedule event.
• 1 time	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
• Daily ()	Sets the event to repeat every day.
• Select day ()	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
 Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the starting date and time is reached.
• ON	An alarm is given at the starting date and time.
• ON/Set time	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the starting date and time the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press  .
• OFF	No alarm is given when the starting time is reached.
 Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112
• Clock Alarm Tone	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set". → p.115
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
 Summary	▶ Enter a message Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.

* : Selecting this option shows the "Date setting" screen on which you can set both (from) and (to) of Date setting.

3 (Finish)



NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.
- ◆ If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.
- ◆ Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- ◆ If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.
- ◆ If you store a schedule event during a voice call and 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.
- ◆ When you did not enter anything in "Summary" and "Contents", it will be registered as "No Data" in "Contents".

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as "" to "" on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.288)▶

 (FUNC)▶ "User icon settg."▶

"<Not recorded>"

■ **To change a user icon already set**

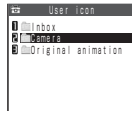
- ▶ Choose an item you want to change



- To cancel all the user icon settings
▶ “Release all” ▶ “YES”
This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders. Selecting images → p.255



- To cancel an icon set for schedule events
▶ “Release this” ▶ “YES”

- To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events
▶ “Release this”

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is previewed. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

- To preview
▶ Select an image to preview ▶ (Play)

NOTE

- ◆ If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when “” is set.

Checking schedule details

Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.288) ▶ Select the date for which the scheduled event to check is stored

The “Schedule list” screen appears.

The following icons appear on the list screen:

: Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored

: A holiday is stored.

: An anniversary is stored.

: There is a To Do list item.

: An alarm is set.

: Repeated daily

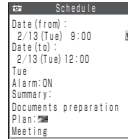
: Repeated weekly

: Repeated annually



Function menu ▶ p.291

2 Select an item to check in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	“Adding schedule events” → p.289 “Adding holidays and anniversaries” → p.289
Edit	Edits a schedule entry.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	▶ Select an icon Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (or) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	“Setting your preferred image as a user icon” → p.290
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.292).
Release secret	Restores schedule mode to normal from Secret mode or Secret data only mode. “Changing secret data back to normal” → p.145
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.280
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected schedule entry.
• Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item ▶ “YES” Selects an item to delete. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete past 	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
--	---

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆ Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆ If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete selected" to delete scheduled events for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting "YES" deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.
- ◆ When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.
- ◆ If scheduled events are shown by icon and you select "Delete selected" from the function menu, the Delete selected screen for the list of dates selected on the previous screen appears. You cannot select Delete selected when scheduled events are shown by icon.

<To Do list> MENU95
Adding To Do List Items

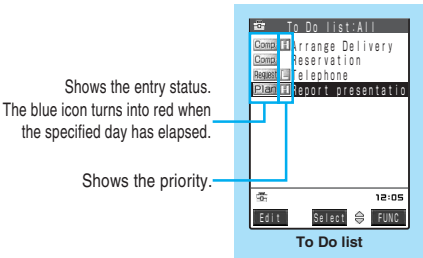
You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- "Due date" and "Completion date" can be set between from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- To Do list alarms → p.285

Checking items

1 MENU ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "To Do list"

The "To Do list" screen appears.



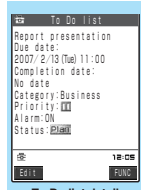
Function menu ▶ p.292

2 Select an item to check

■ To edit an item

▶ (Edit)

"Adding and editing items" → p.293



Function menu ▶ p.292

Function menu (To Do list screen/To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items" → p.293
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the Schedule screen (p.288).
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display*	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter*	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons" → p.130
Send Ir data	"Transferring one Data at a Time" → p.280
Send all Ir data*	Sends all items via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" → p.280
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected item.
• Delete selected*	▶ Use (Finish) ▶ "YES" () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple items.
• Delete completed*	Deletes a finished item.
• Delete all*	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all items.

* : Available only on the To Do list screen.

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".

1 MENU ▶ "LifeKit" ▶ "To Do list" ▶

✉ (New)

- To add a new item when other items have been stored

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "New"

- To edit an already stored item

▶ Select an item to edit ▶ (Edit)

2 Set the respective parameters

Contents	▶ Enter the details of an item Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
Due date	Sets the due date for an item.
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date and time Enters the date and time.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar ▶ Enter a time Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a due date.
Priority	Sets priority for an item.
•	Sets high () priority.
•	Sets low () priority.
• None	Does not set priority.
Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• ON	An alarm is given on the due date.
• ON/Set time	▶ Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, press .
• OFF	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.

Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112
• Clock Alarm Tone	Sets the alarm tone selected at the "Clock Alarm Tone set". → p.115
• Melody	▶ Select a folder Selects a ring tone or melody.
• i-motion	▶ Select a folder Selects an i-motion.
• Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → p.296
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
Completion date*	Sets the completion date for an item.
• Enter date	▶ Enter the date Enters the date.
• Choose date	▶ Select a date from the calendar Selects a date from the calendar.
• No date	Does not set a completion date.

* : Shown only when you edit an existing item for which "Status" is "Completion".

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the To Do list item (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.
- ◆ If you store an item during a voice call and 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

<My Profile>

MENU 0

Storing Your Name and Image

Default setting
Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your own number.

- Items other than your own number are stored on a FOMA terminal. Even if a different FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the items stored on your FOMA terminal appear except for your own number.

Showing My Profile

This function only shows your name, own number and the first e-mail address listed.

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “My Profile”

The “My Profile” screen appears.

If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting “Display all data” from the function menu and entering your security code.



Function menu ▶ p.294

Function menu (My Profile screen)

Edit	Edits your My Profile. “Storing personal data” → p.294
Display all data	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Use to check the details
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.334
Copy phone number^{*1}	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.334
Send Ir data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Reset	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Resets (deletes) the personal data other than your own number and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected “Display all data” to show the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code.
Delete phone No.^{*2}	Deletes the phone number currently shown.

- *1 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.

- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.
- *2 : Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Delete mail add.” appears.
 - If you have selected an address, “Delete address” appears.
 - If you have selected a birthday, “Delete birthday” appears.
 - If you have selected a memo, “Delete memorandums” appears.
 - If you have selected an image, “Delete image” appears.










Storing My Profile

1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “My Profile” ▶

(Edit) ▶ Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

FN Last name	▶ Enter your last name Enters your last name. The last name can contain kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs. Up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters can be entered including your first name.
R Reading	▶ Enter the reading of your last name Enters the reading of your last name. Entering your last name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols. Up to 32 single-byte characters can be entered including the reading of your first name.
N First name	▶ Enter your first name Enters your first name. The first name can contain kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs. Up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters can be entered including your last name.
R Reading	▶ Enter the reading of your first name Enters the reading of your first name. Entering your first name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols. Up to 32 single-byte characters can be entered including the reading of your last name.

 Phone number	<p>▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Select an icon</p> <p>Adds a phone number other than your own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.</p>
 Mail address	<p>▶ Enter an e-mail address ▶ Select an icon</p> <p>Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Storing a new e-mail address shows “ <Not stored>” on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.</p>
 Address	<p>▶ Enter a ZIP code ▶ Enter a Prefecture ▶ Enter a City ▶ Enter a Street address ▶ Enter an Apartment Name, etc. ▶  (Finish)</p> <p>Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. For other than that, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and pictographs can be entered, and up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters can be entered.*</p>
 Birthday	<p>▶ Enter a birthday</p> <p>Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.</p>
 Memo-records	<p>▶ Enter a memo</p> <p>Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.</p>
 Image	<p>Sets an image to be shown for your personal data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Photo mode <p>Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data.</p> • Select image <p>▶ Select a folder</p> <p>Selects an image.</p> • Release this <p> Cancels the image set for your personal data.</p>

* : A maximum of 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters can be stored for the whole address excluding the ZIP code (prefecture, city, street, apartment name, etc).

3  (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored here until you change it manually.


<Voice memo (in-call)/Voice memo>

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

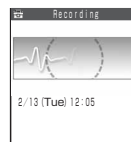
Voice memo provides two types. “Voice memo (in-call)” enables you to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. “Voice memo” enables you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record either one Voice memo (in call) or one Voice memo, which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos → p.73





Recording the other party's voice during a call

1 During a call ▶  (MEMO/CHECK) (1 second or longer)



A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.




■ **To stop recording**

▶ , ,  or  (MEMO/CHECK)

(1 second or longer)

Pressing  ends the call as well as recording. Pressing  does not stop recording during a videophone call.

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.
- ◆ You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.
- ◆ While you are holding a voice call, you can activate “Voice memo (in-call)” to record voice by following the steps below:
▶  ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice memo (in-call)”

Recording your voice in standby mode

MENU43

1  ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice memo” ▶

“YES” ▶ **Record a voice memo**

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the “LifeKit” list screen.

■ To stop recording

▶ [M], [CLR] or [END]

Pressing [END] returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce> MENU91

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
- You can record voice for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:
 - Ring tone
 - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
 - Ring tone for Multi Number
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer message for Record message
 - Alarm tone for Alarm
 - Alarm tone for Schedule
 - Alarm tone for To Do list
 - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

1 [MENU] ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice announce” ▶

Select an item for which you want to record voice ▶ “YES”



Function menu▶p.296

2 Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal

gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording

▶ [M], [CLR] or [END]

Pressing [END] returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.
- ◆ If you receive a voice, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

1 [MENU] ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Voice announce” ▶

Select an item to play

■ To stop playback

▶ [M], [CLR] or [END]

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data> MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is a total of dialed and received call times, and indicated respectively for voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
- Charges are only indicated for dialed calls. If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), “¥0” or “¥**” appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
 - * FOMA terminals released before the 901i series stores charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) but cannot show the data.
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.

- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.

1 **MENU** ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Call time/ Charge”** ▶ **“Call data”**

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. “Talk” shows the charge for voice calls and “Digital” for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to “0”). “Talk” shows the total duration of voice calls and “Digital” does the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- ◆ If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds “199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the call time count returns to 0 second.
- ◆ Call time and charge are not counted during i-mode or packet communication or Chaku-moji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” you received at the time of contract.
- ◆ The time when your FOMA terminal is ringing or that when the other party’s terminal is ringing is not counted.
- ◆ Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge shown for the last call to “0” and “¥ **” respectively.
- ◆ The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset total> MENU60

1 **MENU** ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Call time/ Charge”** ▶ **“Reset total”** ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **Select any item**

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
-----------------------------	----------------------------------

Reset total cost	▶ “YES” ▶ Enter the PIN2 code Resets the accumulated charge.
-------------------------	---

Resetting charges automatically

<Auto reset total cost>	Default setting OFF
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

You can set the accumulated charge shown in “Call data” to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

1 **MENU** ▶ **“Settings”** ▶ **“Call time/ Charge”** ▶ **“Auto reset total cost”** ▶ **Enter your security code**

2 **“Auto reset”** ▶ **Select any item**

ON	▶ Enter the PIN2 code Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code → p.139
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

NOTE

- ◆ The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
- ◆ If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
- ◆ Setting Auto reset total cost to “ON” and changing the month in “Set time” reset the total call charges automatically.
- ◆ When Auto reset total cost is set to “ON”, the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
- ◆ Auto reset total cost is set to “OFF” if:
 - You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
 - You press **[CLR]** on the PIN2 code entry screen, that appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
 - The PIN2 code is locked. → p.138
 - The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting	Cost limit: Not set Notify cost limit: OFF
------------------------	---

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in “Call data” exceeds the specified cost limit.

- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

- 1 **MENU** ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Call time/ Charge” ▶ “Notice designate calls”
▶ Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between ¥10 and ¥100,000 by ¥10.
Notify setting	
• Notify cost limit	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting “OFF” does not given an alarm. Setting “ON” gives an alarm following the settings of “Alarm tone” and “Volume”.
• Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. “Changing the Ring Tone” → p.112
• Inbox	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as a ring tone.
• Pre-installed	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• Voice announce	Selects “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” for an alarm tone. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones” → p.296
• OFF	Does not sound an alarm.
• Volume	Use to set the alarm tone volume. “Adjusting the Ring Volume” → p.65

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆ The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in “Phone vol.” under “Original”.
- ◆ The charges for i-mode and packet communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” you received at the time of contract.

Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

■ When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and Alarm tone is set to other than “OFF”

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking and lasts about five minutes, which opens the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the alarm, pressing **CLR** or shows the



“ ” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.

■ When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and Alarm tone is set to “OFF”

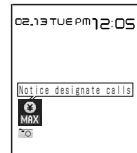
When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the “ ” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Checking the details of “ ” (Notice designate calls)

Selecting the “ ” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen ▶ “ ” ▶ Enter your security code

The alarm information on “Notice designate calls” is shown.



2 Check the details ▶

The standby screen reappears and the “ ” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ The “ ” (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls cost in “Cost limit setting”.
- ◆ If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.
- ◆ You can choose the alarm mode between “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” in “Alarm setting”.

<Calculator>

MENU85

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (+ (addition), − (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

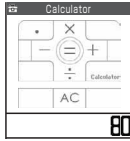
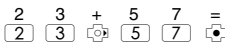
- Up to 10-digit number and up to nine decimal places can be shown.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with “E”.

1 **MENU** ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Calculator” ▶

Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

■ To calculate “23 + 57”



■ To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert “-” before the first digit.



NOTE

◆ **CLR** (**AC** or **C**) is available as follows:

- Pressing **+**, **-**, **×**, **÷** or **=** shows **AC**. Pressing **CLR** allows you to recalculate from scratch.
- When **C** appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing **CLR** allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

<Text memo> MENU42 Composing Text Memos

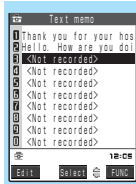
The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Text memo”

The “Text memo” screen appears.



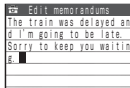
Function menu ▶ p.299

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press **EDIT** (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo

▶ Select an item to edit ▶ **EDIT** (Edit)

3 Compose a memo



NOTE

- ◆ Highlighting “<Not recorded>” on the “Text memo” screen and pressing **EDIT** also enables you to compose a text memo.

Important

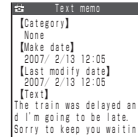
- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes. You can also save data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Text memo”

Select an item to check in detail ▶

Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	“Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → p.211
Edit schedule	“Adding schedule events” → p.289
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
Send 1r data	“Transferring one Data at a Time” → p.280
Send all 1r data	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time” → p.280
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a text memo into “None”, “Personal”, “Holiday”, “Travel”, “Business” or “Meeting”.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the selected text memo.
• Delete selected	▶ Use EDIT to select a checkbox (<input type="checkbox"/>) ▶ FINISH (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple text memos.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all text memos.

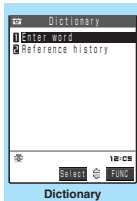
Using Dictionaries

- Using dictionaries from other functions → p.301

Activating a dictionary

1 MENU ▶ “LifeKit” ▶ “Dictionary”

The “Dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu → p.300

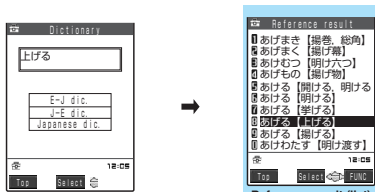
2 Select any item

Enter word	▶ Enter a word A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. “Using reference history” → p.300

3 Select the dictionary type

The “Reference result (list)” screen appears.

- To open the previous or next list
▶ Reference result (list) screen ▶

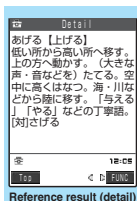


Function menu → p.300

4 Select a word from the reference result list

The “Reference result (detail)” screen appears.

- To view the previous or next word
▶ Reference result (detail) screen ▶



Function menu → p.300

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → p.130
------------------	-------------------------------

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.300) ▶ “Reference history”

The “Reference history” screen appears.



Function menu → p.300

2 Select a word

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	Copies characters or words. For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionaries, characters in brackets ([]) retrieved as search result are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search result are copied. The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.334
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.






Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Change window ¹	Switches between the reference result screen and the text edit screen.
Copy	Copies the texts selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied texts can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → p.334
Re-reference	“Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen” → p.301
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit ²	Edits texts referring to the searched word. “Changing the Active Window” → p.336

*1 : Shown only when Change window is available.

*2 : Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

- 1 Reference result (detail) screen (p.300) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Re-reference”
- 2  ▶ Press  on the first character of the string to search for
- 3  ▶ Move the cursor to the end of the string to search for, then press 
- 4 Select the dictionary type
- 5 Select a word from the reference result list

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select “Refer dictionary” or “Refer dic.” from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- A webpage or screen memo

■ When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

■ When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.

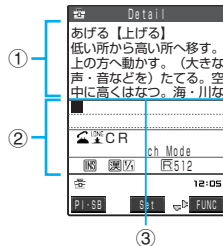
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■ When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo

You can select “Enter word”, “Site refer (enter)” or “Reference history”.

Selecting “Site refer (enter)” allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.


● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting “Refer edit” or “Site refer (enter)” splits the screen into the upper and lower. Selecting “Change window” from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②.


■ When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen

- ① shows the dictionary detail screen.
- ② shows the text edit screen.
- ③ draws a border line.

To exit the dictionary, select “Quit dic.” from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press  (End).

■ When you select Site refer (enter) from a webpage or screen memo

- ① shows the webpage or screen memo.
- ② shows the word entry screen.
- ③ draws a border line.

Enter a word and then press . The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → p.24
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting" (p.302). Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number set in "Auto dial setting".

■ To make calls from the phonebook list screen

▶ Phonebook list screen (p.97) ▶ Select a phonebook entry ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.

You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (list)" screen or "Received calls (list)" screen.

■ To make calls from the phonebook detail screen

▶ Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number. You can also make calls from the "Redial/Dialed calls (detail)" screen (p.53) or "Received calls (detail)" screen (p.63).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ To receive voice calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ To receive videophone calls

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting "Substitute image" from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- ◆ You can set "Earphone" to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- ◆ A ring tone does not sound if "Phone", "Videophone" under "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or while in manner mode. However, the beeps sound when "Manner mode set" is set to "Original" in which "Phone vol.:" is not "Silent".
- ◆ If you subscribe to "Call Waiting", you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.
- ◆ Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting
OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 "Settings" ▶ "Dialing" ▶ "Auto dial setting" ▶ "ON"

- To not dial automatically
▶ "OFF"

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.97) ▶ Show a phone number to set

Searching the phonebook (Selecting the search method) → p.98

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number, UIM phonebook entry.
- ◆ Deleting the phonebook entry set here disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to "ON".

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone Attached

Default setting	Automatic answer: OFF Ring time (seconds): 6 sec.
-----------------	--

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.

- 1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Automatic answer”
▶ Select any item

ON	▶ Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds) Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time. Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To set the time currently shown, press [OK].
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

- ◆ When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting “My side” from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.
- ◆ The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for “Record message” or “Remote monitoring”.
- ◆ To give priority to this function when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- ◆ If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.
- ◆ Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

Selecting a Microphone to Be Activated When Using an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting	External microphone
-----------------	---------------------

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

- 1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Select microphone”
▶ Select any item

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

NOTE

- ◆ When “Select microphone” is set to “Internal microphone”, the microphone sensitivity is set at the same level as when the hands-free operation is set to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

Selecting Your Provider

Default setting DoCoMo

* If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

You can specify your FOMA service provider.

- As of November 2006, no service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

- 1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Network setting”
▶ “NW search mode” ▶ “Manual”
Select a service provider

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake "Initialize" for "Reset settings". Selecting "Initialize" will delete all data you have stored. → p.305

- To reset the i-mode functions to default, perform "Reset" in "i-mode settings". → p.194
- To reset the mail functions to default, perform "Reset" in "Mail settings". → p.244

1 ► "Settings" ► "Other settings"
► "Reset settings" ► Enter your security code ► "YES"

■ To cancel the reset
► "NO"

● Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see "Menu Function List" (p.338). In addition to the functions listed in "Menu Function List", the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• Sort	Chronological ↑
My picture function menu	
• Set image disp.	Normal
i-motion	
i-motion	
• Volume	Level 10
Movie list function menu	
• List setting	Title + image
• Sort	Chronological ↑
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF
• Set image disp.	Normal
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• Set repeat play	OFF
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• Substitute image	ビーンズ (Beans)
• Set image disp.	Fit in display

Function	Default setting
Camera	
Movie mode	
• Select size	QCIF (176 × 144)
• File size setting	Restricted(Short)
• Storage setting	Normal
• Image quality	White balance: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Camera folder
Photo mode	
• Select size	CIF (352 × 288)
• Storage setting	Fine
• Image quality	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto
• Shutter sound	Sound 1
• Select to save	Camera folder
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• Camera	Rear camera
• Auto timer	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• Auto save set	OFF
• File restriction	File unrestricted
• Display size	Actual size
Setting Continuous mode → p.170	
Schedule function menu	
• Display	Monthly display
• User icon settg.	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• Discern connect	All OFF
• Restrictions	All OFF
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
My Profile function menu	
• Big font, Standard font	Standard font
Videophone in-call function menu	
• V.phone settings	Brightness: 0
• Display light	All time ON
Last one function*	
• Main menu	Data box
• Search phonebook	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode	Release

*: "Last one function" allows the last selected function to be selected next time you perform the same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing "Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters, initializing a FOMA terminal restores them.
- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.
- For more information on the default settings to restore, see "Reset settings" (p.304).
- Performing "Initialize" returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the "Reset settings" function to default set at the time of purchase:

- | | |
|--|---|
| ● Mail data | ● Bookmark |
| ● Mail folders | ● Screen memo |
| ● Template | ● Last URL |
| ● Color palette history | ● Go to location |
| ● Chat member for chat mail | ● Message |
| ● Home | ● i-mode settings |
| ● Additional service | ● Dictionary |
| ● Multi Number (Number Setting) | ● Channel list |
| ● Group setting | ● Phonebook |
| ● Received calls | ● Call data |
| ● Redial/Dialed calls | ● Set time (date/time) |
| ● Received address | ● Style mode |
| ● Sent address | ● Pause dial |
| ● Mail member | ● Security code |
| ● Chat group | ● Clear learned under Character input set |
| ● Own dictionary | ● To Do list |
| ● Download dictionary | ● Schedule |
| ● Sent/rec'd msg. | ● Text memo |
| ● Sent/rec'd Data list (Data Sec. Service) | ● Play/Erase VP msg. |
| ● Data added by user* | ● Voice memo |
| | ● Voice announce |
| | ● Mail settings |

* : Saved data, downloaded data, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, etc.

- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.

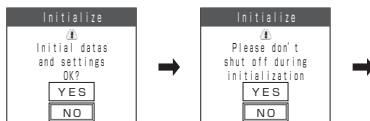
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, or mails.

◆ Performing "Initialize" restores a FOMA terminal to default.

It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322).

- 1 [MENU] "Settings" ▶ "Other settings"
▶ "Initialize" ▶ Enter your security code

- 2 "YES" ▶ "YES"



Initialization begins.
Initialization may take several minutes.
When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is failed

- ▶ Press "OK" after turning a FOMA terminal on
Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

- ◆ After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-channel telop text does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing [dt], the telop text appears automatically.
- ◆ You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.
- ◆ Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) is not deleted.
- ◆ Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.
- ◆ If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

● Network Services

Available Network Services	308
Voice Mail Service	308
Call Waiting Service.....	309
Call Forwarding Service.....	311
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	312
Caller ID Request Service	312
Dual Network Service	312
English Guidance.....	313
Service Numbers	313
Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call.....	313
Setting Up Remote Control.....	Remote Control 315
Multi Number	315
OFFICEED.....	316
Adding and Using Services	Additional service 316

This chapter explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]". For details on Multi Number, see "Multi Number User Guide".

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of DoCoMo network services as shown below. The table below outlines the available services.

Service	Subscription	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Charged	p.308
Call Waiting	Required	Charged	p.309
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.311
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.312
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.44
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.312
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.67
Public mode (Power off)			p.68
Dual Network	Required	Charged	p.312
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.313
Multi Number	Required	Charged	p.315
OFFICEED	Required	Charged	p.316
SMS (Short Message Service)	Not required	Free	p.249

- The network services are not available when you are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.
- For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".
- "OFFICEED" is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. For more details, see DoCoMo corporate website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) (Japanese only)
- For subscriptions or inquiries, contact "Inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.

Voice Mail Service

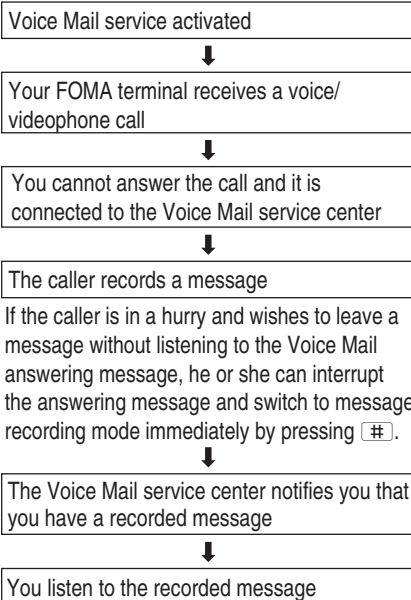
Subscription Required

When you are in a place where the radio waves do not reach, the FOMA terminal is turned off, or you cannot answer a call, this function answers the call with Answer message and keep a message from the caller.

- When Record message (p.71) is set at the same time, set the ringing time of Voice Mail service shorter than the ring time for Record message, to give priority to Voice Mail service.
- If you cannot answer a voice call or a videophone call when the Voice Mail service is set to "Activate", calls are logged in the Received

calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service



NOTE

- ◆ If you receive a call while the Voice Mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ Voice mail cannot be connected via videophone by "32K" communication speed.
- ◆ When connecting to the voice mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu. → p.79

Using the Voice Mail service

- 1 [MENU] ▶ "Service" ▶ "Voice Mail" ▶
Select any item

Play messages	Select "Yes" and the FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.
Activate	▶"YES"▶"YES"▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) If you set the ring time to 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds) Changes the ring time only.
Check setting	Displays the current setting settings. • Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select "Check setting"→p.309
Setting	▶"YES" Follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Hereafter, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message that checking is completed.
Message notification*	Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to "Level 2".
Erase icon	Deletes the icon "☎" (Voice Mail).
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.250) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.
• All Calls	Notifies you of all calls.
• Calls with Caller ID	Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

* : The option is available only for voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages/Setting>

◆ If you press keys (0 to 9), (*), (#) following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if (☎) is pressed. In this case, press (☎).

◆ To change the settings for the videophone on the voice mail, make a voice call to "1412".

<Activate>

◆ To give priority to the Voice Mail service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Voice Mail service shorter than that of "Record message".

◆ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" (p.157) is longer than the ring time of the Voice Mail service, the

ring time does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time of the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check messages>

◆ If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the "☎" (Voice Mail icon) and "☎" ("Voice Mail" desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.

◆ The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages ("1", "2", "3" ... "10" (10 messages or more)).

The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.

◆ The number of messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.

<Erase icon>

◆ Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

◆ One SMS notifies up to five call logs.

◆ The charge of setting and notification (SMS reception) is free.

◆ Call logs are notified even with "Reject all" set for SMS.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting Service

Subscription
Required

The Call waiting Service informs you a newly received incoming call with a short double-beep ("bibip"), and you can put the current call on hold to answer the new call. You can also use this service to put your current voice call on hold, to make a new voice call.

● To use Call Waiting, select "Answer" in "In-call arrival act" (p.314) beforehand. If other item is set, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call even with Call Waiting activated.

Using the Call Waiting service

- MENU** ▶ **“Service”** ▶ **“Call Waiting”** ▶
Select any item

Activate	▶ “YES” Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	▶ “YES” Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

- ◆ If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing or automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a newly received voice call

- 1** When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press or

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.



- 2** Switch back to the first call

■ To end the call with the second caller

▶ ▶ or

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the second call on hold

▶

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “End held call”

NOTE

- ◆ If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select “End held call” from the function menu and then press or . To end the voice call you are

on and answer an incoming call, press , press and then press or .

Ending the current voice call to answer a newly received voice call

- 1** When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

- 2** or

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

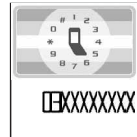
Putting the current voice call on hold to make a new voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

- 1** Dial another phone number during a call ▶

The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.

You can also make a call by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook → p.97



- 2** Switch back to the first call

■ To end the new call

▶ ▶ or

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ To put the new call on hold

▶

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing .

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ To end a voice call on hold

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “End held call”

NOTE

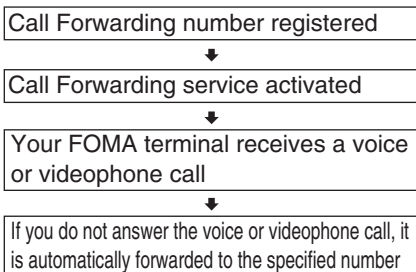
- ◆ If you receive another voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the voice call you are on or held voice call. To end the held voice call and answer an incoming call, press , select “End held call” from the function menu and then press or . To end the voice call you are on and answer an incoming call, press , press and then press or .

Call Forwarding Service Subscription Required

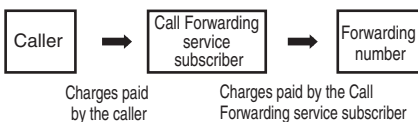
When you are in a place where the radio waves do not reach, the FOMA terminal is turned off, or a call is not answered within the set ring time, this service forwards the voice call/videophone call.

- When Record message (p.71) is set at the same time, set the ringing time of Call Forwarding service shorter than the ring time for Record message, to give priority to Call Forwarding service.
- If you cannot answer a voice call or a videophone call when the Call Forwarding service is set to "Activate", calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service



Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

- ◆ Calls are logged in the Received calls record as "Missed calls" and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Using the Call Forwarding service

- 1 MENU ▶ "Service" ▶ "Call Forwarding" ▶ Select any item

Activate	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Register fwd number 	<p>▶ Enter a forwarding number</p> <p>Use to enter the number from the phonebook.</p> <p>Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98</p> <p>Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".</p>

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set ring time 	<p>▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)</p> <p>Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time".</p> <p>If you set to the ring time to 0 (zero) second, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activate 	<p>▶ "YES"</p> <p>Activates the Call Forwarding service.</p>
Deactivate	<p>▶ "YES"</p> <p>Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.</p>
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy	▶ "YES"
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

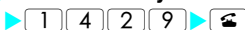
* : It is required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail service".

NOTE

- ◆ If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".
- ◆ To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Record message", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Record message".
- ◆ To give priority to the Call Forwarding service over "Remote monitoring", set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service shorter than that of "Remote monitoring".
- ◆ If the mute time set under "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ring time of the Call Forwarding service, the ring time does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring time sound before the Call Forwarding service launches, set the ring time of the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen



Follow the voice instructions.
For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Nuisance Call Blocking Service Subscription Required

This service enables you to reject “nuisance phone calls” such as prank phone calls. Once you register a phone number to reject, calls from the number are automatically rejected and the call rejection message is sent to the caller.

- No ring tone sounds when receiving a call from the registered phone number. The call is not also logged in the “Received calls” record.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

- 1 [MENU] ▶ “Service” ▶ “Nuisance Call Blk” ▶ Select any item

Register Caller	▶“YES”▶“OK” Adds the last caller to your list of barred callers.
Register number	▶Enter or quote a phone number ▶“YES”▶“OK” Directly enters the number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter a part of the number then use and you can enter the number by searching the phonebook. • Use to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) → p.98 • Press to search the Received calls record, to search the Redial calls record to enter the number.
Delete last entry	▶“YES”▶“OK” Deletes the barred number that was registered last time.
Delete all entries	▶“YES”▶“OK” Deletes all the barred numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the number of barred callers.

Caller ID Request Service Subscription Not required

This service sends a guidance message requesting the caller ID to a caller of a voice call/videophone call who does not notify his or her phone number, and disconnects the call.

- Calls rejected by the Caller ID Request service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed calls” desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

- 1 [MENU] ▶ “Service” ▶ “Caller ID Request” ▶ Select any item

Activate	▶“YES”▶“OK” Activates the Caller ID Request service.
Deactivate	▶“YES”▶“OK” Deactivates the Caller ID Request service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

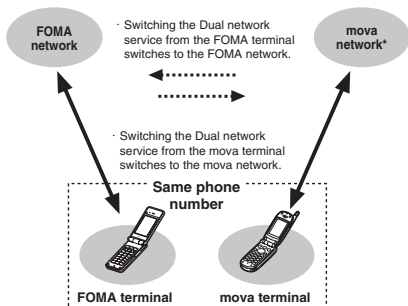
Dual Network Service Subscription Required

This service enables you to use a mova terminal with the same phone number of your FOMA terminal. You can use each of the FOMA and mova terminals depending on the service area.

- You cannot use FOMA terminal and mova terminal at the same time.
- Switching for the Dual Network service can be performed on the terminal that is not currently activated.

Overview of the Dual Network service

- Switching for the Dual Network service can be performed either from a FOMA terminal or mova terminal when it is unable to access the respective services.



* Some services are not available.

- You cannot access the networks from both a FOMA terminal and mova terminal at the same time.

Using the Dual Network service

1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Dual Network” ▶

Select any item

Dual Network switching	▶ “YES” ▶ Enter your network security code Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

<Dual Network switching>

- ◆ End communication in the terminal that can access the services before switching networks.

English Guidance

Subscription
Not required

This service enables you to set the language to English, for the guidance message of the network service settings or notifications such as out of the service area.

For the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller's setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver's setting for incoming calls.

The table below lists the available language settings.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+ English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+ Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

Using the English Guidance

1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “English Guidance” ▶ Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• Outgoing +Incoming	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• Outgoing call	Sets the language used for outgoing calls.
• Incoming call	Sets the language used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Displays the current guidance settings.

Service Numbers

This function provides a way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults.

- Some of the items displayed may be different or may not be displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using.

1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Service Numbers” ▶ Select any item

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.

NOTE

- ◆ The contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information and service desk may not be displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using. If they are not displayed, it is recommended to store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual on the phonebook.

Handling Calls Received While Talking on Another Call

If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding”, “Call Waiting” service, you can specify how to handle voice calls, videophone calls or 64K data communication calls that come in during another call.

- If you have not subscribed to the “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding”, or “Call Waiting” service, you cannot answer the call that comes in during another call.
- To use “In-call arrival act” during a call, activate “Set in-call arrival”.

Specifying how handling calls received while on another call <In-call arrival act>

Default setting
Answer

- 1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “In-call arrival act” ▶ Select any item

Voice Mail	Transfers a voice call and a videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Voice Mail” service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Call Forwarding” service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication call received while on another call.
Answer	If you activate “Call Waiting” and receive a voice call while on another voice call, the “Call Waiting” is available. If you are on a voice call with Call Waiting deactivated, or on a videophone call or 64K data communication call, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ending the voice, videophone or 64K data communication call in progress and answering the new voice, videophone or 64K data communication call • Manually handling a voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call using the function menu. → p.314 • If “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled according to those service settings.

Activating the handling setting for calls received while on another call <Set in-call arrival>


- 1 MENU ▶ “Service” ▶ “Set in-call arrival” ▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the “Set in-call arrival” setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates the “Set in-call arrival” setting.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

- When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: Ending a voice call in progress to answer a new voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ For videophone or 64K data communication call

The calling screen appears.



- 2  or 

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ For 64K data communication call

▶ Take the call on a PC

- When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone or 64K data communication call while on a voice call, if you receive a voice or 64K data communication call while on a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming voice call>

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a incoming voice call screen appears

When you receive a 64K data communication call, you do not hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).


- 2  or 

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When “Set in-call arrival” is set to “Activate” and “In-call arrival act” set to “Answer”>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press (FUNC)

■ When you receive a call other than voice call while on a voice call

▶  (FUNC)

2 Select how to handle the received call

■ To reject an incoming call

▶ "Call Rejection"

■ To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number

▶ "Call Forwarding"

■ To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center

▶ "Voice Mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting Up Remote Control

This function enables you to operate the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service from a touch-tone fixed-line phone, payphone, or DoCoMo's mobile phone.

1 ▶ "Service" ▶ "Remote Control"

▶ Select any item

Activate	▶ "YES" Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	▶ "YES" Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

Multi Number

Subscription
Required

This service enables you to use a maximum of 2 additional numbers (Additional number1 and 2), besides your Basic Number of your FOMA terminal.

- If the FOMA card (UIM) is taken out or replaced, Multi Number settings which are registered on the FOMA terminal (names and telephone numbers etc.) may be deleted. In this case, re-register the necessary settings.
- The name that corresponds to Multi Number (Basic Numbers/Additional Number 1/Additional Number 2) is displayed on the dialing/receiving screen.
- If you make a call using the Redial or Received calls record, the multi number which was previously dialed or received is shown and starts to be dialed.

NOTE

- ◆ Selecting "Multi Number" from the function menu to make a call will display the item selected when making a call ("Basic Number" or register name of

Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) on the Redial (detail) screen or Dialed calls record (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to "Multi Number".

If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls.


- ◆ When you search a phone number from the Redial/ Dialed calls record to make a call, the call is made from the number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) displayed in the record. If only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in "Set Multi Number" (p.315).
- ◆ When you make a call using Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the "Set Multi Number" (p.315) setting.
- ◆ When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the registered name of the number is displayed on the receiving screen or on the received calls detail screen.
- ◆ In Public mode (Driving mode), if an incoming call is dialed to Additional Number 1 or 2, the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number.

→ p.67

Using the Multi Number

1 ▶ "Service" ▶ "Multi Number" ▶

Select any item

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Number 	▶ "YES" Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Additional Number1* 	▶ "YES" Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Additional Number2* 	
Check setting	Checks the "Set Multi Number" setting.
Number Setting	▶ Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press  (Edit) ▶ Enter a name ▶ Enter an additional number Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number to the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Multi Number setting function menu displayed when you select "Number Setting" → p.316
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. "Changing the Ring Tone" → p.112

*: The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

- ◆ If you insert a different FOMA card, the Multi Number settings (names, numbers, ring tones, etc.) registered to the FOMA terminal may be erased. In this case, register again.

<Number Setting>

- ◆ The name is displayed when you specify the Multi Number settings and select a phone number used for a call.

<Select ring tone>

- ◆ When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → p.114


Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone number each time making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

1 Phone number entry screen (p.46)

- ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Multi Number”
- ▶ Select any item

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	
Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the “Set Multi Number” setting.

* : The respective registered names are displayed if they are set.

NOTE

- ◆ You can also switch phone number using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls details screen.
- ◆ When the detail screen of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls shows the Multi Number register name (“Basic Number” or register name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) and you would like to make a call using the different number from the displayed Multi Number register name, select any item to be called from “Multi Number” on the function menu.

OFFICEED

Subscription
Required

“OFFICEED” is a flat-rate group service provided by the specified IMCS (indoor mobile communication system). You need to separately subscribe to the services. For more details, see DoCoMo corporate website (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) (Japanese only).



<Additional service>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function enables you to add those services onto your FOMA terminal.

Adding additional service and response message

- 1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Additional service” ▶ Select any item

Additional service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Highlight “<Not stored>” and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Add new service” ▶ Enter a service name <p>Adds a new service.</p> <p>A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Add new service function menu displayed when you select “Additional service” → p.317
• Enter number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Enter a number ▶ “YES” <p>Uses the number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.</p>
• Enter USSD number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Enter a code ▶ “YES” <p>Uses the service code to connect. The code can contain up to 40 digits.</p>
Additional guidance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Highlight “<Not stored>” and press  (FUNC) ▶ “Add new guidance” ▶ Enter a command ▶ Enter a response message ▶ “YES” <p>Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using the service code (USSD) to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Additional guidance function menu displayed when you select “Additional guidance” → p.317

NOTE



<Additional service>

- ◆ To add a service, enter the “number” or “service code” provided by DoCoMo. The “number” is the number used to connect to the service center, while the “service code” (USSD) is the code used for notifying the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

- 1  ▶ “Service” ▶ “Additional service” ▶ “Additional service”
- 2 **Select a service** ▶ 

● Data Communication

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal.....	320
Before Using	321
Checking the Procedure	321
AT Commands	322
CD-ROM	322
DoCoMo Keitai Datalink.....	322

For details on data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM. To view the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

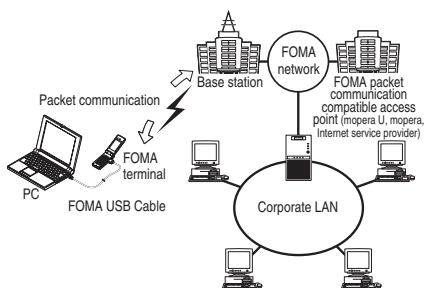
Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and a PC is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- **Packet communication**
Data is received at 384kbps max and sent at 64kbps max. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.
- **64K data communication**
Data can be sent and received at the stable speed of 64kbps. You are charged for how long the line is maintained regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

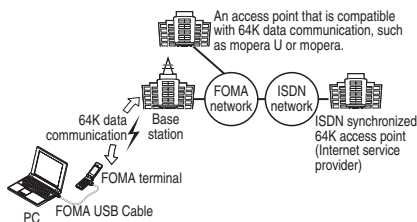
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details. DoCoMo Internet service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. “mopera” is a free service to which you do not need to subscribe.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronous 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your browser, you may need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. In this case, install the FirstPass PC software included on the CD-ROM that came with this product and make the settings. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF file) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is provided in Japanese only.)

To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.

If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Visit the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege

If you do not have this privilege on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, access is limited and you are unable to install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)

A string to identify the Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)

A registration number used to register a packet communication APN to the FOMA terminal. It is similar to a memory number in a phonebook. Up to 10 numbers from 1 to 10 can be registered.

DNS (Domain Name System)

A system that translates a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" into an IP address (a complicated string of numbers), so that a computer can easily manage it.

OBEX (Object Exchange)

An international standard protocol of data communication developed by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or applications to transfer data between various devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality about network communication speed. Set the QoS settings on the FOMA terminal to connect at any speed or only at the highest speed.

W-TCP

TCP parameter used to make the most of the TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operating environment

The following table shows the operating environment to use data communication:

PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) recommended
Operating System ^{*2}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher^{*1} • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher^{*1}
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 5M bytes or higher^{*1}

*1 : The required memory and hard disk space may vary depending on the system configuration.

*2 : Operations to be performed are not guaranteed after Operating System is upgraded.

NOTE

- ◆ To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For information on how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- ◆ The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

In addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are required:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- "FOMA N601i CD-ROM"

NOTE

- ◆ Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable". A USB cable for a PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

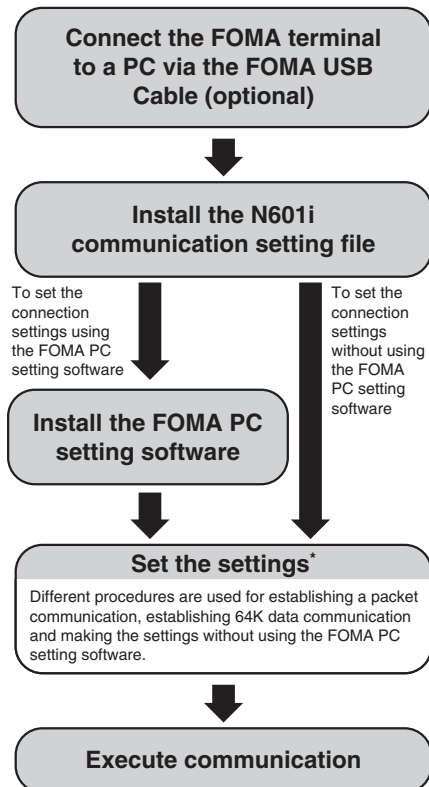
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ Bundled "FOMA N601i CD-ROM"

- The CD-ROM contains the N601i communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N601i communication setting file is the software (driver) required for connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N601i communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Use the FOMA PC setting software to easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and establish a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes the preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use the Internet with the FOMA terminal and a PC connected, "mopera U" (subscription required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are only charged for a month when you use the service. "mopera" (no subscription required) allows you to access the Internet immediately.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. The FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, the FOMA terminal uses some extended commands and its own AT commands.

To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal's functions on a PC, see "Manual for

Data Communication" (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains applications to perform data communication with the FOMA terminal. "Manual for Data Communication" and "KutenCode List" (PDF). For details, see the bundled CD-ROM.

Contained applications/PDF documents

The bundled CD-ROM contains the following applications/PDF documents.

- N601i通信設定ファイル (N601i communication setting file)
- FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)
- FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)
- SD-Jukebox
- Adobe® Reader® 7.0
- "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF)
- "KutenCode List" (PDF)
- DoCoMo keitai datalink (Guide)
- moperaU (Guide)

DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" is software that allows you to back up your "phonebook" entries, "mail" messages, etc. and edit the data on your PC. For more details and the download, visit the following DoCoMo website (Japanese only). You can also access the website from the bundled CD-ROM:

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp>

For details such as how to download/install/operate the software, transferable data, operating environment and restrictions, see the website above. For how to operate the software after it is installed, see the help. To use "DoCoMo keitai datalink", you need to purchase the "FOMA USB Cable (optional)".

■ Operating System

Windows 2000 Professional (SP4) Japanese edition
Windows XP Home Edition (SP1/SP2) Japanese edition
Windows XP Professional (SP1/SP2) Japanese edition

● Entering Text

Entering Text.....		324
Editing and Storing Common Phrases.....	Common phrases	333
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....		334
Kuten Code.....		334
Storing Frequently Used Words.....	Own dictionary	335
Resetting the Learning Record.....	Clear learned	335
Selecting a Dictionary to Use.....	Download dictionary	335
Changing the Active Window.....		336

For “Kuten Code List”, see the PDF “Kuten Code List” in the bundled CD-ROM. To view the “Kuten Code List”, Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If this software is not installed on your PC, install it from the CD-ROM. For details on the usage, etc., see the Adobe Reader help.

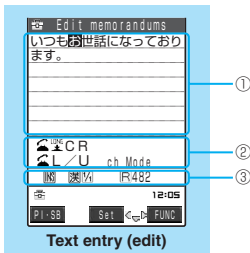
Entering Text

Use dial keys to enter text on the FOMA terminal. The text entry function is used to create a phonebook entry, compose a message, etc.

- The text entry method is divided into "Mode 1(5-touch)", "Mode 2(2-touch)" and "Mode 3(T9 input)".

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: ① text entry, ② operation guidance and ③ information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry mode, input mode and remaining character count.



Function menu ▶ p.332

① Text entry area

- : Cursor. Text is entered at this location.
- : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark. The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

② Operation guidance area

- CHG: Indicates that can be used for conversion. → p.328
- All/ Search: Indicates that can be used to search on the Search phonebook screen. → p.98
- Fix mode/ Fix END: Indicates that Fix mode can be used in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". → p.327
- Area: Appears when you copy (or cut) text. → p.334
- CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol "↵" by holding down for 1 second or longer. → p.330
- L/U: Indicates that can be used to switch between upper case and lower case. → p.329
- AA → aa: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be released by pressing . → p.326

- aa → Aa: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be switched to "Shift mode" by pressing . → p.326
- AA → AA: Indicates that "Mode 3 (T9 input)" can be switched to "CapsLock mode" by pressing . → p.326
- Back: Indicates that you can return to the previous character assigned to the same key by pressing (↵) when the text entry method is "Mode 1(5-touch)".
- ch Mode: Indicates that the Input mode can be switched by pressing . → p.325, 326

③ Information display area

- / : Indicates that the text entry method is "Mode 2(2-touch)" (p.326) or "Mode 3(T9 input)" (p.326). No icon appears in "Mode 1(5-touch)".
- : Indicates that "Fix mode" is selected in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". → p.327
- / : "INS" indicates Insert mode and "OVR" Overwrite mode. → p.329
- / / / : Indicates the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1(5-touch)" or "Mode 3(T9 input)".
- : Appears in "Kuten code input mode". → p.334
- / : "1/2" appears when entering single-byte and "1/1" appears when entering double-byte. → p.326
- : Appears when entering lower case in "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 2 (2-touch)". → p.329
- / : Indicates that "Shift mode" or "CapsLock mode" is selected in "Mode 3 (T9 input)". → p.326
- : Indicates the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes. In other words, a double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.
- : Indicates the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the UIM phonebook. No distinction is made between double-byte and single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆ When you compose an i-mode message, pressing the keypads displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input and word prediction.

■ **The numbers of characters remaining and entered**
 Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark “◀” appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

- A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.
- A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.
 Double-byte: A B C D E
 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)
 Single-byte: A B C D E F G H I J
 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ **Character combinations**

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering “ト ㊦” in single-byte kana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ト ㊦ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)
 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

- Single-byte dakuten “゛” and han-dakuten “゜” are each counted as 1 character.

■ **Scrolling**

On the text entry (edit) screen, use to scroll by line, and and to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use to scroll by line, and or (MEMO/CHECK) and to scroll by page.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting	Input mode: Mode 1(5-touch)
-----------------	-----------------------------

There are three methods to enter text:

- Mode 1(5-touch) → p.325
 Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2(2-touch) → p.326
 Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.
- Mode 3(T9 input) → p.326
 Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

- ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings”
 ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “Input mode” ▶ Select any item

● **Changing the text entry method while entering text**

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

- Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once you end the text entry then display the text entry (edit) screen, your preferred text entry method is reselected.
- The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as zip code.

■ **Using the function menu**

“CHG input method” under the text entry (edit) function menu → p.332

■ **Pressing (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer**

The text entry method changes in “Mode 1(5-touch)” → “Mode 2(2-touch)” → “Mode 3(T9 input)” order each time you press and hold (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting	CHG input size: Standard
-----------------	--------------------------

- Select “Small”, “Standard”, “Large 1” or “Large 2” for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

- ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings”
 ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “CHG input size” ▶ Select any item

NOTE

- ◆ You can also change the font size referring to the “Character size” in Changing the font” column(p.128).

Entering text in Mode 1 (5-touch)

- Key Assignment (5-touch input) → p.346

● **Changing the input mode**

1 **Text entry (edit) screen**

(p.324) ▶

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)” → “Numeric (single-byte)” → “Kanji/hiragana (double-byte)” → “Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

- To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates

▶ (CHG) ▶ Use to select a candidate

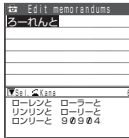
● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering “らわらわた” and converting it to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters to be converted

(ら column), (わ column), (ら column),
 (わ column), (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from “らわらわた” are displayed. In this case, “らんらん” does not appear.

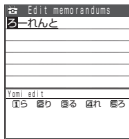


2 (Yomi) or *

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The “ら” column characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press (ら). After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct the conversion candidates.



- If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate

▶ Use to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected

- To exit edit mode in mid-operation

▶ (Return)

The characters corrected before exiting edit mode are displayed as the conversion candidate.

4 Use to select “爛々と”

“爛々と” will be listed at the top of conversion candidates when “らわらわた” is input from the next time.

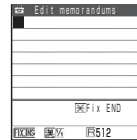


● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Example: Entering a reading “はためく”>

1 (Fix mode)

The input mode changes to Fix mode and “” in the information display area changes to “”.

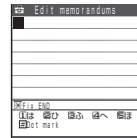


2 Press the key for the column that includes the character you want to enter

In this case, press . The “は” column characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

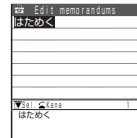
3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press (は). Use the same procedure to enter the rest of readings.



4 (Fix END)

When you press (Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji or katakana by using then (CHG).



● Setting T9 change mode MENU35

When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana.

1 “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “T9 change mode” ▶ Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts the entered characters into kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts the entered characters into kana.

Using word prediction MENU35 Default setting ON

The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

- Candidates of word prediction are preinstalled at default.

2 While in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 2 (2-touch), use or (CHG) to convert the reading to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined ().




■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji




The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range

▶ Use  to change the range of characters to be converted

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

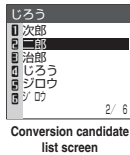
■ To display the conversion candidates for Alphabet and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)

▶  (ABC123)

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana of the highlighted phrase. Pressing the same key continuously changes “き” to “ㇿㇿ” and the numeric conversion candidates is also displayed according to the press count.

3 Use to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.



■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ”-level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE


- ◆ You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- ◆ If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the “on” or “kun” reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- ◆ When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- ◆ If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten code. → p.334
- ◆ Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- ◆ If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.


● Switching between upper case and lower case

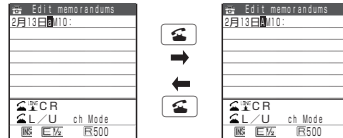
Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ Pressing to switch the cases of entered characters

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)▶

Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press .


The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when “ L / U” is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ Using the function menu before entering

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Lower case”/“Upper case”



When you change to “Lower case”, “ Sm” appears in the information display area. No icon appears when “Upper case” is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in “Insert”, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In “Overwrite”, the new text replaces the existing entered text.


1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)▶

 (FUNC)▶ “Insert”/“Overwrite”

When you change to “Insert”, “ INS” appears in the information display area, and “ OVR” appears when you select “Overwrite”.


When the Text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

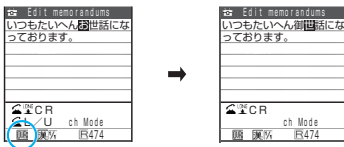
● Inserting text

Select “Insert” and use  to move the cursor the position immediately to the right of the character, where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



Overwriting text

Select “Overwrite” and use  to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.





Entering a space (blank)


Move the cursor to the next right character to which the space (blank) is to be input. A double-byte space is inserted in double-byte input and a single-byte space is input in single-byte input. A space is counted as a character.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)


 (FUNC) ▶ “Space”

Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol “”. There are the following ways to insert a line feed “”.


■ Pressing  at the end of the sentence


1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324) ▶ Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters and press

A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Pressing  for 1 second or longer

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324) ▶ Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and press (1 second or longer)

This method can only be used when “ CR” is displayed in the operation guidance.


A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.






■ Using the function menu

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)

 (FUNC) ▶ “Line feed”

A line feed symbol “” is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- ◆ The line feed symbol “” can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- ◆ The line feed symbol “” is counted as 1 double-byte character. However the SMS message input is different for counting. → p.249
- ◆ You may not be able to insert a line feed “” in an i-mode text box.

Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units. Note that you cannot enter double-byte symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)

 (FUNC) ▶ “Symbols” ▶ Select a symbol to be inserted

“Symbols and Special Characters” → p.349

NOTE

- ◆ Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

Entering face symbols

You can enter the stored face symbols by selecting on the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)

 (FUNC) ▶ “Face Mark”

The “face mark list” screen appears. The meaning appears under the face mark.



2 Select a face symbol you want to enter


“Smiley Face Symbols” → p.350

NOTE

- ◆ If you select the download dictionary for face symbols in “Download dictionary”, the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- ◆ The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal in the Text entry (edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 14 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed on the first line of each screen. Pictographs entered by pressing  (PI-SB) are also stored.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)
(FUNC) ▶ “Pictograph” ▶ Select a pictograph

“Pictographs” → p.350
 The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press **(P)**.

■ To set PI · SB input mode
 ▶ **(PI · SB)**

Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

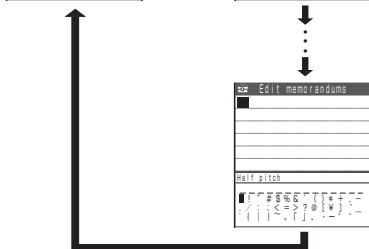
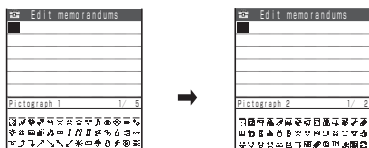
- Entering symbols → p.349
- Pictographs → p.350

1 Text entry (edit) screen ▶ **(PI · SB)**

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (P) (PI · SB) to switch to a different candidate display

The list changes in “Pictograph 1” → “Pictograph 2” → “Full pitch 1” → “Full pitch 2” → “Half pitch” order each time you press **(P)** (PI · SB).

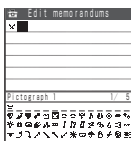


■ To set the full screen mode
 ▶ **(Full)**

3 Select a symbol or pictograph

The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs.

Up to 14 symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.



4 To finish entering, press (CLR)
 Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In “Kanji/hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting “きこう” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かっこ” or “さんかく”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion” → p.349

■ Entering face symbols

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもち” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols” → p.350

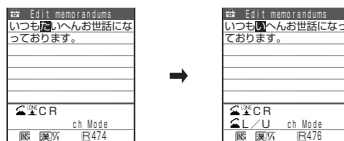
■ Entering pictographs

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as “はーと” or “おんぶ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays pictograph candidates.

“Pictographs” → p.350

Deleting text

Use **(C)** to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and press **(CLR)** briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ When there is no character in the cursor position

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■ If you press (CLR) for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■ If you press (CLR) for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.

● Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text in the Text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or you receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.


■ If the battery fails

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the Text entry (edit) screen is replaced by the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function.

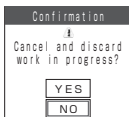
However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries → p.95


■ If you press

If you press  while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry.


However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To quit without saving text>

Select "YES". The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text. You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing .

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed. You can also return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing .

■ When you receive a voice call


If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text entry (edit) screen reappears.

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → p.330
Lower case, Upper case	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → p.329
Half pitch, Full pitch	"Switching between double-byte and single-byte" → p.326
Copy	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"
Cut	→ p.334
Paste	
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → p.332
Space	"Entering a space (blank)" → p.330
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → p.330
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → p.330
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → p.330
Kuten code	"Kuten Code" → p.334
Overwrite, Insert	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. → p.329

Quote data	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quote phonebook • Quote My Profile 	"Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries" → p.333
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → p.300
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF.
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to "Mode 1(5-touch)", "Mode 2(2-touch)" or "Mode 3(T9 input)".
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in "T9 change mode" under "Character input set".
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
UNDO	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	Switches between windows when the operation display for a function and the Text entry (edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the display. "Changing the Active Window" → p.336
Mail reference	Replies to the message while referring to the received mail, when composing a SMS message.

● Entering common phrases

1 **Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)** ▶
 (FUNC) ▶ "Common phrases" ▶
 Select a folder

"Common Phrases" → p.351

2 **Select a common phrase** ▶ 

NOTE

◆ Common phrases can be used in the following Text entry (edit) displays:

- Text memo
- Common phrases
- Common phrases folder name
- Schedule
- To Do list
- Wake-up message
- Edit in i-mode text box
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation mark
- Auto-sort subject
- Search mail subject
- Dictionary

◆ Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common

phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.

- Modes 1 and 3:
Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
- Mode 2:
Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode.
Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode.
(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

● Entering text by quoting My Profile or phonebook entries

In the Text entry (edit) screen for an e-mail message or “Text memo”, you can use this procedure to enter the name, readings, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the “Phonebook” or in the “My Profile”.

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text entry (edit) screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324)▶

(FUNC)▶“Quote data”▶“Quote phonebook” or “Quote My Profile”

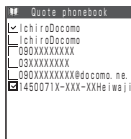
■ When “Quote phonebook” is selected

▶Select “Search group”, “Search column” or “Search all”▶ Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted
Searching the phonebook (search method specification) → p.98

■ When “Quote My Profile” is selected

▶Enter your security code

2 Select the item to be quoted



Quoting a phonebook entry

3 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆When you quote a street address, the zip code “〒” symbol and “.” are not quoted.

<Common phrases>

MENU38

Editing and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text entry (edit) screen later. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases.

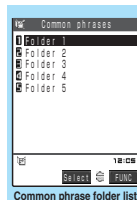
Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.

- Common Phrases → p.351

Composing a new common phrase

1 (MENU)▶“Own data”▶“Common phrases”

The “Common phrases folder list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.333

2 Select a folder

The “Common phrase list” screen appears.



Function menu▶p.334

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Edit)▶ Enter a common phrase

NOTE

- ◆Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.
- ◆When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use “single-byte katakana” or “Pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged).
- ◆Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or “double-byte character input” in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as “single-byte katakana” when another text entry method is used.
(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	▶Edit a folder name Changes the selected folder name. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
------------------	---

Reset name	Restores the folder name to default.
------------	--------------------------------------

NOTE

- ◆ If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	▶ Edit a common phrase Edits the highlighted common phrase.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

- ◆ Deleting any fixed common phrases that has been changed reverts to the default setting. Unchanged fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

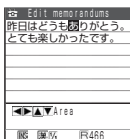
- Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ “Copy” or “Cut”

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut ▶



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut ▶

The selected range of the characters are stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the characters are deleted, but stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select the blank spaces including no characters

Two single-byte spaces are inserted in double-byte input mode and one single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324) ▶

(FUNC) ▶ “Paste”

■ If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text entry (edit) display

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced with spaces when the text is pasted.

<Kuten Code>

Kuten Code

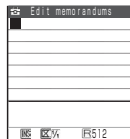
This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.
- For “Kuten Code List”, see the PDF “Kuten Code List” in the bundled CD-ROM.

<Example: Entering “慶” (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.324) ▶

The input mode changes to “Kuten code” and appears in the information display area.

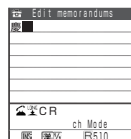
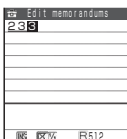


■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

▶ Text entry (edit) screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Kuten code”

2 Enter the kuten code

The character (“慶” in this example) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.



■ If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

NOTE

- ◆ When the text entry mode is “Mode 1(5-touch)” or “Mode 2(2-touch)”, you still switch to kuten code input by selecting “Kuten code” from the function menu.

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting
Not stored

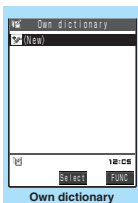
Using this procedure to store frequently used words in an own dictionary under your preferred reading allows you to recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

- 1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Own dictionary”

The “Own dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.335

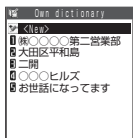
- 2 “<New>” ▶ Enter a word ▶ Enter the reading

NOTE

- ◆ You cannot enter line feeds or common phrases as words or their readings.
- ◆ Symbols other than dakuten and han-dakuten (ゝ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ, ゃ) cannot be stored as readings.
- ◆ A space entered in a reading is automatically deleted.

Checking words

- 1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “Own dictionary”



- 2 Select a word you want to check

■ To edit a word

▶ Select a word you want to edit ▶ (Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
Delete	
• Delete this	Deletes the highlighted word.
• Delete selected	▶ Use (Use) to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) “YES” Deletes multiple words.
• Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all words.

Resetting the Learning Record

The learning dictionary contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning dictionary to its default status at the time of purchase.

- 1 MENU ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Character input set” ▶ “Clear learned” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

T9/Expect words/ Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for “Mode 3(T9 input)”, “Prediction”, “Pictographs” and “Symbols”.
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

Selecting a Dictionary to Use

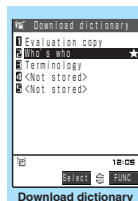
Default setting
Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries from the i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloading dictionaries → p.192

- 1 MENU ▶ “Own data” ▶ “DL dictionary”

The “Download dictionary” screen appears.



Function menu ▶ p.336

2 Select a dictionary you want to set

A star “★” appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

▶ Select a dictionary with a star (★)

The dictionary is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

NOTE

- ◆ If pictographs are registered in the downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.
- ◆ If you set the download dictionary for face symbols, up to 600 face symbols (including the preinstalled 100 face symbols) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select “Face Mark” from the function menu during text input.
- ◆ If you add two download dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face symbols stored in the first-activated download dictionary are displayed as a list.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

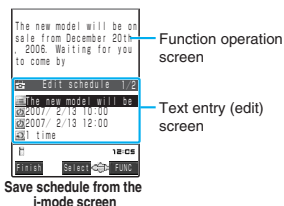
Edit title	▶ Edit a title Changes the title of the selected download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on the selected download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code “YES” Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

- ◆ If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen.



- The function operation screen and Text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
 - Saving schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
 - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
 - Chat screen for Chat mail
 - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Changing the active window

When the operation screen of each function and the character entry (edit) screen are displayed at the same time, selecting “Change window” from the function menu switches the screen to operate.

NOTE




- ◆ When you switch to the other screen, the entered text or cursor location in the current screen remains unchanged.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press [X] in alphabetic input mode to enter “http://”, etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.
- ◆ If you switch to i-mode screen while an edit screen is shown, you can only scroll the i-mode screen.
- ◆ You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

● Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List	338
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase	343
Key Assignment (5-touch input).....	346
Key Assignment (2-touch input).....	347
Key Assignment (T9 input).....	348
Symbols and Special Characters.....	349
Pictographs.....	350
Smiley Face Symbols	350
Common Phrases	351
Multi Access Combination Patterns.....	352
Services Available for the FOMA terminal	353
Options and Accessories	353
Movie Playing Software	354
■ Troubleshooting	
Malfunction Checklist.....	355
If Any Error Message Appears.....	358
Warranty and After-Sales Service	363
Updating Software	Software Update 364
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data	
.....	Scanning function 369
Specifications.....	371
Counts for Storage, Register and Protect Enabled on FOMA Terminal.....	372
Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones	373

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by “Reset” (p.304).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting	Refer to	
Mail			 (MAIL)		p.210	
i-mode			 (i-mode)		p.180	
Choku-Den					p.107	
Settings	Style mode		—	—	p.134	
	Incoming call	Ring volume	MENU50	Level 4	p.65	
		Select ring tone	MENU13	Phone Videophone Mail Chat mail MessageR MessageF	p.112	
		SRS_WOW	MENU64	OFF		p.114
		Vibrator	MENU54	OFF	p.114	
		Illumination	MENU89	Set color	p.127	
				Set pattern		Standard
				Missed info		ON
		Manner mode set	MENU20	Manner mode (Original manner: Default → p.117)	p.117	
		Disp. PH-book image	—	ON	p.122	
		Answer setting	MENU58	Any key answer	p.61	
		Mail/Msg. ring time	MENU68	ON (ring time: 5 seconds)	p.116	
		Ring time(sec.)	MENU90	Set mute seconds	p.157	
				Muted seconds(sec): 1 second (When Set mute seconds is set to "ON")		
				Missed calls display	Display	
		Info notice setting	MENU65	Japanese display: ON English display: ON	p.70	
		Record message	MENU55	Record message OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record msg. is set to "ON") Ring time: 8 sec. (When Record msg. is set to "ON")	p.71	
	Talk	Noise reduction	MENU76	ON	p.58	
		Quality alarm	MENU75	High tone	p.116	
		Reconnect signal	MENU77	High tone	p.58	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to	
Settings	Talk	Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.128	
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.66	
				Holding tone	Melody 1		
		Setting when folded	MENU18		End the call	p.62	
	Dialing	Pause dial	MENU84		—	p.55	
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.58	
		Prefix setting	—		"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	p.57	
		Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.302	
		Int'l dial settings		—	Auto assist setting	Auto	p.49
					IDD Prefix setting	"WORLD CALL" (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
				Country code setting	"アメリカ" (Country Code: 1) User setting: Not recorded		
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.84	
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.84	
				Holding	Pre-installed		
				Substitute image	Chara-den (ビーンズ (Beans))		
				Record message	Pre-installed		
				Preparing	Pre-installed		
				Voice memo	Pre-installed		
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.84	
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.88	
				Ringing time	5 seconds		
				Set	OFF		
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.86	
				Front camera Reverse	ON		
		Ntfy switch-mode	—		Indication ON	p.87	
	Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.86		
	V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.87		
	Display	Display setting	MENU56	Stand-by display	White and Peridot 1 (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black and Sapphire 1 (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby 1 (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)	p.119	
					Wake-up display		Wake up Message: not registered
				Dialing	White and Peridot (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black and Sapphire (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink and Ruby (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)		
				Calling			
				V.phone Dialing			
				V.phone Calling			
Mail sending							
Mail receiving							
Check new messages							
Backlight	MENU70	Lighting	ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 3 minutes)	p.123			
		Charging	Standard				
		Area	LCD+Keys				
		Brightness	Level 2				
		Power saver	ON				

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Display	Display design	MENU86	Color pattern	Pattern 1 (Phone color: White & Peridot, Pink & Ruby), Pattern 5 (Phone color: Black & Sapphire)	p.124
				Background 1	OFF	
				Background 2	Pattern 1	
				Battery icon	White (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)	
				Antenna icon	White (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)	
		Font	MENU66	Type	Font 1	p.128
		Thickness		Bold		
		Character size		Standard		
		Desktop icon	MENU63		Photo mode	p.130
		Select language	MENU15		日本語 (Japanese)	p.42
		Menu display set	MENU57	Menu display	List	p.124
				Theme	White & Peridot (Phone color: White & Peridot), Black & Sapphire (Phone color: Black & Sapphire), Pink & Ruby (Phone color: Pink & Ruby)	
				Memory focus	ON	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.256
	Automatic display	MENU47		OFF	p.108	
	Icons	MENU36		—	p.27	
	Icons setting	—		ON	p.132	
	Privacy angle	—		OFF	p.123	
	Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU61		—	p.296
		Notice designate calls	—	Cost limit	Not set	p.297
				Notify cost limit	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total	MENU60		—	p.297
		Auto reset total cost	—		OFF	p.297
	Call time display	MENU48		ON	p.128	
	Clock	Set time	MENU31		Auto time set ON	p.43
		Clock display	MENU39	Display	日本語	p.129
				Style	12h clock	
				Size	Big	
		Alarm setting	—		Alarm preferred	p.285
	Clock Alarm Tone set	—		Melody	p.115	
	Lock/ Security	Lock	Dial lock	—	Reset	p.142
			Original lock	—	OFF Group and item settings Data disp. Edit del.: Select all Dial/sending mail, Incoming/ Mail disp.: Release all	p.147
		Key Operation lock	—		After folded: OFF Timer: OFF	p.152
		Self mode	—		OFF	p.158
Secret mode		MENU40		OFF	p.143	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Lock/ Security	Secret data only mode	MENU41		OFF	p.144
		Reject unknown	—		Accept	p.157
		Call setting w/o ID	MENU10		Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.156
		Change security code	MENU29		0000 (4 zeros)	p.139
		PIN setting	—		—	p.139
		Scanning function	—	Set scan	ON	p.369
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—		60 seconds	p.194
		Set check new messages	—		All checked	p.244
		Host selection	MENU81		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.194
		SMS center selection	—		DoCoMo User setting: Not set	p.252
		Certificate	—		Valid	p.198
		Certificate host	—		DoCoMo User setting host: Not recorded	p.200
	External connection	Earphone	MENU51		Earphone (only)	p.116
		Select microphone	—		External microphone	p.303
		Automatic answer	MENU94		OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to "ON")	p.303
	Network setting	NW search mode	—		DoCoMo	p.303
	Other settings	Keypad sound	MENU30		ON	p.115
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.115
		Battery level	MENU71		—	p.41
		External keys guard	MENU X (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.153
		Character input set	MENU35	Input mode	Mode 1 (5-touch)	p.325
				Prediction	ON	p.327
				Guidance	ON	p.328
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.327
				Clear learned	—	p.335
		CHG input size	Standard	p.325		
	Reset settings	MENU23		—	p.304	
	Initialize	—		—	p.305	
	Software Update	—		—	p.364	
	Data box	My picture	MENU46		—	p.255
		i-motion	—		—	p.263
		Melody	MENU16		—	p.273
		Chara-den	—		—	p.271
LifeKit	Receive Ir data	MENU79		—	p.280, 281	
	Camera	—		—	p.168, 173	
	Data Sec. Service	—	PH-book img. Sending	OFF	p.158	
	Schedule	MENU45		—	p.288	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
LifeKit	Alarm		MENU44		OFF	p.287
	To Do list		MENU95		—	p.292
	Text memo		MENU42		—	p.299
	Calculator		MENU85		—	p.298
	Play/Erase msg.		(MEMO/ CHECK)		—	p.73
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.74
	Voice memo		MENU43		—	p.295
	Voice announce		MENU91		—	p.296
	UIM operation		—		—	p.102
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.277
Dictionary		—		—	p.300	
Service	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 preinstalled	p.51
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
	Caller ID Notification		MENU17		—	p.44
	Voice Mail		—		—	p.308
	Call Waiting		—		—	p.309
	Call Forwarding		—		—	p.311
	Nuisance Call Blk		—		—	p.312
	Caller ID Request		—		—	p.312
	In-call arrival act		—		Answer	p.314
	Set in-call arrival		—		—	p.314
	Remote Control		—		—	p.315
	Dual Network		—		—	p.312
	English Guidance		—		—	p.313
	Additional service		—		—	p.316
Service Numbers		—		—	p.313	
Multi Number		—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.315	
Phonebook	Phonebook		—		—	p.93, 97
Own data	My Profile		MENU0		—	p.44, 293
	Received calls		MENU24		—	p.62
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.53
	Mail member		MENU97		—	p.220
	Chat group		—		—	p.247
	Choku-Den		—		—	p.107
	Common phrases		MENU38		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1,2)	p.333
	Own dictionary		MENU82		—	p.335
DL dictionary		—		—	p.335	

Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

Stand-by display

◆ Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even



White and Peridot 1



White and Peridot 2



Black and Sapphire 1



Black and Sapphire 2



Pink and Ruby 1



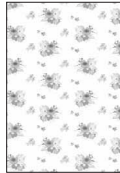
Pink and Ruby 2



KiraGotsu



Herb



Floral



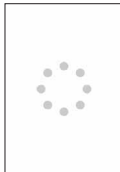
Simple Style



Art Candy



Dogs & Fashion



Wake up

NOTE

◆ “KiraGotsu”, “Floral” and “Dogs & Fashion” are displayed differently each time they are activated.

Frame



White & Peridot

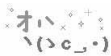


Black & Sapphire



Pink & Ruby

Decomail-picture



Good Morning



Sorry



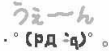
Angry



Hello



Thank You



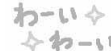
Cry



Good Night



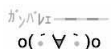
Congratulations



Glad



Good Bye



Fight



Worry



Love



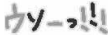
Hate



Shock



Tired



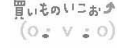
Surprise



Meal



Party



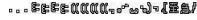
Shopping



Drive



Let's Play



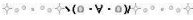
Urgent!



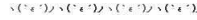
I love you



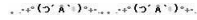
Hmm



Goody



Disgusting



Unhappy



Happy!



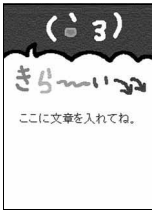
Shocked!

NOTE

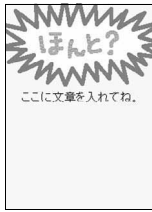
The images of Decomail-pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Auto Decomail-pictures

Emotion	Image
Hurry	
Love	
Hate you	
Happy	
Angry	
Sad	
Fun	
Surprise	



Hate



Surprising

NOTE

◆ The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Marker stamps

Cross	+	Heart1	♥	Heart2	♥	Kiss	💋	Tear	💧	Flame	🔥
Lightning	⚡	Sorry	🙇	Note	🎵	Flower	🌸	Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger	😡
Right	➡	Below	↓	Left	➡	Above	↑	Here	ココ	No. 1	①
No. 2	②	No. 3	③	Party	🎉	OK	◯	NG	✕	Person	👤
Car	🚗	Asleep	z z	Question	?	Surprise	!	Shine	☀	Whirlpool	🌀
Punch	👊	Nose	👃								

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
①	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ
②	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
③	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
④	たちつとと	タチツテト
⑤	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
⑥	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
⑦	まみむめも	マミムメモ
⑧	やゆよ やゆよ	ヤユヨ ヤユヨ
⑨	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
⑩	わをんーわ	ワワンーワ ¹
*	_____ ²	_____
#	* * . ? ! . ³	* * . ? ! . ³

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
[1]	? ! - ¥ & * () # ' ' ' ♥ ☎ ^{*4}	1
[2]	A B C a b c	2
[3]	D E F d e f	3
[4]	G H I g h i	4
[5]	J K L j k l	5
[6]	M N O m n o	6
[7]	P Q R S p q r s	7
[8]	T U V t u v	8
[9]	W X Y Z w x y z	9
[0]	_____	0 + ^{*5}
[*]	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp ^{*6}	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp ^{*6}
[#]	. @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ * 7 & ¥	# . @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ * 7 & ¥

- *1 : Lower case “フ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
- *2 : Pressing [*] switches “Kanji/hiragana input mode” to “Kuten code”.
- *3 : In “Kanji/hiragana input mode” and double-byte “Kana input mode”, “” and “” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. “、”, “、”, “?” , “!” and “.” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.
- *4 : Valid only when composing SMS messages. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “♥” and “☎”. Although symbols appear as single-byte characters, “♥” and “☎” always appear as double-byte characters.
- *5 : “+” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
- *6 : These characters do not appear in double-byte mode (except “*” in numeric input mode).
- *7 : This symbol appears as “” in double-byte input mode.
- : Lower case characters can be entered in the following two methods:
 - Enter an upper case character then press [⇩] to convert it to lower case.
 - Select “Lower case” from the function menu then enter a character.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key	2nd key										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
		か	き	く	け	こ	f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
		さ	し	す	せ	そ	k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
		た	ち	つ	て	と	p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
		な	に	ぬ	ね	の	u	v	w	x	y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	/
	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		↵		
	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		↵		
8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#		↵	”	
	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#		↵	”	
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	、 ³	。 ³	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ	を	ん	、	。	6	7	8	9	0	

Single-byte input mode

Key	2nd key										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
1st key	1	ア ア	イ イ	ウ ウ	エ エ	オ オ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	カ カ	キ キ	ク ク	ケ ケ	コ コ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	サ サ	シ シ	ス ス	セ セ	ソ ソ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	タ タ	チ チ	ツ ツ	テ テ	ト ト	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ナ ナ	ニ ニ	ヌ ヌ	ネ ネ	ノ ノ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ハ ハ	ヒ ヒ	フ フ	ハ ハ	ホ ホ	Z z	? ?	! !	- -	/ /
	7	マ マ	ミ ミ	ム ム	メ メ	モ モ	¥ ¥	& &		^{*2} ☺	
	8	ヤ ヤ	( (	ユ ユ	) )	ヨ ヨ	* *	# #		^{*2} ♥	^{*1} "
	9	ラ @	リ /	ル .	レ -	ロ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5 .
	0	ワ -	ヲ ,	ン .	ゝ .	ゞ .	6 www	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

* A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

*1 : Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time [8][0] is pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press [☺] to convert it to lower case.

*2 : Valid only when "Pictograph" is available, e.g. when you enter "Text memo" or "Common phrases". These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter "Pictograph" but [☺] and "♥" when composing SMS messages.

*3 : In double-byte input mode, "^{*1}" and "^{*2}" appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, "^{*1}" and "^{*2}" are replaced with spaces.

■ : A space is entered.

Key Assignment (T9 input)

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode
[1]	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	1
[2]	か column, 2	カ column, 2	ABCabc2
[3]	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	DEFdef3
[4]	た column, 4	タ column, 4	GHIghi4
[5]	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	JKLjkl5
[6]	は column, 6	ハ column, 6	MNOmno6
[7]	ま column, 7	マ column, 7	PQRSpqrs7
[8]	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8	TUVtuvw8
[9]	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9	WXYZwxyz9
[0]	わを んわー, 0	ワワンウ ^{*3} ー, 0	0
[#]	^{*1,*2}	^{*1,*2}	^{*4}

* For "kana input mode", see "Mode 1 (5-touch input)" key assignments.

* Number candidates do not appear when you enter a reading into a UIM phonebook entry or "Own dictionary".

* Immediately after "Alphabetic (double-byte)" or "Alphabetic (single-byte)" is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in "CapsLock mode" → "Released" → "Shift mode" order each time you press [☺].

* Entered characters are always uppercase in "CapsLock mode". In "Shift mode", only the first character is entered in uppercase, and subsequent characters will be in lowercase. Entered characters are always lowercase when neither mode is selected.

* After a character is confirmed in "Shift mode", the mode is released.

*1 : Candidates are switched between "^{*1}" (dakuten) and "^{*2}" (han-dakuten) when a reading is entered.

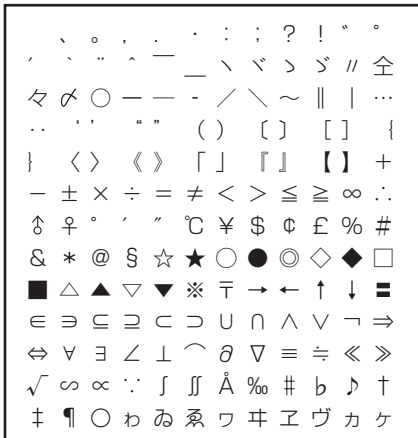
*2 : After confirming a reading and characters, "^{*1}", "^{*2}", "^{*3}", "^{*4}", "^{*5}", "^{*6}", "^{*7}" and "^{*8}" appear as well as in Mode 1 (5-touch input). "^{*9}" (dakuten) and "^{*10}" (han-dakuten) appear only in single-byte kana input mode or when they can be attached to the previous character.

*3 : Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.

*4 : After confirming characters, “,” “@” “/” “?” “!” “(” “)” “,” “—” “_” “.” “:” “;” “,” “~” “&” and “¥” appear as is in Mode 1 (5-touch).

Symbols and Special Characters

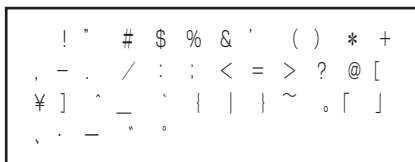
Full pitch 1



Full pitch 2



Half pitch



*: “♥” and “☎” appear when entering SMS message body.

Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting “きごう” to display the symbol candidates then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the following characters then convert the text into the desired symbol.

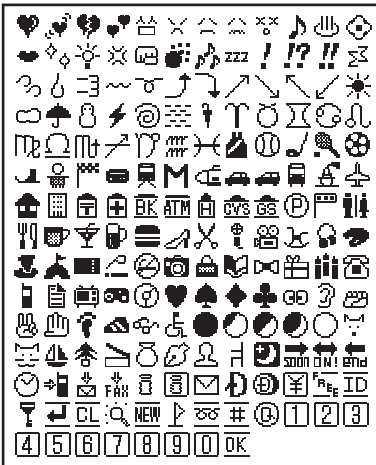
Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いごーる	=
えん	¥
おす	♂
おなじ	々
おなじく	//
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() [] {} ◇ 《 》 「 」 『 』 “ ” ” ” () {} []

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	~
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	/ \
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	♂
たす	+
どう	\\ \ \ \ // \ \ \ \
ぱーせんと	%

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	-
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆☆
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

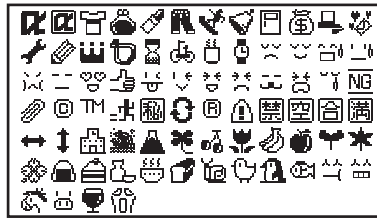
Pictograph 1



NOTE

- Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Pictograph 2



Smiley Face Symbols

Smiley Face Symbols

Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol
ありがとう (Thanks)	m(◡)m	はてな (Wait a minute!)	(. . ?)	なむい (I'm sleepy)	(p_~)
ばんざい (Hurrah)	∖(◡)∕	もろろ (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)	めも (Memo)	φ(。)
わーい (Wow!)	(◡)◡	しくしく (Shob, sob)	(T.T)	うん (Yeah)	(◡) (。)
わーい (Wow!)	(◡)	さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T.T)∕	かんばい (Cheer up!)	(◡)∕∇☆∇∕ (◡)
わーい (Wow!)	(*◡*)	いたた (Ouch!)	◡_◡	ども (Well, well)	∖(◡)∕
わーい (Wow!)	◡(∇^◡)◡(◡^∇)◡	いたた (Ouch!)	(><)	がまん (Patient)	(;_∩)
わーい (Wow!)	(≧∇≦)	えーん (Crying)	(; ;)	こんにちは (Hello!)	∇(=∇^=)∕
おーい (Hey!)	(◡)∕	えーん (Crying)	(∇)	こんにちは (Hello!)	(∇^∇)
ぶい (Vvvv!)	(◡)∇	えーん (Crying)	Ω.Δ.Ω;	こんにちは (Hello!)	(●^∇^●)∕
ぎゃはは (Ha-ha)	(◡)∇^∇	えーん (Crying)	∇.∇.∇.	いいな (You lucky!)	(◡)ω<◡)
あは (Ah ha!)	(◡^◡^◡)	えーん (Crying)	◡.◡.∇.◡.◡.	いいな (You lucky!)	(◡^∇^◡)
あは (Ah ha!)	◡^∇	えーん (Crying)	(T ω ∇)	いいな (You lucky!)	(m^∇^m)
にこ (Smile!)	(^~^)	なぜ (Why?)	(??)	うーん (Hmm)	(~^~);
にこ (Smile! smile)	(*^~*)	がーん (Shocked!)	(∇ □ ;)!!	てれる (Embarrassed)	∇^∇ ;
にこ (Smile!)	(◡^∇^◡)	がーん (Shocked!)	(∇)	てれる (Embarrassed)	(* / ω *)
にこ (Smile!)	(◡^∇^◡)	がーん (Shocked!)	Σ(∇ □ ;)	てれる (Embarrassed)	(∇^∇∇)
にこ (Smile!)	(^∇^●)	えーん (Ahem!)	(∇)	てれる (Embarrassed)	(≧ω≦)
にこ (Smile!)	(●^∇^●)	む (Sullen)	(- - ∇)	しあわせ (Happy!)	+。(*^∇^)。+
にこ (Smile!)	(◡^∇^◡)	む (Sullen)	◡(∇^∇)◡	しあわせ (Happy!)	∇(∇^∇)∕
ちゅ (Kiss)	(◡)∕	いかり (Angry)	(∇)	しあわせ (Happy!)	(*^∇^*)
ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss)	(ε^∇^☆Chu!!	むか (Offended)	G_+^+	なかよし (Pat)	^~^)∇(∇^∇)
わくわく (I'm excited)	◡(∇^∇)◡	むか (Offended)	(∇^)	ごめん (Sorry)	(*c*)
ういんく (Wink)	(^~)	むか (Offended)	(∇^)	いじいじ (Mopey)	φ(。 ;)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(◡)∇	こそそ (Whisper)	(. . .)	いじわる (Wicked)	ψ(∇^∇^#)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(∇)	じーっ (Gaze)	(- -)	よろしく (Thank you)	☆^∇(∇^~*)

Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol	Reading	Face symbol
がんば (Cheer up!)	p(☺)q	きこえない (Can't hear)	(-_-)	こまった (Good god!)	>><<
ね (Isn't it?)	(☺)b	こまったんだ (My goodness)	(~~~~)ε	やだ (No!)	(O><)
ほりほり (Scratch, scratch)	(☺)s	ぶたー (Pig)	)0^(	へこむ (Feel down)	(☹)
ひやあせ (Cold Sweats)	(☺)^;	こあら (Koala)	(-Q-)	へこむ (Feel down)	(☹)
あせあせ (Sweat Sweat!)	G;~A	いっぶく (Take a break)	(^)^y	びっくり (Ack!)	(o D O)
びくっ (Twitch!)	(* *)	いっぶく (Take a break)	(^)^y~	びっくり (Ack!)	w(° 0°)w
どき (Shocked!)	(@-@);	ぼし (Star)	☆ε	だっしゆ (Dash)	ε = (* .)
え (What?)	(@ @);	ねてる (Zzzz...)	(-_-)zz		
めがてん (WHAT?)	(* . ;)	ねむい (I'm sleepy)	\ (0) /		

NOTE

- ◆ Face symbols can be entered from “Face Mark” under the Text entry (edit) function menu. →p.330

Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Newly established communication Current communication	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode ^{*6}	i-mode mail	
	Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving		Sending	Receiving
During a voice call	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△ ^{*3}	—	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×
During i-mode ^{*6}	○	○	△ ^{*5}	△ ^{*7}	—	○	○
During packet communication with a PC	×	○	×	×	×	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△ ^{*3}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×

Newly established communication Current communication	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication	
	Sending	Receiving	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ ^{*3}
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}
During i-mode ^{*6}	○	○	×	×	×	×
During packet communication with a PC	×	○	—	—	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

*1 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to make another call.

*2 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.313

*3 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding", you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. → p.313

*4 : An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode center. You can receive a stored i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF by performing "Check new messages" after the current communication ends.

*5 : Make a videophone call after disconnecting the current i-mode.

*6 : Includes i-channel site view.

*7 : If "V-phone while packet" is set to "V-phone priority", answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.

*8 : It is logged as a missed call.

Services Available for the FOMA terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- ◆ When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of November, 2006)
- ◆ When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability or the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of November, 2006)
- ◆ When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- ◆ Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.
- ◆ If you are using a "Call Forwarding" service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- ◆ Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are not available (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001^{*1}/P002^{*1}
- Stereo Earphone Set P001^{*1}
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Battery Pack N15
- Back Cover N16
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*2}
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case S 01
- Bone Conduction Microphone/Receiver 01

*1 : To connect to FOMA N601i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.





*2 : To charge FOMA N601i, the FOMA In-car Hands-free Cable 01 is required.

Movie Playing Software






- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>
 - To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
 - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

- Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
“Updating Software” → p.364




Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out? 	p.38 p.41
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The battery has run out. Charge the battery. 	p.41
The “  ” icon appears and I hear a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.42
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Key Operation lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set? 	p.152 p.154
I dialed a number and initiated a call, but all I hear is a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is “” displayed? ● Is “Please wait” displayed? 	p.46 p.46 p.42
I cannot receive calls or I cannot hear the ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is any of the following functions set? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Restrictions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Call rejection · Call acceptance · Call forwarding · Voice Mail Ring time(sec.) · Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID · Unknown: Reject · Payphone: Reject · User unset: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to “0”? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to “Silent”? 	p.154 p.157 p.157 p.156 p.117 p.67 p.158 p.308 p.311 p.312 p.312 p.65
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set “Set mute seconds” to shorter time. 	p.157
The records of Dialed calls, Redial, Sent address disappear automatically	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is “Restrict dialing” under “Restrictions” set? 	p.154
The ring tone sounding when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. 	p.114
The image appearing when receiving a voice call or videophone call is different from what I selected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. 	p.122
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or pattern of the incoming call lamp flashing is different from what I set up	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. 	p.127






Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default. 	—
The ring tone sounding when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds. 	<p>p.114</p> <p>p.106</p> <p>p.106</p>
A string appears instead of image or i-motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following indicate that the image or i-motion cannot be selected for the function. Select an image or i-motion that will not display the following: "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data" 	<p>p.255</p> <p>p.263</p>
The color of the illumination flashing when receiving a message is different from what I selected for the mail address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. If the format of the sender's mail address is "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). Is the sender's mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail details screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes. 	<p>p.127</p> <p>p.106</p> <p>p.106</p>
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal)? 	<p>p.38</p> <p>p.40</p> <p>p.40</p>
The key does not sound when I press it	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? Is the FOMA terminal in manner mode? 	<p>p.115</p> <p>p.117</p>
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call. 	p.61
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? Is anything e.g. a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker? Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly. 	<p>p.24</p> <p>p.65</p>
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly. 	p.65
Pressing the external keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"? 	p.153
Pressing (MEMO/CHECK) does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? Is "External keys guard" set to "ON"? 	<p>p.70</p> <p>p.153</p>
The date is displayed in Japanese	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is "Japanese" selected as the language? 	p.129





Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The display is not clearly seen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is the brightness of the backlight set to "Level 1"? ● Is Privacy angle set to "ON"? 	p.123
The backlight of the display does not turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is Lighting of the backlight set to "OFF"? ● Press and hold [5] for 1 second or longer to turn the backlight on or off. Note that pressing and holding [5] for 1 second or longer will turn off the backlight e.g. while composing a message. 	p.123
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then. 	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding  for 1 second or longer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data. 	p.104
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.," is set to "ON". 	p.157
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform "Reset total". 	p.297
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender's name stored in the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Did you correctly store the sender's phone number on the phone number line () of the phonebook? 	p.93
A message is not automatically filtered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number) @docomo.ne.jp", save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number) @docomo.ne.jp", save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings. 	p.235
A message is not automatically received	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF". 	p.223 p.242
i-mode, i-mode mail and i-channel cannot be connected	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Host selection" set to "i-mode"? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on. 	p.194 —
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Is "Mail/Msg. ring time" set to "OFF"? ● Is "Receiving display" set to "Operation preferred"? 	p.116 p.242
The message "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) appears on a mail message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode center and you receive only the message. 	p.222
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS. A message appears when I retry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message. 	—
A file attached to a message sent from a PC was deleted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If the image file is GIF-formatted, which was attached to a message sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received. 	—
Still images or movies look blurred	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot. 	p.174
Attempting to display an image displays "  " or Attempting to play for demonstration or see a preview displays " 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● " " may appear when the image data is corrupted. 	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal. 	—
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time. 	—


If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode center.

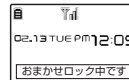
Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set.	p.154
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you attempt to forward an i-mode message. Press  to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press "Cancel" on the authentication screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the previous page.	—
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file is 10,000 bytes or more.	p.218
"Cannot save attached file"	● Displayed when you receive a mail, via infrared communication or cable-connected communication, with an attached file that cannot be registered.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● Displayed when you receive a schedule, via infrared communication or cable-connected communication, with the same date and time for another schedule that has already been registered.	—
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new messages is set all OFF"	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in "Set check new messages". Select items to check in "Set check new messages".	p.244
"Connection failed (403)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" under Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.194 —
"Connection failed"	● Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and retry.	p.44
"Connection interrupted"	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears even when the reception is good and "  appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later.	p.180 —
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	● The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer.	—
"Download failed"	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
"Editing now Cannot delete"	● This message appears when you attempt to delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
"Enter correct Network Security Code"	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.138

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data. 	—
"Error Register forwarding number"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call Forwarding" from the function menu without setting the forwarding number. 	p.311
"Function cannot operate any more"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exit the function before operating. 	—
"Input error (205)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press  to reset the entered text (The setting or entry made is sent. This operation does not cancel sending). 	—
"Insert UIM"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted. 	p.35
"Invalid address"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The address contains a "." and is invalid. Delete any ".". The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, "#", and "X". Delete any spaces or characters other than numbers, "#", and "X". 	—
"Invalid UIM Requested service not available"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. 	p.36
"Invalid URL"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL on the "Home URL" screen or entering a URL on the "Enter URL" screen. Enter a URL correctly. 	p.186 p.194
"Memory full Cannot move"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer. 	p.145
"Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. This message appears when you attempt to add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press  to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select , and enter an available memory number or use  to select Auto to add it. 	p.143 p.101
"Memory shortage Quit"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the combination of character types. 	—
"Memory shortage Return and edit again"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can insert up to 10 images to a Deco-mail message. However, in some operations, this message may appear even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select "YES" to exit the Compose message screen. 	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the i-mode menu. 	—
"Message too long to add header & signature"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/signature added. 	—
"Message too long to add header"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added. 	—
"Message too long to add signature"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added. 	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"No content is available (204)"	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the site.	—
"No data"	● This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	p.97
(During infrared data exchange) "No response Retry?"	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared data ports face each other. Select "YES" and press  to try again.	p.277
"No response (408)"	● No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
"No Switch"	● This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party's status and retry.	p.48
"Other function active Cannot start" "Other function active Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running.	—
"Out of service area"	● This message appears when you attempt to use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move until "  " appears, then use the i-mode service.	p.180
"Page is not found (404)"	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
"Password is not correct (401)"	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	—
"PIN1 code blocked"	● This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press  to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock.	p.140
"Please wait for a while (packet)"	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	—
"Please wait"	● The voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the voice line/packet communication network may be congested. Attempt to use a voice call, videophone call or i-mode later. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	—
"PUK blocked"	● This message appears when you attempt to power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.139
"Reading UIM Cannot start"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
"Receiving failed Channel information cannot display"	● This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you attempt to display the channel list screen after changing the i-channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-channel information cannot be obtained. Move until "  " appears, then retry to display the channel list screen.	p.204
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion whose playback period has expired. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"Replay period has expired"	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion whose playback period has expired.	—
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". ● This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website.	p.198 p.183

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Root certificate is not valid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you receive an SSL certificate with the "Certificate" set to "Invalid". Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect. 	p.198
"Service is not registered"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on. 	—
"Size of this page is not supported"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character. 	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid. 	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press  to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. 	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection. 	—
"SSL session failed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection. 	—
"Syntax error" "Syntax error (XXX)"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in "XXX". 	—
"Talking now Cannot start" "Talking now Cannot operate"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call. 	p.352
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO". 	p.184
"The data may not be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4). 	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". This message appears when you attempt to access an SSL website but the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting. 	p.198 p.43
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". 	p.198
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to play i-motion with no playback count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion. 	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you select a desktop icon for i-motion with no playback count remaining. 	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you attempt to acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion. 	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise, select "NO". 	p.198
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This message appears when the inserted FOMA card cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted. 	p.35
"Time out"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in "Set connection timeout", has elapsed. Retry later. 	p.194
"Too much data was entered"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend. 	p.184

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
"Unable to receive"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed"	● The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.	—
"URL address changed (301)"	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.130 p.187 p.194
"URL is too long to register"	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Usage is currently restricted Try again later"	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.139
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select "YES" to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.199
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● The site requests the user certificate, but the validity period has expired. Select "YES", and you may be able to continue. It is recommended to download a new certificate.	p.199
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	● The site requests the user certificate. Select "YES" to send the certificate, otherwise "NO".	—
"おまかせロック中です"	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off.	p.142



NOTE

- ◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.
- ◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that a warranty is included when you purchase a mobile phone. Check the contents, the information about “the shop or date of purchase”, etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty is valid for one year from the date of purchase written on the warranty.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode are not transferred to a repaired mobile phone due to copyright law.
 - * Using the Data Security Service (a pay service requiring subscription) allows you to store data such as phonebook on your FOMA terminal in the Data Security Center.
 - * If you have a PC (Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.

If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- Repairs will be made free of charge based on the provisions of the warranty.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges will apply even when the mobile phone is still under warranty if the warranty card is not submitted, or if malfunction or damage is the result of mishandling by the subscriber.
- Charges will apply even within the warranty period for repairs resulting from use of devices and accessories not specified by DoCoMo.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

Mobile phones cannot be repaired in the following cases: the water exposure detection sticker shows water exposure; tests determine that corrosion has occurred due to water exposure, condensation, or perspiration; or the circuit board has been damaged or altered. These cases are not covered by the warranty, and any repairs that may be possible will be carried out at the subscriber's expense.

■ After the warranty period has expired

Repairs can be carried out upon request but at the subscriber's expense.

■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure part repairs may not be able to perform owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

Important

- Do not attempt to modify phones or accessories.
 - Modification may result in fire, injury, or malfunction.
- Technical standards have been established by law in order to prevent radio wave interference and network disruption. Mobile phones or cards that do not meet these technical standards cannot be used.
- Repairs to mobile phones that have been modified (disassembled, altered, painted, etc.) will only be carried out if the user agrees to have the mobile phone restored to its original state in line with DoCoMo standards. Requests for repair of modified mobile phones may be rejected.
- If malfunction or damage occurs as a result of modification, charges will apply even if the mobile phone is still under warranty.
- Do not peel off the manufacturer's specification sticker put on the FOMA terminal.
The manufacturer's specification sticker certifies that the mobile phone meets technical standards. It may not be possible to carry out repairs if the specifications cannot be confirmed because the sticker has been removed, altered, etc.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components:
speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading or repairing your FOMA terminal may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with the substitute instead of repairing. In this case, some data cannot be transferred to the substitute terminal. (Images/ring tones downloaded from the i-mode official site will be transferred at the time of repair. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, there may be cases where the contents cannot be transferred depending on the malfunction condition.)

<Software Update>

Updating Software



Check if your phone needs an update, and if necessary, download and update the required software via packet communications.

The latest information regarding software updates can be viewed on the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ” (News) under iMenu.

- Packet communications charges do not apply to perform software updates.
- Software may be updated in the following two methods: Immediate update and Timer update
Immediate update: The software update is performed at once.
Timer update: A time and date can be designated to perform the software update automatically.
- You can update software if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Software updates (downloading and rewriting) may take time.
- Software updates are performed via SSL communications with the server at NTT DoCoMo. It is therefore necessary to have a valid certificate. (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure→ p.198).
- Make sure that the mobile phone battery is fully charged when performing software updates.
- It is recommended that you perform software updates when the handset is stationary and in a location with good signal quality (three bars for the antenna icon).
 - * If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a location with good signal quality.
- Updating software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make/receive calls or perform communication until you enter the correct PIN1 code.

- You cannot update software:
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
 - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
 - While PIN lock is set
 - When the PUK code is locked
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When you receive a call
 - When you receive a message or SMS
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During i-mode communication
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - While Dial lock is set
 - While Omakase Lock is set/While Self mode is set
 - While Original lock is set
 - When you are out of range
 - While Key Operation lock is set
 - When packet dialing is restricted
 - When you are using mova terminal for the Dual Network service
 - While another function is running
- Calls, communications and other functions are not available while software is being updated, though voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to “ON” and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by NTT DoCoMo). The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is used only for updating software.
- It is possible to perform software updates while keeping your Phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data and other data saved on the phone intact. However, note that in some cases data cannot be protected depending on the condition of your mobile phone (malfunction, damage, water exposure, etc.).
- It is recommended that you back up necessary data. (Note that it may not be possible to back up some data such as downloaded data.)
- If the update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” will appear and all operations will become unavailable. In this case, please seek advice at a repair counter designated by DoCoMo.

NOTE

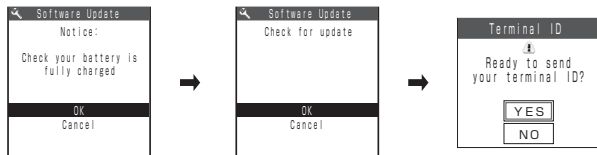
- ◆ Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- ◆ When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon “” (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select  and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Checking whether software update is required

1  ► “Settings” ► “Other settings” ► “Software Update” ► Enter your security code

2 Check the notes ► Check whether software update is required

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



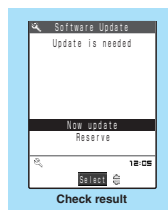
3 The check result appears

■ When “Update is needed” appears

- ▶ Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → p.366

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time. → p.367



■ When “No update is needed” appears

- ▶ 


Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

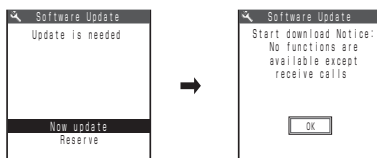


Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 Check result screen (p.366) ▶ “Now update” ▶ Press when “Start download” appears

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press .



2 After download is finished and the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press

Software update will start.


Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press . It may take long to start rewriting.

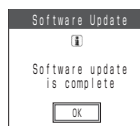


All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.

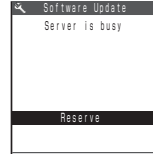
After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been

completed. When the message “Software update is complete” appears, press . Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- ◆ If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- ◆ Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically hereafter without having to select any menus.
- ◆ The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
In this case, select "Reserve" to perform the reserved update.



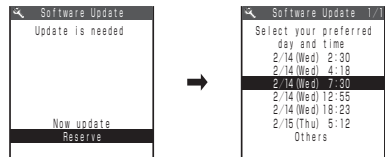
Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: To reserve 7:30 on February 14 (Wednesday)>

1 Check result screen (p.366) ▶ "Reserve" ▶ Select date and time

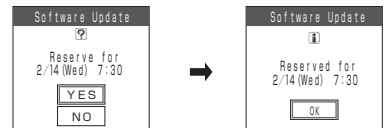
- If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown
▶ "Others" → p.368



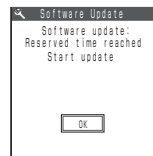
2 Check the selected date and time ▶ "YES"

Software update is reserved.

- If you want to change the date and/or time
▶ "NO"



The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as "Updating software immediately <Now update>" (p.366).



NOTE

- ◆ The reserved time for software update will be based on the server's time.
- ◆ When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- ◆ Software update may not launch at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- ◆ If the scheduled time is reached while you are on the phone or receiving a call or message, software update launches after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- ◆ If you perform "Initialize" (p.305) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not launch at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

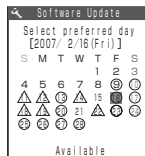
● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and time if you select “Others” in Step 1 on p.367.

1 Select a desired date

On the selection screen, it is shown as below how the hours are reserved for each day:

- : Available
- △: Almost full
- None: Full

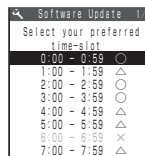


2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, it is shown as below if each hour is available:

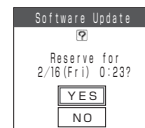
- : Available
- △: Almost full
- X: Full

Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting “YES” will communicate with the server again. Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: To cancel the reservation after checking it>

1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Software Update” ▶ Enter your security code

2 “Cancel”

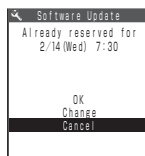
- To accept the reserved date and time

▶ “OK”

- To change the date and time

▶ “Change”

After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting “Others”. → p.368

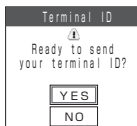


3 When the message “Cancel this reservation?” appears, select “YES”

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.

When the message “The reservation is canceled” appears, press [OK]. The reservation is canceled.



Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program launch where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. → p.369
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by NTT DoCoMo). The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

Default setting
ON

Setting the scanning function to “ON” will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

1 [MENU] ▶ “Settings” ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “Scanning function”

The “Scanning function” screen appears.

2 “Set scan” ▶ “ON”

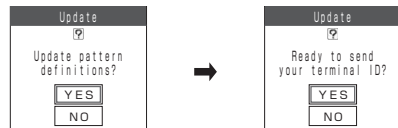
- If a message appears asking whether to change the settings
▶ “YES”

* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels. → p.370



Updating pattern data <Update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.369) ▶ “Update” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES”



* If no pattern data update is required, the message “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” appears. Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

- ◆ Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode, packet communication, dial lock activated or original lock activated or while another function is running.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

1 Scanning function screen (p.369) ▶ “Set auto-update” ▶ “ON” ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES”

Viewing the scan results

Viewing scanned problems

```

Following problems
were detected
Problem element1
Problem element2
Problem element3
Problem element4
Problem element5
Other:xxxx
[Return]
    
```

The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.

The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:

1 - 9998 : The remaining count appears as it is.
 9999 or more : "Other:9999" appears regardless of the count.

Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> Operation may not run properly </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> Operation may not run properly Cancel operation? </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> Operation may not run properly Canceling operation </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> Operation may not run properly Delete data? </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;"> Operation may not run properly Deleting data </div>
[Set] . . . Continues operation.	[Cancel] Cancels and ends operation. [Continue] Continues operation.	[Set] . . . Cancels and ends operation.	[Delete] Deletes data and ends operation. [Return] Cancels and ends operation.	[Set]. . . Deletes data and ends operation.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

1 Scanning function screen (p.369) ▶ “Version”

Specifications

Items		FOMA N601i	
Size		Height 92mm x Width 44mm x Thickness 18mm (When closed)	
Weight		Approx. 88g (Battery pack attached)	
Color LCD	Type	Display (Internal): TFT LCD 65,536 colors	
	Size	Display (Internal): Approx. 2.1 inches	
	Pixels	Display (Internal): 82,800 pixels (240 x 345)	
Continuous Standby Time		Stationary: Approx. 700 hrs. In transit: Approx. 520 hrs.	
Continuous Talk Time		Voice communications: Approx. 210 min. Videophone: Approx. 140 min.	
Maximum Output		0.25W	
Battery Type		Lithium-ion	
Battery Voltage		3.8V	
Battery Capacity		830mAh	
Charging Time		AC Adapter/DC Adapter: Approx. 120 min.	
Image Sensor	Type	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS	
	Size	Front Camera: 1/8 inches Rear Camera: 1/8 inches	
Camera	Effective Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 0.33 mill. pixels	
	Maximum Recorded Pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 mill. pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 0.31 mill. pixels	
	Digital Zoom	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2X Rear Camera: Up to approx. 2X	
Record	Still Image	Shooting Size	VGA (640 dots wide x 480 dots high) CIF (352 dots wide x 288 dots high) Screen (240 dots wide x 345 dots high) Stand-by (240 dots wide x 320 dots high) QCIF (176 dots wide x 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide x 96 dots high)
		File Format	JPEG
	Movie	Movie Shooting Size	QCIF (176 dots wide x 144 dots high) SubQCIF (128 dots wide x 96 dots high)
		Movie File Format	MP4
		Frame Rate	Up to 15 fps

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode mail even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time in stationary is an average time for use in stationary condition allowing normal reception of the radio waves when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average time for use in various condition of "stationary", "moving" within the area allowing normal reception of the radio waves and "out of service area" when folding the FOMA terminal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when run data communications or multi access, or use the camera.

Counts for Storage, Register and Protect Enabled on FOMA Terminal

Item		Storage/Register	Protect
Phonebook		700 max. ^{*1}	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
To Do		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Received mail	1,000 max. ^{*2*3*4}	500 max. ^{*2}
	Sent mail	400 max. ^{*2*3*4}	200 max. ^{*2}
	Draft mail	20	—
Deco-mail template		45 ^{*5}	—
Message	MessageR	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
	MessageF	100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
Bookmark	i-mode	100 ^{*6}	—
Screen memo		100 max. ^{*2}	50 max. ^{*2}
Still image		260 max. ^{*2*4}	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max. ^{*2*6}	—
Chara-den		10 ^{*5}	—
Melody		200 max. ^{*2}	—

*1 : Up to 50 phonebooks can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

*2 : Actual storable or registerable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.

*3 : For SMS, up to 20 mails can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM) combining received mails with sent mails.
→ p.252

*4 : Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.

*5 : Pre-installed data is included.

*6 : Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.322) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Take notes, use DoCoMo keitai datalink to save data in your PC just in case.

Specific Absorption Rate of Mobile Phones

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones

This model phone FOMA N601i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 1.54 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/> (Japanese only)

NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (Japanese only)

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: <http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html> (Japanese only)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications

** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

● Index/Quick Manual

Index	388
Quick Manual	396

Index

Index search

- This Index functions as an alphabetical contents as well. There provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot find the item you looking for, use the other keyword to search.

<Example: To download Chara-den>

Chara-den	83, 271
Action	271
Control	271
Delete	272
Display	271
Download	192
Guide to the Chara-den list	271
Memory info	272
Set image disp.	273

Download	
Chara-den	192
Data file	192
image	190
i-motion	201
melody	191
User Certificate	199

- "Function" index is included following "Alphabet/Numeric" section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.33).

Alphabet/Numeric

A

AC adapter	40
Access site (program)	
Viewing sites	181
Accessories	353
Activate notice call	309
Add	
Bookmark	187
Original menu	126
Schedule	288
To Do list	292
Additional service	316
Address list	241
Adjust volume	
Ring volume	65
Volume	65
After-sales service	363
Alarm	285, 287
Actions	285
Check	286
Stop	286
Alarm setting	285
Answer hold	66
Answer setting	61
AT command	322
Attached file	242
Auto Deco-mail	216
Auto dial setting	302
Auto redial as voice (videophone)	84
Auto reset total cost	297
Auto timer	177
Automatic answer	303

Automatic display	108
-------------------------	-----

B

Backlight	123
Battery	38
Charging	40
Getting the best out of battery pack	39
Life	39
Battery level	41
Battery pack	38
Big font	99, 100, 102, 294, 305
Bookmark	187
Add	187
Delete	189
Edit title	188
Folder	188
No. of bookmarks	188
View	188

C

Cable connection (data transfer)	277
Calculator	298
Calendar	121
Call	
Making	46
Receiving	60
Call acceptance	154
Call data	296
Call Forwarding	154, 311
Call forwarding services	311
Call rejection	154
Call setting w/o ID	156
Call time display	128
Call Waiting	309
Caller ID Notification	44
Caller ID Request	312

Camera	162
Auto timer	177
Brightness	168
Color mode set	174
Front camera	162
Guide to the shooting screen	165
Image shooting	168
Image size	162
Movie shooting	173
Number of images	163
Number of movies	163
Photo mode	174
Rear camera	162
Shooting menu	166
White balance	174
Zoom	176
Cancel	
Mail security	153
Manner mode	117
Public mode (Driving mode)	67
Public mode (power off)	68
Restrictions	154
Secret data only mode	143
Secret mode	143
Certificate	198
Certificate host	200
Chaku-moji	51
Chance capture	175
Change CHR code	182
Change window	336
Changing voice call/	
Videophone call	48, 81
Character input set	325
Mode 1(5-touch)	325
Mode 2(2-touch)	326
Mode 3(T9 input)	326

Character stamp	263	Data Security Service	158	i-motion	201
Chara-den	83, 271	Image	258	Melody	191
Action	271	Log check	110	User certificate	199
Control	271	Mail	239	Download dictionary	335
Delete	272	Phonebook	109	Draft(mail)	210, 220
Display	271	DC adapter	40	Dual Network	312
Download	192	Deco-mail	214		
Guide to the Chara-den list	271	Delete		E	
Memory info	272	Bookmark	189	Earphone	116
Set image disp.	273	Chara-den	272	Earphone/microphone with switch ...	301
Charge sound	115	Desktop icon	131	Edit	
Charging	40	Dialed calls	54	Draft mail	220
Chat group	247	Draft mail	220	Image	261
Chat mail	244	Image	257, 258	Movie	268
Chat group	247	Melody	274	Phonebook	101
Chat mail recv.	246	MessageR/MessageF	198	Edit image	261
Chat member	244	Movie	265	Brightness	262
Chat settings	248	Phonebook	102	Change size	262
Composing chat mail	245	Received calls	64	Character stamp	262
Check messages (Voice Mail)	309	Received mail	237, 240	Composite image out of 4 images	259
Check missed calls	70	Redial	54	Correct backlight	262
Check new messages	224	Screen memo	189, 190	Frame	262
Check settings	194	Sent mail	238, 240	Marker stamp	262
Check SMS	251	SMS	250	Refresh skin tone	262
Checkbox	32, 184	Text	331	Retouch	262
CHG input size	325	URL	187	Rotate	262
Choku-Den	107	Desktop	130	Trim away	263
Making a call	107	Desktop icon	130	Edit movie	268
Registering	107	Access data or function	131	Edit ticker	269
Clear learned	335	Add	130	Rerecord sound	269
Clock Alarm Tone set	115	Check	131	Trim for image	268
Clock display	129	Notice	131	Trim for mail	270
Code number		Dialed calls	53	Trim i-motion	269
i-mode password	138, 186	Dial lock	141	Editing and storing common phrases	333
Network security code	138	Release	142		
PIN1 code and PIN2 code	138	Set	142	Edit ticker	269
Security code	138	Dictionary	300	Emotion-expressing mail	223
Color mode set (camera)	174	Discern connect	105	English Guidance	313
Common phrases	351	Discern group	105	Entering common phrases	332
Compose message	211	Display		Entering pictographs	341
Component Names and Functions ...	24	Backlight	123	Enter PIN1 code	140
Components	22	Call time	128	Erase	
Continuous mode	170	Changing the menu display	124	Record message	73
Continuous standby time	39	Clock	129	Ring volume	65
Continuous talk time	39	Color, background	124	Voice announce	296
Copy		Display setting	119	Voice memo	73
Phonebook	102	Font	128	VP message	74
SMS	252	Guide	27	Error messages	358
Text	334	Image (My picture)	255	External keys guard	153
Copyright	20	Mail	228	External microphone	302
Copy/cut text	334	My Profile	44		
Create/edit/delete folders		Phonebook image	122	F	
Bookmark	188	Style mode	134	Face Mark	330
Data box	276	Display design	124	FirstPass	199
Mail	234	Display home	182	Function list screen	157
Creating an original menu	127	Disp. PH-book image	122	Flash movies	185
		DoCoMo keitai datalink	322	Flat-plug earphone/microphone with Switch (optional)	301
D		Download		Making a call	302
Data box	254	Chara-den	192	Receiving a call	302
Data communication	319	Data file	192		
Data Security Center	158	Image	190		

Mail setting	242	Image list	257	Noise reduction	58
Move trash box	237, 240	Image shooting,		Notice designate calls	297
No. of messages for draft mail	220	Continuous shooting	168	Alarm action	298
No. of messages for		Melody list	274	Check the details	298
Received mail	236	Movie list	265	No. of messages/memos	
No. of messages for sent mail	238	Movie shooting	174	Mail	220, 236, 238
Open folder	234	Menu display set	124	MessageR/MessageF	198
Outbox	210, 228	Menu function list	338	Screen memo	189
Preview	212	Message auto-display	193	Template	218
Protect ON/OFF for		Message display	242	Ntfy switch-mode	87
received mail	236, 239	Message list display	194	Nuisance Call Blk	312
Protect ON/OFF for sent mail	238, 240	Message service		NW search mode	303
Quotation marks	243	Check new messages	197		
Reading mail messages	228	Delete	198	O	
Receive option	223	Filter	198	OBEX	316
Receiving	221	Guide to the screen	196	OFF	
Receiving image mail	227	No. of messages	198	Call acceptance	154
Reply	225	Protect ON/OFF	198	Call Forwarding	154
Reply with quote	225	Receive	195	Call rejection	154
Resend	240	Sort	197	Protect screen memo	189, 190
Save	220	View	195, 197	Restrict dialing	154
Saving address, adding		Missed calls display	157	Voice Mail	154
Phonebook entry	226	Mobile phone manufacturer number ..	184	OFFICEED	316
Saving images	227	Move		Omakase Lock	141
Saving i-motion	227	SMS (to the FOMA card (UIM))	252	Options	22, 353
Saving melody	227	SMS (to the FOMA terminal (phone))		Original animation	260
Search mail	236, 238	.....	252	Original lock	147
Secret code	101	Movie	263	Original manner	118
Secret folder	145	Add folder	276	Original menu	33, 126, 127
Sending	211	Delete	265	Outbox(mail)	210, 228
Signature	243	Delete folder	276	Overwrite	330
Sort (Received mail)	237	Guide to preview	264	Own dictionary	335
Sort (Sent mail)	238	Guide to the title list	264		
Sort folder	234	Memory info	265	P	
Template list	345	Move folder	265	Packet communication	320
Mail list disp.	242	Operations during playback	266	Password → Refer to code number	
Mail member	220	Playing movies	263	Paste text	334
Mail menu	210	Playlist playback	268	Pause dial	55
Mail security	153	Select multiple data	276	Phone To function	192
Mail settings	242	Movie playing software	354	Phonebook	92
Mail To function	193	Movie shooting	173	Add to phonebook	
Mail/Msg. ring time	116	Auto timer	177	(from another screen)	95
Main menu	29	Chance capture	175	Add to phonebook (Phone)	93
Malfunction checklist	355	Image size	163	Add to phonebook (UIM)	94
Manner mode	117	Number of movies	163	Choku-Den detail screen	107
Manner mode set	117	Picture voice	175	Delete data	102
Manufacturer number	184	Shooting settings	176	Edit phonebook	101
Marker stamp	262	Voice mode	176	Group setting	96
Melody	273	Zoom	176	Making a call	97
Add folder	276	Multi access	284	Search phonebook	97
Delete	274	Combination patterns	352	Secret code	101
Delete folder	276	Multi Number	315	Storage status	104
Download	191	My Menu	186	Store at DSC	109
Guide to the melody list	273	My picture	255	Photo mode	168, 174
Memory info	274	Guide to the picture list and		Pictograph	330, 350
Move folder	274	Title list	255	Picture voice	175
Operations during playback	274	My Profile	44, 293	PIN lock	140
Play melody	273			PIN setting	139
Playlist playback	275			PIN unlock	140
Memory info		N		PIN1/PIN2 codes	138
Chara-den list	272	Network security code	138	Change	140
		Network service	308		

Sending	249
SMS report	250
UIM operation	102, 252
Software key	26
Software Update	364
Sound effect	114, 194
Sound effect (i-mode)	194
SRS_WOW	114
SSL certificate	198
Standby screen	121
Start attachment (auto)	194, 242
Store	
Choku-Den	107
Common phrases	333
Mail member	220
Own data (My Profile)	293
Own dictionary	335
Phonebook (Phone)	93
Phonebook (UIM)	94
Storing and showing personal data ..	294
Style mode	134
Sub-address setting	58
Subtitle	269
Super silent	118
Symbols	330
Symbols and special characters	349

T

Template	217
Text box	184
Text entry	324, 328
Change window	336
Common phrases	332
Copy	334
Cut	334
Delete	331
Face symbols	330
Guidance	328
Insert	329
Insert/Overwrite mode	329
Kuten code	334
Line feed	330
Overwrite	330
Paste	334
Pictograph	330
Pl*SB input mode	331
Quote data	333
Single-byte/double-byte	326
Space (blank)	330
Symbols	330
UNDO	332
Upper case and lower case	329
Text memo	299
To Do list	292
Trademark	20
Trim i-motion	275
Trimming	263
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	42
Two-touch dialing	108

U

UIM operation	102
Updating pattern data	377
URL	186
Delete	187
Enter URL	186
URL (site info)	182
URL history	187
Use phone information	194, 195
User certificate	199
Using menus	30

V

Vibrator (vibration)	114
Videophone	76
Auto redial as voice	84
Chara-den	83
Connecting to external device	88
hands-free	59
Hands-free switch	86
Making a call	77
Receiving a call	81
Select image	84
Videophone messages	76
Videophone screen	76
Visual check	85
Visual prefer.	84
Zoom	86
Remote monitoring	88
View	
Channel list	204
MessageR/MessageF	197
Site	181
Website	186
View an SSL page	183
Viewer settings	256
Visual check	85
Visual preference (Videophone)	84
Voice announce	296
Voice clock	70
Voice Mail	154, 308
Voice memo	73, 295
Voice memo (in-call)	295
Voice mode	176
Volume	65
VP message	74
Erase	74
Play	74
V-phone while packet	87

W

Wake-up display	120
Warranty	363
Web To function	193
Website	186
White balance	174
Word prediction	328
WORLD CALL	48
WORLD WING	37

Y

Your phone number	44
-------------------------	----

Z

Zoom	176
------------	-----

Numerals, etc.

186 (show)/184 (hide)	55
64K data communication	320
みんなNらんど	182

Function

This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls

Country Code setting	50
Create message	51
Dialed calls (list/details)	54
IDD Prefix setting	50
Pause dial	56
Phone number entry	47
Play/Erase msg.	73
Play/Erase VP msg.	74
Prefix setting	57
Received calls (list/details)	64
Redial calls (list/details)	54

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

Other ID (Remote monitoring)	89
Videophone in-call	78
Videophone number entry	78
Videophone ringing	82

Using the Phonebook

Choku-Den detail	108
Group setting	96
Phonebook	99
Phonebook detail	100
Sent/rec'd DataList (Data Sec. Service)	110
UIM operation (copy)	103
UIM operation (delete)	104

Tone/Display/Lighting settings

Contents checking (Style mode) ...	135
Desktop icon	131
Original menu (Menu display set)	127
Original theme (Menu display set)	126
Style mode list	134

Security Settings

Category list/ Group list screens....	151
Function list screen.....	151
Restrictions screen	155

Camera

Continuous mode	168
Continuous shooting checking	171
Detail checking	171
Image checking	169
Movie checking	175
Movie mode	173
Photo mode	168
Recording start (Picture voice)	176

i-mode/i-motion

Bookmark	188
Bookmark folder list	188
Channel list	204
Enter URL	187
Message detail	198
Message list	197
Screen memo detail	190

Screen memo list	189
Sites	182

Mail

Address/Subject	213
Chat	246
Chat group list	247
Chat member	245
Draft mail list	220
Emotion/Keyword	244
Group member list	248
Inbox folder list	234
Mail member detail	221
Mail member list	221
Message	213
New mail	212
New SMS	250
Outbox folder list	234
Received address list	241
Received mail detail	239
Received mail list	236
Sent address	241
Sent mail detail	240
Sent mail list	237
Template	218
Template preview	218

Display/Edit/Organization

Chara-den list	272
Chara-den player	272
Edit image	262
Edit movie	268
Folder list (i-motion)	276
Folder list (Melody)	276
Folder list (My picture)	276
i-motion stopped (pause)	267
Image list	256
Melody	275
Melody list	274
Movie list	264
Multi-selection (data box)	276
My picture	258
Original animation list	260
Original animation playback	261
Playlist folder (i-motion)	268
Playlist folder (Melody)	275

Other Useful Functions

Alarm	288
Dictionary	300
My Profile	294
Reference history (dictionary)	300
Reference result (list detail) (dictionary)	300
Schedule	288
Schedule list	291
Text memo	299
To Do list detail	292
To Do list screen	292
Voice announce	296

Network Services

Additional service/ Additional guidance	317
Check setting	309
Multi Number setting	316

Entering Text

Common phrase list	334
Common phrases folder list	333
Download dictionary	336
Own dictionary	335
Text entry (edit)	332



Quick Manual

How to use the Quick Manual

The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.

To use the Quick Manual bound in this manual, cut the pages along the cutting line and fold them as shown below. Take two sheets of the Quick Manual in pairs.

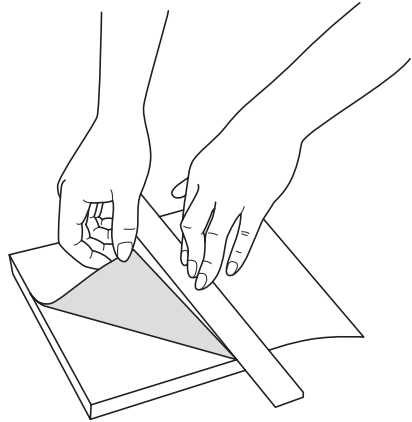
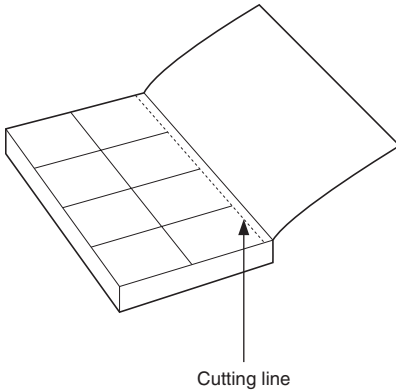
How to cut

Cut the Quick Manual pages along the cutting line.

Use a ruler to cut along the cutting line as shown below.

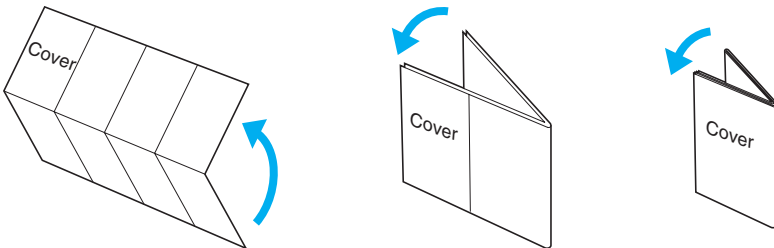
Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages.

* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting with scissors, etc.



How to fold

Fold along the fold line to see the cover page as shown below.



FOMA® N601i

Quick Manual

- For inquiries: 24h/24h Information Center-
For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:
- (No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)
- *You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
From an ordinary (landline) phone:
 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
- *Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.
- For multinationals
For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:
- (No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)
- *You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
From an ordinary (landline) phone:
 0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)
- *Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.
- *Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
*FOMA terminal.

Edit/delete phonebook data

- Display the phonebook detail screen →
- (FUNC) → Edit phonebook → Edit the items if necessary → (Finish) → "YES" (for UIM phonebook) → "Overwrite" → "YES"
- Delete phonebook data**
- Display the phonebook list screen → (FUNC) → "Delete data" → "Delete this" → "YES" (Select another "YES" depending on the phonebook)

Add to phonebook

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
ADD TO PHONEBOOK	NAME	READING	GROUP	PHONE NUMBER	MAIL ADDRESS	ADDRESS	BIRTHDAY	MEMORANDUMS	IMAGE	CHARA-DEN	12345

- 1 → "Phonebook" → (FUNC)
- Add to phonebook*
- To add data from the received call record
Standby screen appears → → Highlight the received call record → (FUNC) → "Add to phonebook"

1

Input method and mode

Character input screen

- Text entry area
- Operation guidance area
- Information display area

Input mode

- Kanji/Hiragana
- Katakana
- Alphabet
- Number
- Kuten input mode

5

- To add data from the redial
Standby screen appears → → Highlight the redial record → (FUNC) → "Add to phonebook"

- 2 Select "Phone" or "UIM" → Enter name → Check the reading
- 3 Select items and enter them
 - Group (00 to 19)
 - Phone number (up to 4)
 - Mail address (up to 3)
 - Address
- 4 Phone number (up to 4)
- Phone number → Enter phone number → Select icon
- Mail address (up to 3)
- Address
- Phone number → Enter zip code → Enter address

2

Birthdays

- Phone number → Enter birthday
 - Memorandums
 - Image
 - Phone number → Select photo mode or image
 - Chara-den
 - Phone number → Select Chara-den
 - Phone number (000 to 699)
 - Phone number → Enter memory number
 - Phone number (Finish)
- Only name, reading, group, phone number, and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UIM).

3

Text line feed

- Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters →
- (press and hold)
- Phone number → "Line feed"
- Phone number (several times) → Select symbol or pictograph → to end operation
- Phone number → "Face Mark", "Symbols" or "Pictograph" → Select symbols or texts
- Delete texts**
- Use to move the cursor to the text to be deleted →

7

Enter Text

Enter “太郎” on Text memo

Text entry (edit) screen

→ “LifeKey” → Text memo → (Edit) → (Several times) → “Kaniji/hiragana input mode” →

→ one time
 → five times
 → three times

Conversion

or (CHG) → → Select “太郎” from the conversion candidates

8

Camera

Shoot still image

→ “LifeKey” → Camera → Photo mode → or [] →

Shoot continuously

→ “LifeKey” → Camera → Photo mode → (FUNC) → CHG camera-mode → or “Continuous mode” → Auto or “Manual” → or method

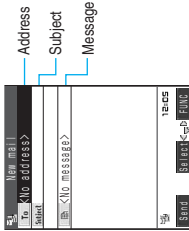
Shoot movie

→ “LifeKey” → Camera → Movie mode → or [] →

9

i-mode Mail

Compose/send Message



New mail screen

→ “Mail” → Compose message”

Address

→ Specify how to enter address

12

Display image/play melody

Display image

→ “Data box” → “My picture” → Select folder → Select image

Play movie

→ “Data box” → “i-motion” → Select folder → Select movie

Play melody

→ “Data box” → “Melody” → Select folder → Select melody

10

Attach i-motion

New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file → “Attach i-motion” → Select folder → Select i-motion

Attach melody

New mail screen → (FUNC) → Attach file → “Attach melody” → Select folder → Select melody

Receive mail

(White) flashes → Received result screen appears → Select “New Mail”

14

Make/receive videophone call

Make a videophone call

Enter the phone number → (Phone) → after talking

Receive a videophone call

The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes. Press (Phone), or after talking

(Phone) : Send your shot to the caller
 (Subst.) : Send your substitute image to the caller

During a call

: Switch (ON/OFF) hands-free
 : Switch camera (Front camera/rear camera)

11

Other functions

Reply

Display the mail to reply → (Reply) → “” → Enter message → (Send) → after transmission end

Forward

Display the mail to forward → (FUNC) → “Forward” → To → Specify how to enter address → (Send) → after transmission end

Check new messages

→ “Mail” → Check new messages”

15

Menu list

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Intro	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
Main Menu	Mail settings	
	Menu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	i-Channel	
	Message	
	Check new messages	
	Client certificate	
Main Menu	i-home settings	

16

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Click n Den	
	Settings	
	Style mode	
	Incoming call	
	Ring volume (MENU 5.0)	
	Select ring tone (MENU 1.3)	
	SMS W/O/V (MENU 8.4)	
	Vibrator (MENU 5.4)	
	Illumination (MENU 4.9)	
	Memory mode set (MENU 2.0)	
Disp. Pk-Book range		
Main Menu	Answer setting (MENU 2.8)	
	MailMsg, ring time (MENU 6.8)	
	MailMsg, ring time/c (MENU 5.5)	
	Ring time/c (MENU 9.0)	
	Info notice setting (MENU 5.5)	
	Record message (MENU 7.5)	
	Noise reduction (MENU 7.6)	
	Quality alarm (MENU 7.8)	
	Recommended signal (MENU 7.7)	
	Illumination in talk	
Main Menu	Set hold tone	
	Setting when locked (MENU 1.8)	
	Phone data (MENU 8.4)	
	Sub-address setting	
	Prfxk setting	

17

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Settings	
	Dialing	
	Videophone	
	Auto dial setting	
	Int'l dial settings	
	Visual preference	
	Select image	
	Auto redial as voice	
	Remote monitoring	
	Display setting	
INTJ switch-mode		
Main Menu	Hand-free switch	
	Hand-free switch	
	Vibrate when packet	
	Display setting (MENU 3.6)	
	Backlight (MENU 7.0)	
	Display design (MENU 8.6)	
	Font (MENU 6.6)	
	Desktop icon (MENU 6.3)	
	Select language (MENU 1.5)	
	Main display set (MENU 5.7)	
Viewer settings		
Main Menu	Automatic display (MENU 4.7)	
	Icons (MENU 3.6)	
	Icons setting	
	Privacy setting	
	Privacy range	

18

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Settings	
	Call timer/Charge	
	Call date (MENU 6.1)	
	Notice designate calls	
	Reset total (MENU 6.0)	
	Auto reset total cost	
	Call time display (MENU 4.8)	
	Set time (MENU 4.1)	
	Good display (MENU 3.9)	
	Alarm setting	
Main Menu	Good Alarm tone set	
	Lock	
	Lock/Security	
	Key Operator lock	
	Set mode	
	Secret mode (MENU 4.0)	
	Secret data only mode (MENU 4.1)	
	Reject unknown	
	Call setting w/o ID (MENU 1.0)	
	Change security code (MENU 2.9)	
Main Menu	Pin setting	
	Scanning function	

19

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Settings	
	Connection setting	
	Set connection timeout	
	Set check new messages	
	Host selection (MENU 8.1)	
	SMS center selection	
	Certificate	
	Certificate host	
	Esp/Phone (MENU 5.1)	
	Select microphone	
Main Menu	Automatic answer (MENU 3.4)	
	NV search mode	
	Network setting	
	Keyboard sound (MENU 3.0)	
	Change sound	
	Battery level (MENU 7.1)	
	External lens guard (MENU * (Press and hold))	
	Character input set (MENU 3.5)	
	Reset settings (MENU 2.3)	
	Initialize	
Main Menu	Software Update	

20

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Data box	
	My picture (MENU 4.6)	
	i-home	
	Macro (MENU 1.6)	
	Character	
	Receive II date (MENU 7.9)	
	Camera	
	Date Sec. Service	
	Schedule (MENU 4.5)	
	Alarm (MENU 4.9)	
Main Menu	To Do list (MENU 9.5)	
	Text memo (MENU 4.2)	
	Calculator (MENU 8.5)	
	Play/Erase msg. (MENU/CHCK/OK)	
	Play/Erase VIF msg.	
	Voice memo (MENU 4.3)	
	Voice memo (MENU 9.1)	
	TVI operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Dictionary	

21

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Service	
	Chaku-mail	
	Caller ID Notification (MENU 1.7)	
	Voice Mail	
	Call Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	Nuisance Call Bk	
	Caller ID Request	
	In-call arrival ad	
	Remote Control	
Main Menu	Dual Network	
	English Guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service Numbers	
	Multi Number	
	Phonebook	
	Phonebook	
	My Profile (MENU 0)	
	Receiver calls (MENU 2.4)	
	Own data	

22

Main Menu		
Main Item	Sub menu	Branch Item
Main Menu	Own data	
	Dialpad calls	
	Mail member (MENU 9.7)	
	Chat group	
	Chaku-Den	
	Common phrases (MENU 3.8)	
	Own dictionary (MENU 8.2)	
	DI Dictionary	

- < Other features >
- Manner mode (H) (Press and hold) (Set/Release every pressing)
 - Manner mode (H) (Press and hold) (Set/Release every pressing)
 - Public mode (X) (Press and hold) (Driving mode) (Set/Release every pressing)

23

Network Services

Voice Mail service

Activate

[MENU] → Service → Voice Mail → Activate →
"YES" → YES → Enter Ring time (seconds)

Deactivate

[MENU] → Service → Voice Mail → Deactivate →
"YES"

Play messages

[MENU] → Service → Voice Mail → Play messages →
→ YES → Follow the voice prompts

24

Icon



Icon display area

[B] : Battery level

[L] : Lock all is set

[M] (white): Unread message

[R] (white): Unread MessageR

[F] (white): Unread MessageF

28

Call Waiting

Activate

[MENU] → Service → Call Waiting → Activate →
"YES"

Deactivate

[MENU] → Service → Call Waiting → Deactivate →
"YES"

Receive another incoming call

Press **[OK]** or **[END CALL]** to switch to incoming call.
To switch the calls, press **[CALL]**.

25

Call Forwarding service

Activate

[MENU] → Service → Call Forwarding → Activate →
Set a forwarding number or the ring time, and
then select "Activate" → YES*

Deactivate

[MENU] → Service → Call Forwarding →
"Deactivate" → YES*

Caller ID Request service

Activate Caller ID Request service

[MENU] → Service → Caller ID Request →
"Activate" → YES → OK*

Deactivate Caller ID Request service

[MENU] → Service → Caller ID Request →
"Deactivate" → YES → OK*

26

Service available on FOMA Terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) ¹	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)	Area code + 117
Police emergency ²	(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency ²	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call Emergency Message Recording System	(No area code) 118 (No area code) 171

* 1 : The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.

* 2 : Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

27

<Contact for lost, etc>

Omakase Lock

Set/Release Omakase Lock

[06] 0120-524-360

24 hours available

* Omakase Lock can be set/released from the My DoCoMo site on a PC, etc.

Other contacts

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

31

[W] (white): i-mode mail stored in i-mode Center

[S] : Signal strength

[I] : Using i-mode

[SSL] : SSL page

[U] : USB cable unconnected, hands-free device unconnected

[E] : Exchanging infrared data

[V] : During voice call

[PA] : Privacy angle set

[VIB] : Vibrator set

[R] : Ring volume is set to "Silent"

29

Cutting Line

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, consider the feelings of others.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone
It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
 - An airplane • A hospital
- * Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Driving
Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.
 - * Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).
- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator
Radio waves may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as a restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.
- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode] → p.117, 118

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)] → p.67, 68

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator] → p.114

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function] → p.71

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.308) and Call Forwarding service (p.311).

Through DoCoMo e-site, you may change and confirm your user information, request information materials and also apply new services (in Japanese only).

From i-mode **Packet communication charge free**

iMenu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定 (Charge & Subscription・Settings) ⇒ ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site)

From PCs

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Procedures (DoCoMo e-site))

- * You need your "Network security code" to use e-site from i-mode.
- * No packet communication charge applies to access e-site from i-mode. Packet communication charge applies to access from overseas.
- * You need "DoCoMo ID/Password" to access e-site from your PC.
- * If you do not have or forget "Network security code" or "DoCoMo ID/Password", contact to the numbers mentioned below.
- * You may not use the services depending on your subscription.
- * There are cases where the site may not be available to system maintenance, etc.

For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

■(In English)

 **0120-005-250 (toll-free)**

* Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

■(In Japanese only)

 **No prefix 151 (toll-free)**

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

 **0120-800-000 (toll-free)**

●Please check on the number before dialing.

For Inquiries (concerning malfunctions)

■(In Japanese only)

 **No prefix 113 (toll-free)**

* Available only from mobile phones and PHSs.

 **0120-800-000 (toll-free)**

* Available from general subscriber phones, mobile phones and PHSs.

- Please check on the number before dialing.
- For further information, please refer to the list of service stations supplied with your FOMA terminal.



Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners!
When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Retailer NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



Li-ion

To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo's sales outlets, our cooperate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.



100% recycled-content level



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.12 (1st Edition)
MDT-000068-EAA0

FOMA[®] N601i

Manual for

Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal	1
Before Using	3
Checking the Procedure	4
Setting the PC	7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software	12
How to Set Various Settings	18
Executing Set Data Communication	24
W-TCP Settings	27
Access Point Name (APN) Settings	29
Setting up Dial-up Network	30
Setting up Dial-up	37
AT Command List	45

About Manual for Data Communication

This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N601i and how to install “N601i communication setting file (drivers)” and “FOMA PC setting software” provided in the CD-ROM.

Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 384kbps and sent at the maximum speed of 64kbps. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

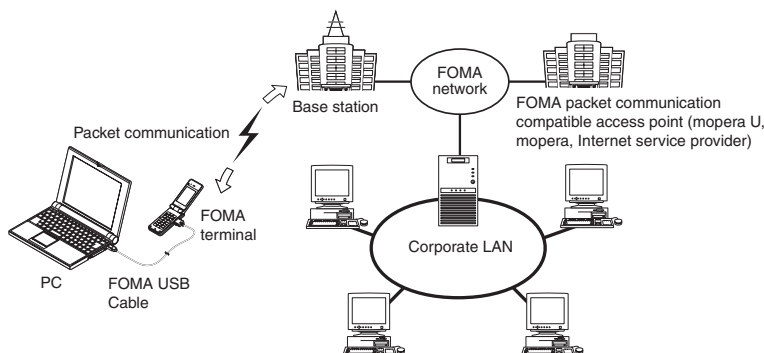
● 64K data communication

Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

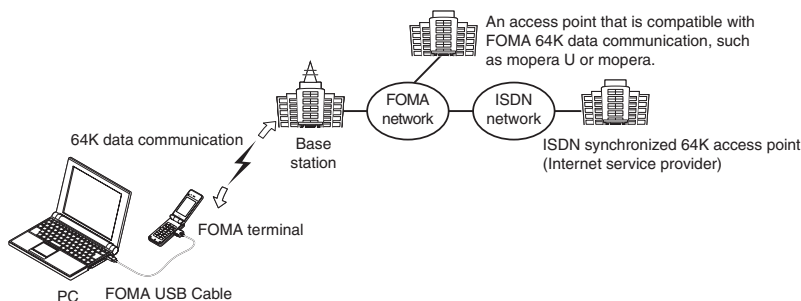
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



NOTE

- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with IP connection.

Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the bundled CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) under the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is only in Japanese.) To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe Reader help.

Required conditions for performing packet and 64K data communication

The following conditions are required to perform communication using the FOMA terminal:

- Your PC is compatible with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You are in the FOMA service area.
- For packet communication, the access point supports FOMA packet communication.
- For 64K data communication, the access point supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

However, depending on congestion of the base station or weaker signal strength, you cannot perform communication even when the above conditions are satisfied.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive• USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)• Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000 (Japanese version)• Windows XP (Japanese version)
Required memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*2• Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*2
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 5M bytes or more*2

*1 : The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.

*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

NOTE

- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N601"

NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

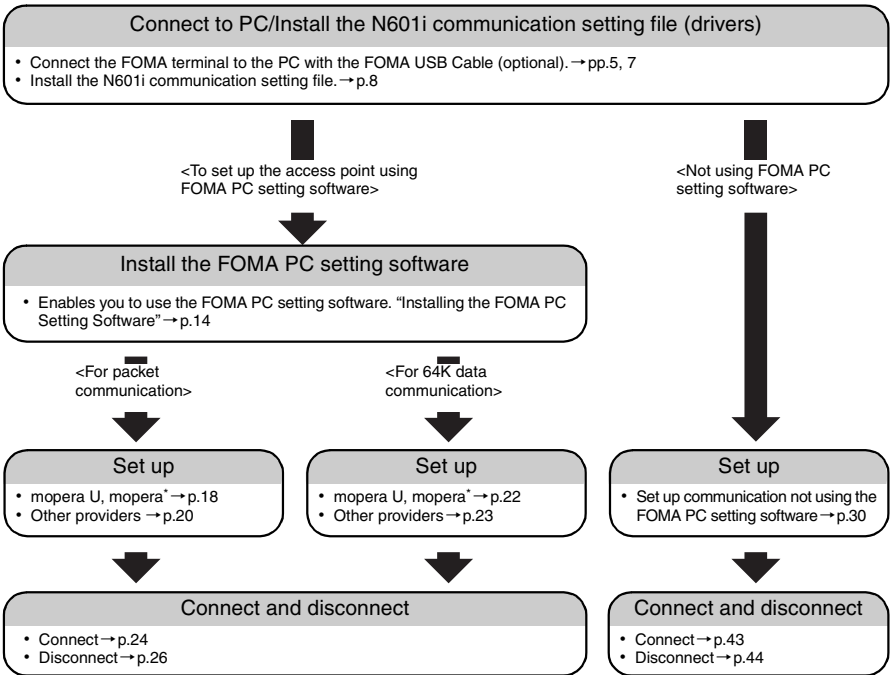
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ About the “CD-ROM for FOMA N601i”

- The CD-ROM contains the N601i communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N601i communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N601i communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

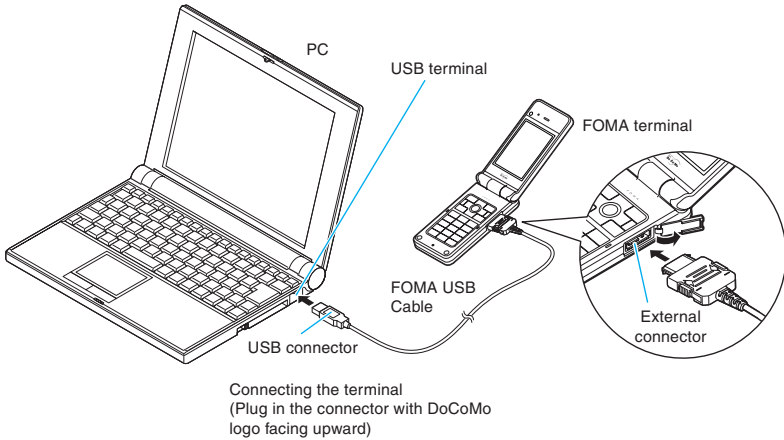
This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.




* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, “mopera U” (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use “mopera” for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.


Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



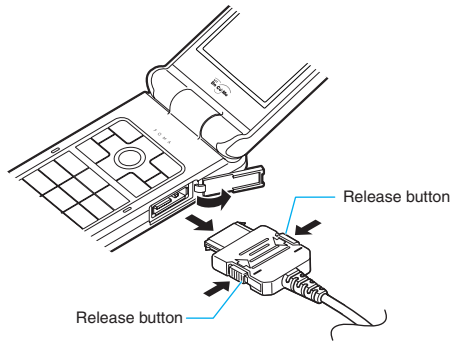
- 1** Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
 - 2** Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click
 - 3** Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC
- “” appears on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

- “” appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N601i communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



- 1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC**
- 2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable**
- 3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal**

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N601i communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N601i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click “✕” to close the screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N601i” is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 3. If this screen appears while you are installing the N601i communication setting file, click “✕” as well.



3 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

4 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

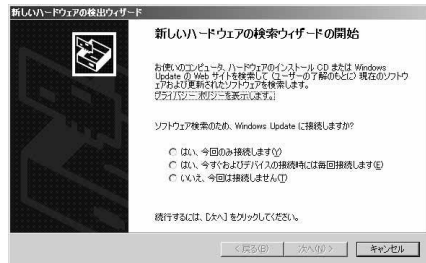
Installing the N601i communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N601i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N601i communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
For Windows XP refer to the following.
For Windows 2000, proceed to p.9.

● For Windows XP

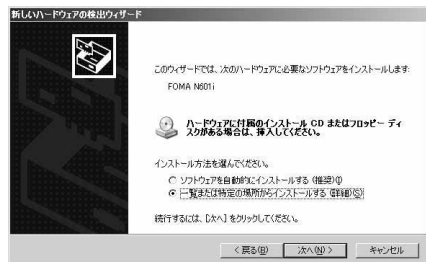
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)

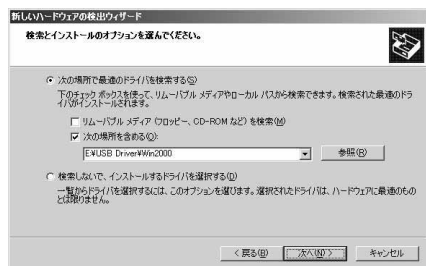


4 Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する” (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the “リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROMなど）を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click “次へ”(Next)

The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver¥Win2000".

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is "E".

The driver is common with Windows 2000.



5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

6 Install other drivers

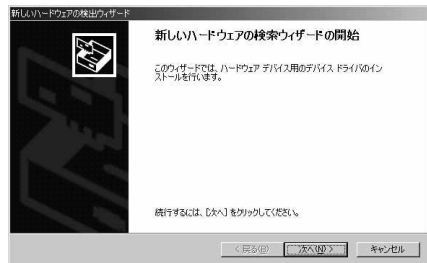
See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify the search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.

The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

In this case, the driver's name appears as “FOMA N601i”.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N601i communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance)

For Windows 2000

Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

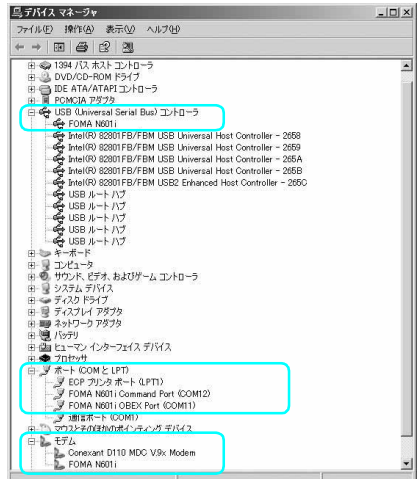
3 Open the device manager

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ” (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), “ポート (COMとLPT)” (Ports (COM& LPT)) and “モデム” (Modems).

Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.12).



Device name	Driver name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N601i
ポート (COMとLPT)	• FOMA N601i Command Port • FOMA N601i OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N601i

NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.11) to delete the N601i communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N601i communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling N601i communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “FOMA N601i USB” and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

4 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

5 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you click “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When “FOMA N601i USB” is not displayed in the “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:

- ① Insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N601i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- ② Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
- ③ Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
- ④ Open “USB Driver” in the CD-ROM → “Win2000” folder
- ⑤ Double-click “n601i_un.exe” *

* : It is displayed as “n601i_un” depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.30



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “FOMA データ通信ダイヤルアップの作成” (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) together.

W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

cid [Context Identifier] … a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the old version of FOMA PC setting software (version 3.0.0 or older, hereafter referred to Previous FOMA PC setting software) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

Procedures ranging from installation of the FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1 **Installing software**



STEP 2 **Setting preparation**



STEP 3 **Various settings**



STEP 4 **Connecting**

Install the "FOMA PC setting software"

See p.14 for installation details.

When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, uninstall it before installing the "FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1".

When the "Previous FOMA PC setting software" is installed, you cannot install the "FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1".

If a screen appears indicating that "Previous W-TCP setting software" or "Previous APN setting software" is installed, see p.15.

Make preparations for making various settings

Before making various settings, ensure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been properly recognized by the PC.

See p.5 for "How to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC".

See "Setting the PC" (p.7) for "How to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal properly".

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, you cannot make various settings nor perform communication.

In this case, see p.8 and install the communication setting file.

Set according to the communication method you use

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera"
→ p.18

Easy settings: "Settings for Packet communication using other providers" → p.20

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera"
→ p.22

Easy settings: "Settings for 64K data communication using other providers" → p.23
For other settings, see p.27 or the following pages.

Connect to the Internet

See p.24 for the executing communication.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. → p.3
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

This screen will automatically appear. Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended to run the menu. If your PC does not meet the recommended operational environment, or the menu screen does not appear even when you insert the CD-ROM, use the following procedure:

- ① Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
- ② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
- ③ Double-click “index.html”



2 Click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト” (Data Link Software/ Various Settings Software)

3 Click “インストール” (Install) of “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

4 Click “実行” (Execute)

When the security-warning window appears, click “実行する” (Execute).

For Windows 2000

Click “開く” (Open)

5 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a screen appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.15.

6 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

7 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the task-tray.

This is a function to set up / cancel the optimization of “W-TCP communication”, and we recommend you to let it reside in the task-tray.

If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) here, you can change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



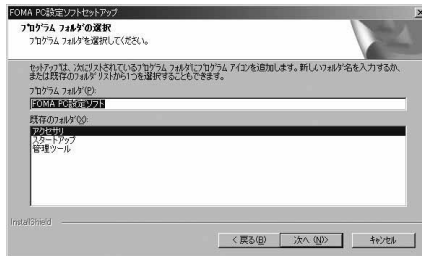
The W-TCP settings icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

8 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the location, click “参照” (Reference), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

9 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click “OK”, the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC認定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of “FOMA PC setting software” is installed.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

Confirming the version information of the FOMA PC setting software

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

- 2 Open “メニュー” (Menu) → “バージョン情報” (Version information) of the toolbar

The version information of the FOMA PC setting software is displayed.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

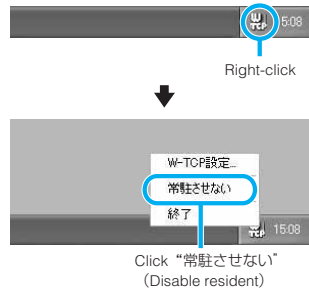
- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

- 1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings.

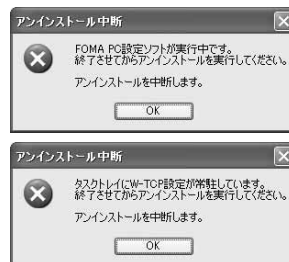
- (1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task-tray

Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



- (2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the “FOMA PC setting software” or “W-TCP settings” is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start uninstallation

For Windows XP

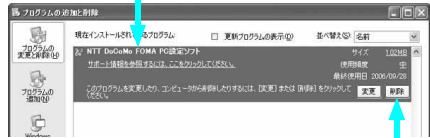
Open “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove programs)

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click “削除” (Delete)

Select “NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software)



Click “削除” (Delete)

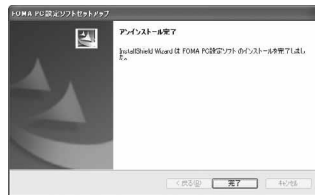
4 Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click “完了” (Finish)

Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.



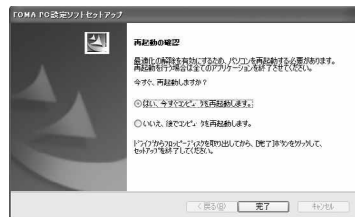
NOTE

● Cancelling “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP).

This screen appears when “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is performed. Usually, click “はい” (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of W-TCP optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

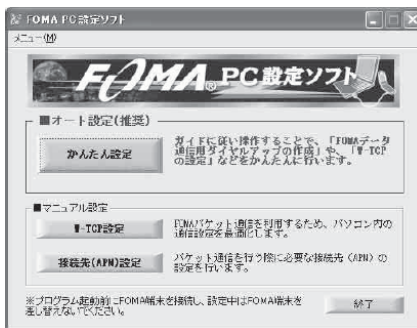
The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N601i communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider. Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (some models excluded). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

- 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

- 2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.20 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

- 4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

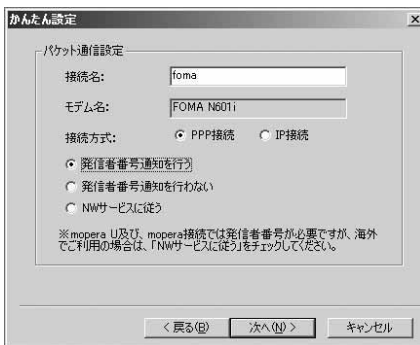
5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method “PPP接続” (PPP connection) and click “次へ” (Next)

You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only). Select the connection method in the “接続方式” (Connection method) column.

mopera U supports both “PPP接続” (PPP connection) and “IP接続” (IP connection). mopera supports “PPP接続” (PPP connection) only. However, this FOMA terminal is not compatible with IP connection.

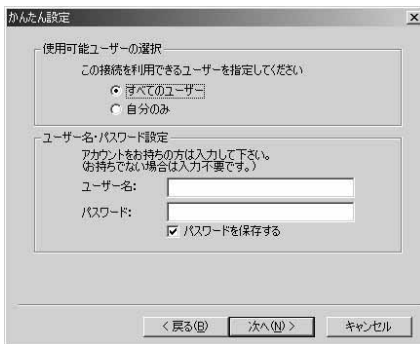
Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.



6 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.



7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



9 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using other providers”

- 1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)
- 3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 4 Click “OK”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC.
Wait for a while.

- 5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) appears. Enter any name in “接続名” (Connection name). You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only). Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.

APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

Follow the information directions provided by the internet service provider for the caller ID settings.



- 6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.

The “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears. Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



- 7 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

The screen of Step 5 reappears.

The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

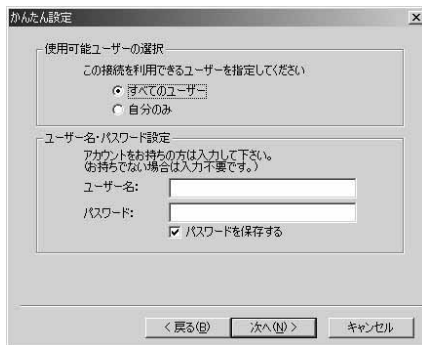
To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.



10 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



12 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if 64K data communication is used for a long time.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64K データ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.23 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

The “64K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N601i”.

Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.

5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

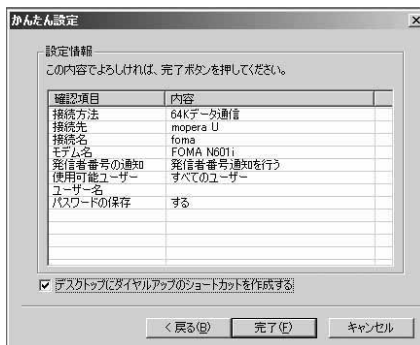
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than moper U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N601i)
- “電話番号” (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

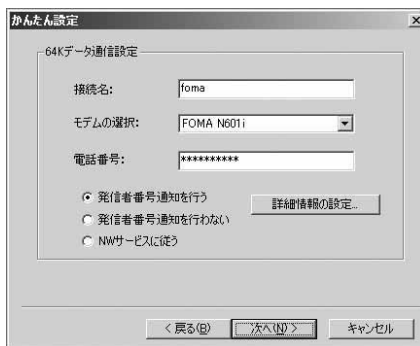
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: *?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.

Follow the information directions provided by the internet service provider for the caller ID settings.

To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

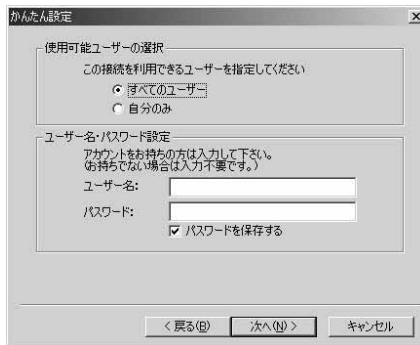
Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.



5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.



6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.

To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. → p.24

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) → Open the access point

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

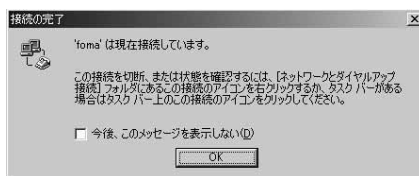
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, this screen appears when the dial-up connection is made.

This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.

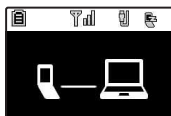


- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- ⇨ (Communicating, sending data)
- ⇩ (Communicating, receiving data)
- ⇄ (Communicating, no data transfer)
- ⇨ (Sending, or disconnecting)
- ⇩ (Receiving, or disconnecting)

- “⇄” appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.



NOTE

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created. Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N601i" is not recognized by the PC.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3).· Check if the N601i communication setting file (drivers) is installed.· Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.
Unable to connect with the access point.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct.· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.· If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number.· Check if the box of "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked.· Check if the APN is set correctly.· If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

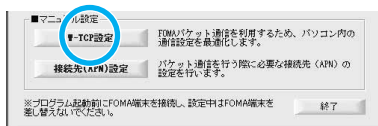
Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the task-tray Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



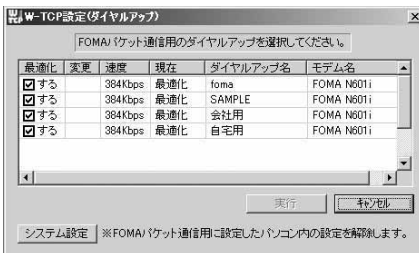
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize). “W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized “W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ)” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. Change the settings if necessary.



(3) To cancel optimization

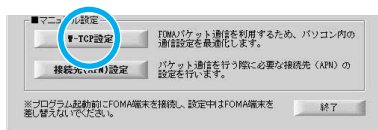
Uncheck the dial-up which you want to cancel optimization, and click “システム設定” (System settings).
Click “はい” (Yes) on the confirmation screen and click “OK”. “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト”(FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



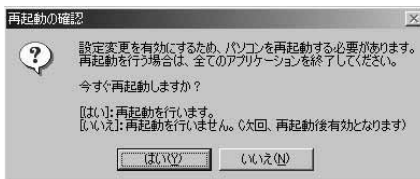
(2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located on the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



2 Proceed with the following

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen. Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) If the system settings have been optimized
A message saying “現在、384Kbps用に最適化されています。” (Already optimized for 384Kbps) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.
When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

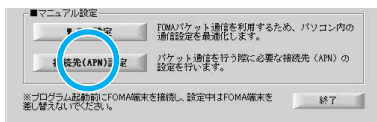


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.

It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

• To add an access point (APN)

Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To edit a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To delete a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the FOMA terminal, the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). Enter the user name and password, select an accessible user, then click “OK”. You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N601i” (Modem) built in after installing the N601i communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

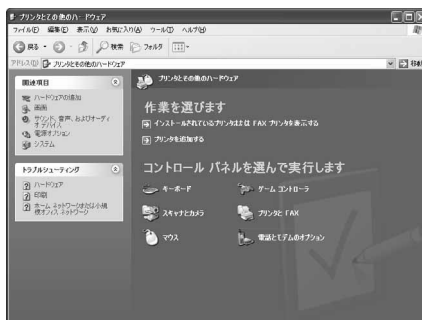
● Preparation

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal**
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC**

1 Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)



2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N601i” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外 局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N601i” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1 : mopera.ne.jp	cid3 : mopera.net	cid2, 4 to 10 : not set
-----------------	---------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.^{*1}
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Specifying “* 99 * * * <cid number> #” as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying “* 99 * * * 1 #” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “* 99 * * * 3 #” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.^{*2}
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party’s name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2 : To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1** Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal
- 2** Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC
- 3** Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”

“sample” is entered here as an example.



6 Select “FOMA N601i” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.

If a COM port of “FOMA N601i” can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.
In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” (p.30) to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N601i” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).



If a COM port of “FOMA N601i” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

- (1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
- (2) Select “FOMA N601i” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sampleのプロパティ” (sample Properties) screen
- (3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click “OK”



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN"

<cid> : Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.


Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

"PPP" : Enter "PPP" as it is.

"APN" : Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.

If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2





Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc" 



8 Confirm that "OK" appears and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

"sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?" (Are you going to save the connection "sample"?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.35. In this case, if you enter ATE1 , AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.
 - <How to enter>
 - AT+CGDCONT=  (to reset all cid)
 - AT+CGDCONT= <cid>  (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 - Display the current settings.
 - <How to enter>
 - AT+CGDCONT? 

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the * DGPIR command (p.46) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start "Hyper terminal"

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

Enter in the format of "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=1 

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=2 



3 Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.

The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the * DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
* 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

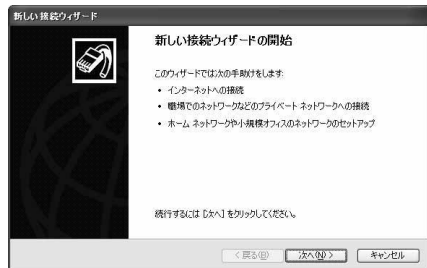
Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “* 99 * * * 3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 99 * * * 1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “* 8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “* 9601” for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)

2 When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



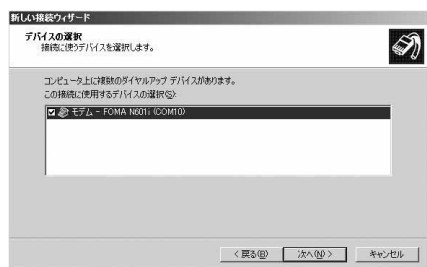
3 Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム – FOMA N601i (COMx)” (Modem – FOMA N601i (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.30).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



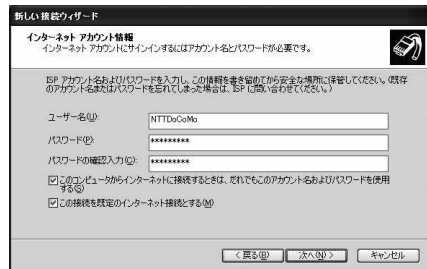
8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



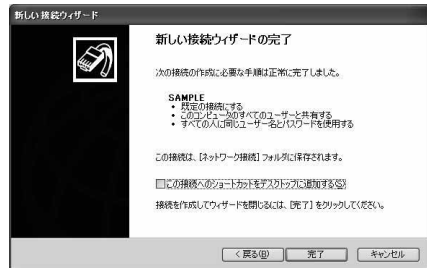
9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

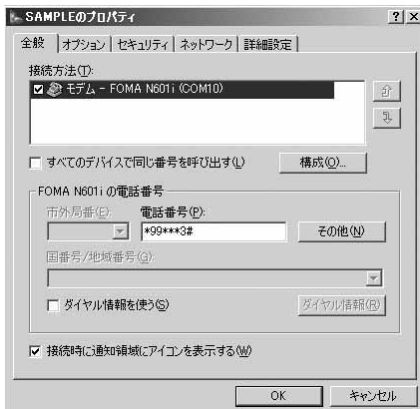
- 12** Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 13** Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N601i” (Modem - FOMA N601i) is checked in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing operna U by packet communication.



- 14** Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

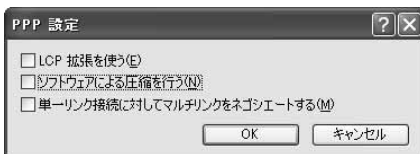
Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoS/パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



- 15** Click “設定” (Settings)

- 16** Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



- 17** When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)

7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N601i” and click “次へ” (Next)

If “FOMA N601i” is not selected, select “FOMA N601i”.

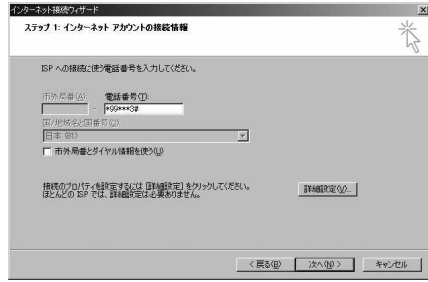
If no other modem than “FOMA N601i” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

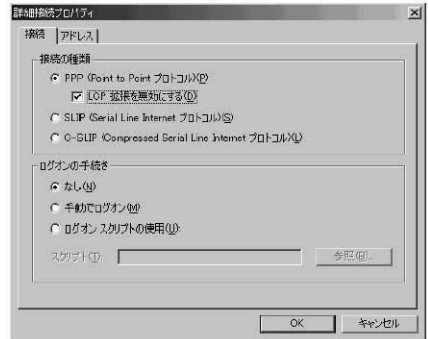
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



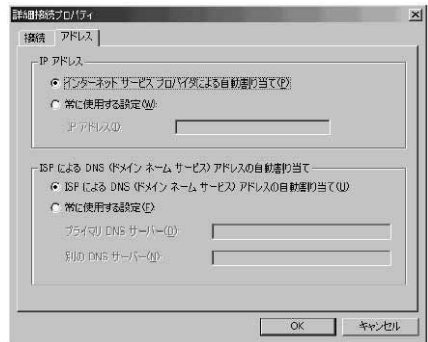
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown on the right and click “OK”

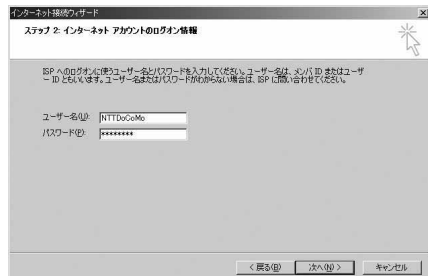
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ISP による DNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



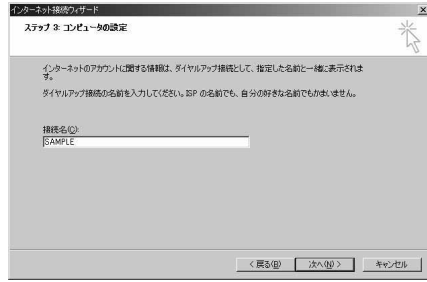
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as this screen.



- 15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 17 Click “完了” (Finish)

- 18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム - FOMA N601i” (Modem - FOMA N601i) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing operpa U by packet communication.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices” → p.5

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.38 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds. You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail. If this message does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (p.30) and “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37). See p.25 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
 - [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
 - [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for "FOMA N601i (モデム)" (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : CD is always ON. <i>n</i> = 1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). <i>n</i> = 1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. <i>n</i> = 2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F = ? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : DR is always ON (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W <i>n</i>	Stores the current settings.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W = ? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT * DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK AT * DANTE = ? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM= <i>n</i>	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disables the incoming call reject (AT * DGARL)/permit setting (AT * DGAPL) (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Enables the incoming call reject setting. <i>n</i> =2 : Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT * DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK
AT * DGAPL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call permission list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call permission list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGAPL? : Displays incoming call permission list.	AT * DGAPL =0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL =1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call rejection list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call rejection list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGARL? : Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT * DGARL =0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL =1 OK AT * DGARL? OK
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.35)	<i>n</i> =0 : Uses APN as it is (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) <i>n</i> =2 : Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT * DGPIR? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR =0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK AT * DRPW=? * DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"000014" OK
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:< <i>bcs</i> >,< <i>bcl</i> > <i>bcs</i> : 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. <i>bcl</i> : 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=<n>,1,0 n=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) n=131 : 32,000bps (multimedia) n=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,131,134), (1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.58).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.55	p.55
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: < <i>n</i> >, <stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not display the result (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> <i>m</i> =0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. <i>m</i> =1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. <i>m</i> =2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXXX",177, "123",136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	<p><i>n</i>=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract.</p> <p><i>n</i>=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number.</p> <p><i>n</i>=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value).</p> <p>AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting.</p> <p>+CLIR:<i>n,m</i> <i>m</i>=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i>=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i>=2 : Unknown <i>m</i>=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i>=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)</p>	<p>AT+CLIR=0 OK</p> <p>AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK</p> <p>AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK</p>
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i>	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	<p><i>n</i>=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value).</p> <p><i>n</i>=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>.</p> <p><i>n</i>=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>.</p> <p>AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting.</p> <p>The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error.</p> <p>+CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown</p>	<p>AT+CMEE=0 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK</p> <p>AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted</p>
[&F] [&W]			
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	<p>Result: +CNUM:;<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145</p> <p>129 : International access code (+) is not included.</p> <p>145 : International access code (+) is included.</p>	<p>AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK</p>
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	<p>Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,<oper></p> <p>mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically)</p> <p>mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>)</p> <p>mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator</p> <p>mode=3 : Mapping is not performed.</p> <p>mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.)</p> <p><oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC ··· octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC ··· octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC ··· octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC ··· octet 3 bits 5 to 8</p>	<p>AT+COPS=0 OK</p> <p>AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK</p> <p>AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001"),, (0,1),(2) OK</p>

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN=<pin>"<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN : READY : PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN : SIM PIN : PIN1 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PIN2 : PIN2 entry standby +CPIN : SIM PUK : PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN : SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR= <i>n</i>	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CR = 1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1 # +CR : GPRS CONNECT
[&F] [&W]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING : SYNC +CRING : AV64K : GPRS "PPP" ,,, "<APN>" AT+CRC? : Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPPOverUD received) +CRING : SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING : AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,, <APN>"
AT+CREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG? : Displays the current setting. +CREG : < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG : 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG : 1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=< <i>n</i> >,"<str>",[0] <i>n</i> =0 : Does not send mid result < <i>m</i> ><str>,<dcsc>] (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : Sends mid result < <i>m</i> ><str>,<dcsc>] Mid result: <i>m</i> =0 : The settings completed <i>m</i> =1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, * can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1, " * 148 * 1 * 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 * 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD =? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP [&F] [&W]	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area : +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N601i).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N601i OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: <i>n,m</i> =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0 : Echo back absent. <i>n</i> =1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI <i>n</i>	Displays the ID code.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). <i>n</i> = 2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). <i>n</i> = 3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. <i>n</i> = 4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN601i OK
ATO <i>n</i>	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ <i>n</i>	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays the result code (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
[&F] [&W]			
ATS0= <i>n</i>	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	<i>n</i> = 0 : No automatic answer (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
[&F] [&W]			
ATS2= <i>n</i>	Sets an escape character.	<i>n</i> = 43 : Initial value. <i>n</i> = 127 : Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
[&F]			
ATS3= <i>n</i>	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	<i>n</i> = 13 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =13 can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
[&F]			
ATS4= <i>n</i>	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	<i>n</i> = 10 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =10 can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
[&F]			
ATS5= <i>n</i>	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	<i>n</i> = 8 : Initial value (Only <i>n</i> =8 can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
[&F]			
ATS6= <i>n</i>	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
[&F]			
ATS8= <i>n</i>	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
[&F]			

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10= <i>n</i> [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30= <i>n</i> [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	<i>n</i> =0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) <i>n</i> =0 - 255 Where <i>n</i> is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : * <i>n</i> =1 : / (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> =0 : # <i>n</i> =1 : % (initial value) <i>n</i> =2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	<i>n</i> =0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> =1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> =0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> =1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> =4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

• Outline

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<APN>* : Any value

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

• Command execution example

Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”
```

```
OK
```

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

• Outline

Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

<cid>* : 1 ~ 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 384

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

• Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

- (1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK
- (2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
OK
- (3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
OK
- (4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

• **Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.

For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• **Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

• **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

• **Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.

Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).

```
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK
```

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.33), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT * DGAPL/AT * DGARL/AT * DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT * DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

```
AT&W [OK]
```

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

```
ATZ [OK]
```

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ Communication protocol result codes

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATVn command (p.53) is set to n=1, and as number indication when the command is set to n=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ When ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT≠Vn command (p.51) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set

- ATX1, AT≠V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21

- ATX1, AT≠V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5

- * : If both ATX1 and AT≠V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT≠V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

FOMA[®] N601i
Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" then "digit 4".

- Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes														
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9			
010	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	075	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З	И	Й	191	蟹	開	階	階	凱	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖
011	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	076	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У	192	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
012	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	077	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	193	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
013	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	078	Ю	Я									194	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
014	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	080											195	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
015	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	081											196	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
016	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	082											197	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
017	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	083											198	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
018	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^												199	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
019	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^												200	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
020	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	130											201	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
021	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	131											202	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
022	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	132											203	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
023	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	133											204	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
024	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	134											205	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
026	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	135											206	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
027	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	136											207	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
028	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	137											208	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
029	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	138											209	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
031										160											210	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	161											211	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
033										162											212	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	163											213	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	164											214	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
036																					215	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	164											216	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
038										166											217	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
039	p	z								166											218	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
040										167											219	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
041	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	ぬ	の	ほ	168											220	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
042	お	こ	そ	と	ひ	ぶ	み	る	わ	169											221	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
043										170											222	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
044																					223	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
045																					224	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
046																					225	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
047																					226	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
048																					226	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
050										173											227	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
051										174											228	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
052										175											229	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
053										176											230	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
054										177											231	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
055										178											232	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
056																					232	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
057										178											232	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
058										179											233	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
060										181											234	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
061										182											235	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
062																					236	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
063										182											238	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
064										184											239	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
065										185											240	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
070										186											241	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
071										187											242	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
072										187											243	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
073										189											243	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	
074										190											244	街	概	階	階	階	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	貝	崖	

